Class D21

Book .A12

Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

Harper's School History.

NARRATIVE

OF THE

GENERAL COURSE OF HISTORY

FROM

THE EARLIEST PERIODS TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE AMERICAN CONSTITUTION.

PREPARED WITH QUESTIONS FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS, AND ILLUSTRATED WITH 150 MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS.

NEW YORK:
PUBLISHED BY HARPER & BROTHERS,
PEARL STREET, FRANKLIN SQUARE.
1856.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year one thousand eight hundred and fifty-six, by

HARPER & BROTHERS,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the Southern District of New York.

TO THE TEACHER.

THIS work is intended as a complete text-book of general history for the use of schools. It does not consist, as is often the case with books of this class, of a condensed summary of names, dates, and detached chronological events, but presents, in a simple and connected narrative, a general view of the great leading events that have occurred in the history of the world, beginning at the earliest periods, and coming down through the Assyrian, Persian, Grecian, Roman, and British empires, to the organization of the American Republic, and the establishment of the American Constitution. It is intended for Americans, and the narrative consequently follows the line which leads to, and is most directly connected with, the events of our own history. The work is fully illustrated with maps and engravings, and is prepared with questions on a new and very convenient plan for the use of teachers.

In using the work, the teacher is requested to call the special attention of the class to the following directions in respect to the mode of studying the book before they commence it.

Directions to the Pupil in studying the Book.

1. The pupil must observe that, though there is a question at the head of each paragraph, still the paragraph is not itself a mere answer to the question. It is a general statement which contains the answer. In other words, the book is not a catechism of history, but a connected narrative, written without regard to the questions. These, having been afterward introduced, are placed at the heads of the paragraphs instead of at the foot of the page, solely for the convenience of the teacher. In studying the lessons, therefore, you must not be satisfied with merely searching in each paragraph for a few words or phrases which will serve as an answer to the question placed at the head of it, but you must study attentively the statements made in its paragraph in connection with what precedes it, so as to peruse the whole as part of a connected

story, and make yourself fully acquainted with all that it contains. To this end, read the paragraph twice in a very careful manner, thinking while you read, not of the question, but of the facts which the paragraph states, and of their connection with the main thread of the story. In other words, while you are reading the paragraph, dismiss the questions entirely from your mind, and think only of the general course of the narrative. After you have thus become completely master of the sense of the paragraph, then read the questions, and from your own knowledge of the subject, as obtained from the perusal of the paragraph, frame an answer to them yourself in your own language.

By this means you will receive into your mind, and fix there, a clear idea of the course of events described in the narrative. You will make the knowledge imparted by the book your own, and you will have it at command in the form in which you will require it for the purposes of reading and conversation in future life; whereas, if, as is very often practiced, you only look over the paragraph for the purpose of marking with a pencil certain words or phrases to be repeated by rote at the recitation as an answer to the question, you do not study history at all; you merely learn to repeat mechanically a set form of words.

2. At the recitation, give your answers to the questions asked you fluently, in a narrative form, and in your own language. Such a work as this, studied and recited in the proper way, will be of great service to you in increasing your command of language, and thus improving your power of expressing yourself in conversation. This, indeed, is one of the great advantages of such a study.

3. Find every place mentioned in the work upon the map, and keep the relative situations of these places in mind as you go on with the narrative. This will greatly assist you in understanding the story, and in giving to the transactions described, in your conceptions of them, the effect of reality.

JACOB ABBOTT.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

ANCIENT HISTORY.

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	DISTRIBUTION OF THE HUMAN RACE	13
II.	NINEVEH AND THE ASSYRIANS	23
III.	BABYLON	36
IV.	RUINS OF NINEVEH AND BABYLON	48
V.	FOUNDATION OF THE PERSIAN EMPIRE	59
VI.	THE STATES OF GREECE	67
VII.	DARIUS AND THE FIRST INVASION OF GREECE	72
VIII.	XERXES AND THE SECOND INVASION OF GREECE	78
IX.	ALEXANDER THE GREAT	87
X.	THE FOUNDATION OF ROME	95
XI.	ROME UNDER THE CONSULS	104
XII.	PYRRHUS, KING OF EPIRUS	109
XIII.	THE CARTHAGINIANS AND HANNIBAL	119
XIV.	POMPEY AND CÆSAR	128
XV.	EGYPT	139
XVI.	FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE	151
XVII.	ANCIENT CHRONOLOGY	155

PART II.

ENGLISH HISTORY.

I.	THE ANCIENT BRITONS	163
II.	THE ROMAN INVASION	172
III.	THE ANGLO-SAXONS	179
IV.	THE DANES	190
V.	KING ALFRED THE GREAT	199
VI.	THE NORMAN CONQUEST	210
VII.	RICHARD THE CRUSADER	220
VIII.	KING JOHN	230
IX.	KING RICHARD THE THIRD	240
X.	HENRY THE EIGHTH AND THE REFORMATION	250

CHAPTER PAGE
XI. QUEEN ELIZABETH 261
XII. OVERTHROW OF THE MONARCHY 270
XIII. THE RESTORATION 279
XIV. THE REVOLUTION 289
XV. THE ENGLISH ARISTOCRACY 299

PART III.

AMERICAN HISTORY.

I. THE ABORIGINES 309
II. COLUMBUS 318
III. SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA 331
IV. SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK 340
V. SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND 347
VI. THE COLONIAL GOVERNMENT 358
VII. THE AMERICAN CONGRESS 371
VIII. COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR 375
IX. THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE 385
X. PROGRESS OF THE WAR 393
XI. EXPEDITION OF BURGOYNE 405
XII. THE FRENCH ALLIANCE 414
XIII. THE TREASON OF BENEDICT ARNOLD 419
XIV. THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS 432
XV. THE ORGANIZATION OF THE FEDERAL UNION 442

ENGRAVINGS.

PAGE

LIFE IN THE ARCTIC REGIONS 15
GREENLANDER AND SEAL 16
ESQUIMAUX 17
TROPICAL SAVAGES 19
INDUSTRIAL ARTS 21
SITUATION OF NINEVEH 24
SEMIRAMIS IN THE WOOD 29
SEMIRAMIS ON THE WALL 31
THE BRIBE 33
KING HEZEKIAH SHOWING HIS TREASURES 39
THE HANGING GARDENS 43
CYRUS ENTERING BABYLON 47
MOUNDS 49
ARCHER—SPEARMAN—SLINGER 50
WRITING DOWN THE NUMBER OF THE SLAIN 52
ADVANCING TO THE ATTACK 53
THE COMPOUND HORSEMAN 54
CROSSING A RIVER 55
WAR CHARIOT 56
HEAD-DRESS OF A HORSE 57
DISCOVERIES 58
THE HERDSMAN'S INFANT 61
CYRUS'S HUNTING 63
EXPEDITIONS OF CYRUS 65
STATES OF GREECE 68
VIEW OF ATHENS 70
PHÆDYMA AND SMERDIS 74
CROSSING THE HELLESPONT 81
MARCH OF XERXES 82
THE PERSIAN EMBASSADORS AT SPARTA 84
MARCH OF ALEXANDER 90
MARCH THROUGH THE PASS OF SUSA 94
MAP OF LATIUM 97

PAGE

THE TWINS 98
THE BRACELETS 102
ROMAN MILITARY ROAD 105
PLEBEIANS 106
EMPIRE OF PYRRHUS 110
PYRRHUS VIEWING THE ROMAN ENCAMPMENT 115
DISPLAY OF THE ARMOR 116
DEATH OF PYRRHUS 118
SITUATION OF CARTHAGE 121
CROSSING THE ALPS 126
SCIPIO BURNING THE CARTHAGINIAN FLEET 128
CÆSAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN 130
EXCITEMENT IN ROME 132
ASSASSINATION OF POMPEY 136
THE TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION 138
THE PYRAMIDS OF EGYPT 140
THE SPHINX 141
THE STATUES OF MEMNON 142
CLEOPATRA'S STRATAGEM 146
CLEOPATRA'S ENTERTAINMENT 148
ROOM IN CLEOPATRA'S PALACE 151
BURNING OF ROME 153
RIOTS IN ROME 154
RUINS OF ROME 156
FORMS OF THE WAR CHARIOT AND THE ARMOR OF THE ANCIENT BRITONS 165
COAST OF ENGLAND AT DOVER 167
HUTS OF ANCIENT BRITONS 169
A DRUID IN HIS ROBES 170
DRUIDICAL RUIN 171
COMBAT ON THE BEACH 174
THE WALL OF SEVERUS 179
ANGLO-SAXON CHIEFTAIN 181
THE CORACLES 183
RUINS OF THE MONASTERY OF IONA 188
THE SEA-KINGS 191
ARMS AND COSTUME OF THE DANES 194
ALFRED READING TO HIS STEPMOTHER 200
ALFRED LETTING THE CAKES BURN 206
HASTINGS IN THE CHURCH 209
SITUATION OF NORMANDY 211
THE NEWS OF EDWARD'S DEATH 214
HASTINGS 216
DEATH OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR 220

PAGE
DEATH OF WILLIAM RUFUS 222
VIEW OF THE RAMPARTS OF ACRE 226
SAVE ME! SAVE ME! 235
VIEW OF RUNNY MEAD 237
KING JOHN 238
DEATH OF KING JOHN 239
YOUNG EDWARD 242
THE TOWER OF LONDON 243
RICHARD AT THE COUNCIL 245
MURDER OF THE PRINCES 248
THE QUEEN-MOTHER MOURNING FOR HER CHILDREN 249
KING HENRY THE EIGHTH 252
TRIAL OF QUEEN CATHARINE 255
THE BAPTISM OF ELIZABETH 259
ELIZABETH'S PROGRESS TO LONDON 263
PORTRAIT OF QUEEN ELIZABETH 267
PROCESS OF COINING 271
PURITANS PULLING DOWN A CROSS IN LONDON 273
BIBLE CHAINED IN A CHURCH 274
STRAFFORD ON HIS WAY TO EXECUTION 277
VIEW OF WORCESTER 282
KING CHARLES AT BOSCOBEL 285
LANDING OF CHARLES THE SECOND AT DOVER 286
VIEW OF EXETER 291
WILLIAM OF ORANGE IN HIS CARRIAGE AT THE HAGUE 294
LANDING OF WILLIAM, PRINCE OF ORANGE 297
JOHN CHURCHILL'S PRESENT 304
ENGLISH IRON-WORKS 305
WIGWAMS 311
INTERIOR OF A WIGWAM 312
INDIAN WARRIORS 313
THE AMBUSH 316
INDIAN CAROUSALS 317
PORTRAIT OF COLUMBUS 320
QUEEN ISABELLA 325
THE CARAVEL 326
LANDING OF COLUMBUS 330
ONE OF RALEIGH'S SHIPS 334
PORTRAIT OF SMITH 335
POCAHONTAS 339
BEGINNING OF SHIP-BUILDING IN NEW YORK 342
NEGOTIATING WITH THE INDIANS 344
NEW YORK IN 1664 346

PAGE

MAP OF PLYMOUTH BAY 354
LANDING OF THE WALLOONS 356
FRAGMENT OF THE PLYMOUTH ROCK 357
THE PLYMOUTH ROCK 357
THE GOVERNOR'S HOUSE 359
COLONIAL TROOPS ON A MARCH 361
THE TROOPS SURPRISED 362
THE POST-MASTER-GENERAL 364
THE BOSTON MASSACRE 369
THROWING THE TEA OVERBOARD 370
INDEPENDENCE HALL 374
MONUMENT ON BUNKER HILL 381
WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT CAMBRIDGE 382
VIEW OF BOSTON FROM DORCHESTER HEIGHTS 383
ADAMS, SHERMAN, LIVINGSTON, JEFFERSON, FRANKLIN 391
JEFFERSON READING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE 392
WASHINGTON BEFORE HE WAS APPOINTED TO THE COMMAND 397
WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT TAPPAN 398
WASHINGTON'S TENT 399
THE CAMP-CHEST 400
WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE 403
BATTLE OF TRENTON 404
BURGOYNE AND THE INDIAN CHIEFS 407
BURGOYNE'S ENCAMPMENT ON THE HUDSON 413
FRANKLIN AT THE FRENCH COURT 417
BENEDICT ARNOLD 420
VIEW IN THE HIGHLANDS 420
ROBINSON'S HOUSE 422
MAJOR ANDRÉ 424
MAP OF THE SCENE OF ARNOLD'S TREASON 425
SMITH'S HOUSE 426
LORD CORNWALLIS 433
REMAINS OF THE INTRENCHMENTS AT YORKTOWN 434
SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS 440
MOUNT VERNON 449

PART I.

ANCIENT HISTORY.

THE STORY OF HISTORY.

PART I.

ANCIENT HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

DISTRIBUTION OF THE HUMAN RACE.

What is the cause of the different climates of the earth's surface?

The various portions of the earth differ very much from each other in respect to the manner in which the sun shines upon them, both in his daily and in his annual course, and very great differences are thus produced in the climates of the several regions, and in the course of their seasons, and in all the productions of the soil, both plants and animals.

Describe the tropical regions.

In some parts of the earth, for example, the days and nights are always equal, the weather is always warm, and flowers and fruits bloom and ripen all the year round. The reason of this is, that these regions, being the central part of the earth, turn every day, as the great globe revolves, directly toward the sun. They are called the tropical regions.*

* The earth turns round every day before the sun very much as an apple, suspended by a twisted string to roast, turns before the fire. The middle parts of the apple, half way between the stem and the blossom, which are turned directly toward the fire as it goes round, correspond with the equatorial or tropical regions of the earth. Only, of course, the earth is immensely large, and the sun is at such an enormous distance that the beams of it shine very gently on the earth, even on the parts that come directly opposite to its rays.

Describe the Polar regions.

In other places, there are regions where the sun does not shine for six months at a time, and then, when the period for his shining comes, he never rises high in the heavens so as to shine warm and full upon the ground, but moves round and round the sky just above the horizon. Of course, for half the year in these regions it is winter and night, and during the other half, though they call it summer, the sun shines with very faint and feeble rays. In consequence of this, scarcely any plants grow upon the land, and the sea is covered at all times, both in summer and winter, with immense floating fields and mountains of ice. These are the Polar regions. The northern Polar regions are called the Arctic regions. The southern Polar regions have been very little explored. They are called the Antarctic regions.

Describe the temperate regions.

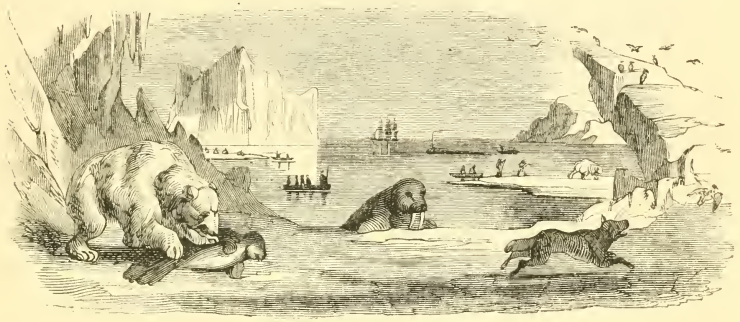
Then, besides these two extremes, there are the temperate regions, which lie between them. We ourselves live in the temperate regions. Here, for half of the year, the sun rises high in the heavens, and his beams are warm. During this period the grass grows, the flowers bloom, the fruits ripen, and the land is rich with waving fields of corn and grain. Then comes the winter, when the sun declines, and all vegetation ceases, and the ground is bound up with frost or covered with snow.

How has Nature adapted man to these different regions?

Of course, regions so different from each other as these must not only produce altogether different kinds of plants and animals, but very different kinds of men, we might suppose, would be required to inhabit them. Nature has accordingly provided a great variety of races of men to occupy the several portions of the earth, the people of each race being adapted, both in their bodily constitutions and in the capacities of their minds, for the situation in which they dwell, though they are all, as the Scriptures inform us, descended from one common origin.

What kind of animals inhabit the Polar regions?

In the Polar regions, where the sun is gone entirely for half the year, and shines very faintly and feebly for the other half, no plants except mosses, and lichens, and a few stunted shrubs can ever grow; but then the shores of the seas, and the fields and islands of ice, and all the lakes and bays, are thronged with animals. The sea is full of whales, seals, walruses, and other monsters, that are



LIFE IN THE ARCTIC REGIONS.

kept warm in the winter by the thick coats of blubber or fat which envelop them, while on the land, and over the fields of ice, white bears, wolverines, foxes, and other fierce beasts of prey are constantly prowling. These land animals are kept warm by their *fur*. Then, in the summer, immense flocks of ducks, and geese, and gulls, and other wild-fowl throng the lakes, and rivers, and bays, and swamps that lie along these shores, to make their nests and rear their young. Before the long winter night sets in, however, the birds fly away across the continent thousands of miles, taking with them the young birds that they have reared. These birds are kept warm by their *feathers*.

What qualities in men are required for these regions?

To live and to thrive in such regions as these, men must be of a very hardy constitution, so as to be able to bear cold without injury. They must be fitted, too, to subsist almost entirely on flesh

and other animal food, since scarcely any vegetables grow in such a clime. They must be endued with powers and capacities of mind high enough to enable them to hunt wild beasts, to catch and kill whales and seals, and to build such huts as they need, and yet not so high as to make them discontented or restless with their monotonous* and solitary country, and with the half-torpid life that they must lead during the long dark and dismal night of their winter.

GREENLANDER AND SEAL.

Describe the modes of life of the Polar tribes.

These are, in fact, the characteristics of the various races of men that are found dwelling on the Polar shores. They can live altogether on the coarsest flesh. They can endure the greatest extremes of cold. They build huts of the drift-wood that is brought down by the rivers, and is then washed by the sea upon their shores. They cover their huts with earth three or four feet thick to keep them warm, leaving an opening for a door in front large enough to creep in and out. When they have no drift-wood, they build their huts of blocks of snow, arching them over at the top like an oven or a dome. They light and warm their huts sufficiently for their purpose by means of big lamps fed by whale oil. They set traps for animals on land; they take fish in the lakes and at the rapids in the river with nets and hooks, and they kill seals and whales with harpoons and spears. They can travel on foot

* That which is in every part alike—without variety.

over the snow with snow-shoes which the women make for them, while some of the natives train dogs, and others reindeer, to draw them in sledges over the ice and snow. These people sometimes

ESQUIMAUX.

endure suffering, it is true, as all men must, but generally they are contented and happy in the condition in which God has placed them, so well are they adapted to it. They could not easily be persuaded to change their country or their modes of life for those of any other people.

What is known of the history of these tribes?

There are a great many separate races and nations of these Arctic men, nearly all of whom have probably lived where they do now, and as they do now, for hundreds and hundreds of years. Their history, if it could be known, would consist only of accounts of the wars which they have waged with each other, and of the seasons of famine and distress which they have sometimes endured. But their history is not known, nor would the rest of mankind feel any special interest in it if it could be discovered.

What is the state of things in the tropical regions?

In tropical regions, the state of the case is entirely changed. Here the days and nights are nearly equal all the year, and the

sun ascends every day into the mid-heavens, and shines down directly upon the land with his most powerful rays. There is no winter. Frost and snow are unknown. There is, indeed, no spring, nor autumn, but summer reigns supreme throughout the year.

What forms of animal and vegetable life prevail in the tropical regions?

Of course, in a region like this, plants thrive luxuriantly. Flowers bloom and fruits ripen in perpetual and ceaseless succession, furnishing to man and beast an abundance of food without labor or care. Trees grow in the forests to an enormous magnitude, dense underwood springs up among them, and vines and creepers twist and twine about their stems, and hang in festoons from their branches, and bind them all together in an intricate, impenetrable maze. In these entangled thickets lions, tigers, and hyenas roam and prowl in search of prey, and apes, monkeys, and parrots, and thousands of other birds of gaudy plumage, chatter, and sing, and play among the branches through all the year.

What are the characteristics of the men that inhabit the tropical regions?

The circumstances being thus so entirely different in the tropical regions from those of the Arctic or frigid zone, the men fitted to dwell in them are different too. Their color is black, that they can better resist the heat of the sun. Their constitutions are such that, while they can not endure cold, they enjoy heat, and thrive in it. They love the sun. In temper of mind they are quiet and gentle.

What are their wants in respect to food and clothing?

As the season in their country is always warm, and as fruits grow abundantly without tilling of the ground, these people have very little to do to procure themselves food and clothing. Very slightly-built huts are sufficient, too, to form their lodgings, as they only need dwellings to shelter them from the rain. Thus they

TROPICAL SAVAGES.

live almost like the animals that inhabit the forests around them, eating what comes most readily to hand, and spending the rest of the time in luxurious repose. They need no high intellectual powers, no capacities for enduring hardship or hunger, and no spirit of industry or ambition, and they are consequently not endued with them.

Describe the Bushmen.

Some of these tropical nations occupy a very humble position indeed in the scale of humanity. There is a race called Bushmen, who live in the southern part of Africa, whose life is almost wholly animal. They build no houses, but sleep under the trees, or in holes which they burrow in the ground. They live on roots, nuts, and insects, and are as wild as the chimpanzees or orang-outangs, which they much resemble.

What are the principal tropical countries?

The tropical portions of the earth that are inhabited by races like these are the central parts of Africa and South America, the islands of the Pacific Ocean that are near the equator, and a portion of New Holland.

In what respect does the condition of the Polar and tropical nations agree?

These tropical savages differ very widely from the wild men that dwell about the poles in all their mental and bodily powers and qualities, and in their modes of life. In one respect, however, they agree with them, namely, in this, that their past history has never been written, and it can now, therefore, never be known; nor, indeed, would mankind in general be expected to take much interest in the history of such wild and savage tribes, even if it could be known.

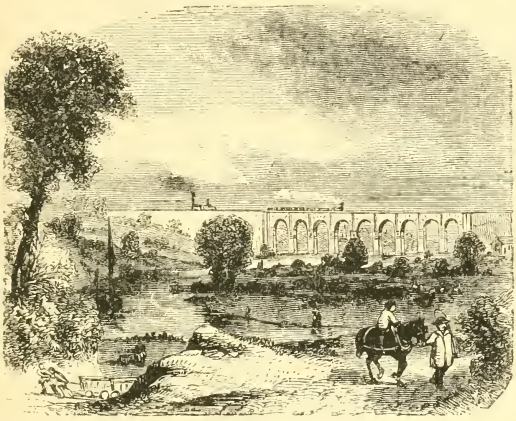
Describe the condition of things in the temperate regions.

We now come to the temperate portions of the earth. Here the course of the seasons, and the action of the sun on vegetable life, are such as to require the exercise of far higher and more intellectual qualities in man than are necessary either in the tropics or at the poles, because here man must till the ground during half of the year, and lay up stores of food produced by this tillage for the other half. Of course, he must be able to devise agricultural implements, and to make inclosures to defend his fields from wild beasts, and to tame animals to do his work, and to build barns and granaries for his stores of food, and houses to protect his family from the cold of winter. To meet these exigencies of their condition, the races that have lived in the temperate regions have been endued with higher and more intellectual natures than those that have been before described, and the powers that they have been endued with have been greatly improved by the cultivation and the exercise of them.

What are the characteristics of the races that inhabit the temperate regions?

The consequence has been, that these races have formed themselves into extensive and powerful nations, and made innumerable discoveries and improvements in the arts of life. They have established systematic governments, and enrolled immense armies,

and organized vast combinations of various kinds, to accomplish objects beyond the powers of individual men. They have dug deep mines down through the most solid rocks, and extended them under the beds of rivers, and even beneath the sea, to procure metals and coal. They have constructed roads, and invented wheel vehicles to run upon them, some by the power of animals, and others by the power of steam; and ships and steamers for the sea, in order to convey the productions of one country to another for the purpose of exchange. They have built vast cities to place the public and general stores of these productions in. They have investigated the laws of nature, and by their science and art have learned to surmount the greatest physical obstacles, and to perform the most astonishing exploits; and, finally, by means of various arts of writing which they have invented, they have kept, for many centuries, regular records of their history.



INDUSTRIAL ARTS.

What are the principal nations that have been formed from these races?

There are a great many distinct races of men that have thus formed civilized nations in the temperate regions of the earth. The principal of them are the Chinese, the Japanese, the Tartars, the Hindoos, the Persians, the Assyrians, the Greeks, the Egyptians, the Romans, the Russians, the Germans, the French, the Spaniards, the Moors, the British, the Mexicans, the Central

Americans, and, lastly, ourselves — the Americans. All these have preserved records, more or less complete and authentic, of the events of their history.

How far is the history of these nations of interest to us?

Of these various nations, however, there are very few whose history is of any special interest or of any practical value to us. That in which we are chiefly concerned is simply the line of our own history, traced back through the nations that preceded us, and from which we descended, to ancient times.

What course do we take in tracing back the line of our own history?

In going back to retrace this line, we follow, for two hundred years, the history of our own country. The people that settled this country two hundred years ago came from England. Of course, when we arrive at the origin of this nation, we proceed to the line of English History, which we follow back for about sixteen hundred years, to the point of its connecting with the Roman empire near the time of Christ. We here enter the field of what is called Ancient History, and we follow the line back through the Romans, Greeks, Persians, Assyrians, and Egyptians, till the record loses itself in the legends and traditions of the remotest antiquity. Thus the course of history which is of practical interest and value to us divides itself into three periods.

What are the three general branches of the subject?

1. Ancient History, extending from the earliest records to the decline and fall of the Roman empire.

2. English History, extending from the commencement of the first origin of the British government to the colonization of America.

3. American History, extending from the first colonization of this country to the present time.

What digressions will be required?

In following this course, however, we shall not absolutely be

confined to the history of the nations that come directly in the line, but shall be led to frequent digressions among nations incidentally and collaterally connected with them.

CHAPTER II.

NINEVEH AND THE ASSYRIANS.

What territory was first sought for settlement by the earliest inhabitants of Asia?

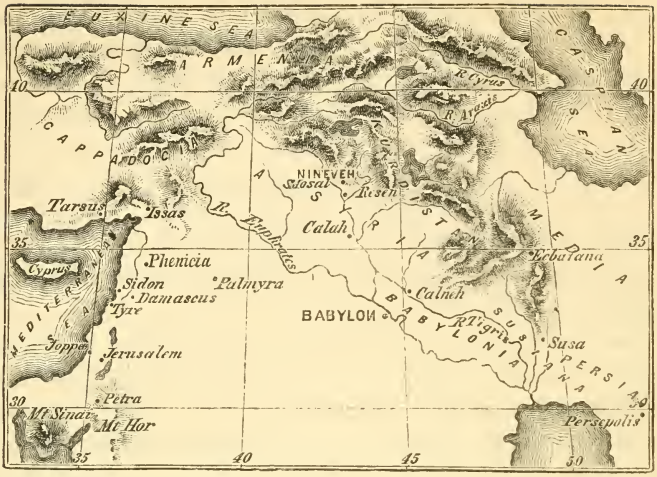
When the people were scattered abroad on the earth at the original dispersion of mankind, as described in the Scriptures, they would naturally, at first, seek out the most fertile regions, and those most easily tilled, to live in, and in these regions they would, of course, most rapidly increase and multiply. Accordingly, the first glimpses that we obtain of the history of the human race in those remote ages relate to several nations which seemed to spring up at a very early period, and nearly at the same time, on the borders of certain great rivers of that portion of the world which, as it happened, flowed through regions of extraordinary natural fertility.

What were the principal nations that were thus formed?

The principal nations that thus early organized themselves in these great river districts were these, namely, the Assyrians in the country of the Tigris, the Babylonians in that of the Euphrates, and the Egyptians in the valley of the Nile. In addition to these there was another very important nation, the Phœnicians, whose country was near the eastern shores of the Mediterranean Sea.

What was the situation of these countries?

The situation of these ancient nations in respect to each other you will see by the following map. The first named of them, the Assyrians, as appears by the map, occupied the country watered by the Tigris, and their capital was Nineveh.



What was the capital of Assyria? Of Babylonia?

We should have known probably very little about the Assyrians at the present time had it not been for the celebrity attained by the city of Nineveh, which was the capital of the country, and which acquired great renown all over the world in its day for its magnificence and splendor. It was the same in respect to Babylon and the Babylonians, who will form the subject of the next lesson.

What are the sources of information in respect to these cities at the present day?

At the time when these cities flourished the art of writing was not known, so it happens that no true and authentic accounts have come down to us respecting them. There were, however, a great many legends and tales that were related in those days in regard to the manner in which they were built, and to the people who lived in them; and these tales, when the art of writing was at length discovered, were narrated more or less fully in the works of various authors, and thus have come down to our day.

What evidence is there in respect to the truth of these accounts?

It is impossible now to determine how far these tales are true. There is no doubt, however, that the cities themselves really existed, and that they were very prosperous and powerful, for the places where they stood have been found at the present day, and the ground is covered for miles with long grassy ridges and mounds, which are found, on digging into them, to be filled with ruins and remains of every kind, bricks, sculptures, utensils, images, columns, and almost every other kind of architectural relic. Some of these relics will be presently described.

Which was the oldest of these cities?

Nineveh is supposed to have been the oldest of these two cities; at least, the period of its power and prosperity was earlier than that in which Babylon flourished. Some of the legends and tales that are related of its early history are very curious and entertaining.

In what way do great cities usually arise at the present day, and in what situations?

And here it must be remarked, that cities and towns in ancient times were founded and built up very differently from those of the present day. Now they grow up gradually of themselves, as it were, as places of trade or of manufacture, wherever conveniences naturally exist for carrying on these pursuits, as, for example, at good landing-places on rivers, or around harbors on the sea, or by the side of waterfalls, where the flow of the water can be used to drive mills and machinery.

And how did great cities usually originate in ancient times?

In ancient times they were built by kings and chieftains to gather the people into for defense, or to make safe places for the residence of their courts, or the head-quarters of the armies.

What sort of defenses were constructed?

The first thing to be done, therefore, in founding an ancient city, was to build a wall about it to protect the people within. It was

not necessary, in general, that these walls should be very strong, for there were no cannon in those days, nor any other means of battering down a wall except to hurl stones and beams of wood against it, or to undermine and overthrow it by means of pickaxes, spades, and levers.

Where do we find the first account of the founding of Nineveh?

The first foundation of Nineveh took place at so early a period that the event is recorded in the Book of Genesis, where, in chapter x., 11, it is said, "Out of that land went Ashur, and builded Nineveh." The place was undoubtedly, at first, only a small walled town—a sort of stronghold of the chieftains who first occupied it to retreat to with their troops, and a place for the laborers to live in who cultivated the neighboring fields. It gradually increased, however, and became, at length, great and powerful.

From what source probably was its early prosperity first derived?

This prosperity was owing, in part, to the very fertile character of the surrounding country; for the whole country through which the Tigris and Euphrates flow is a vast plain, which has been famed from the earliest ages for the beauty of the scenery and the fruitfulness of the soil.

What monarch first made it a great capital?

Nineveh did not, however, acquire any considerable celebrity for centuries after this time. It was made a great capital at last by Ninus, a king of the country, who arose some centuries later, and became a mighty conqueror. Ninus possessed greater talents than the kings and chieftains around him for organizing armies and carrying on wars, and so he invaded the territories of his neighbors, and conquered them, in spite of all their efforts to resist him, and thus brought their lands under his dominion, compelling the laborers who tilled the fields to pay tribute and taxes to him instead of to them, and to work for him in building the

walls of cities and towns. Thus he made himself master of a great empire.

Describe the plans which Ninus adopted for making Nineveh a great capital.

When at last he was well established in his power, he determined to build a splendid capital for the metropolis of his kingdom, and he made choice of Nineveh, which was well situated on the banks of the river, in a central part of his dominions, for the site of it. He accordingly began to lay his plans for the new city, and then proceeded to execute them on a very grand and magnificent scale by means of the money which he collected from the people, and of the labors which he compelled them to perform. He built new and strong walls around it, and reared splendid palaces, and laid out parks and gardens, and collected together a large population of merchants and artisans to carry on commerce and manufactures in it, and then, when his work was finished, he invited all the princes, potentates, and nobles of his realms to come and make it their abode.

What was the empire called over which Ninus ruled?

The empire which Ninus thus established, and of which Nineveh became the capital, was the Assyrian empire—the first great empire of ancient times.

Who was the most celebrated sovereign of the Assyrian line?

Ninus was succeeded by a line of Assyrian sovereigns, of whom the most celebrated of all was the renowned Queen Semiramis. She was the queen of Ninus during that monarch's lifetime, and after his death she reigned for a time herself as regent for her son, who was very young when his father died.

What led the people of those days to invent such wonderful tales about their sovereigns?

The story of Semiramis's life was a very marvelous one. Men were accustomed in those days to invent very wonderful tales about their kings and queens, partly to impress the people with

very exalted ideas of these personages, and partly to amuse them by the narration of interesting stories. Of course, at the present day, these tales are not believed, but it is useful to know what they were.

Relate the account that was given of the birth of Semiramis.

The story of Semiramis is that she was the child of a goddess. This goddess lived on the banks of a beautiful lake, which had the magical power of changing into fish every thing that fell into the water. The goddess, soon after the babe was born, determined, in a fit of passion, to kill the father of her child, who was a young shepherd that lived near the lake, and also to kill herself. She wished to destroy the babe too, but she could not bear to kill it with her own hands, and so she carried it into a lonely place in the woods, and left it there under a tree to die. When she had thus disposed of the child, she murdered the young shepherd its father, and immediately afterward she leaped into the lake herself, intending to destroy her own life. Instead of being drowned, however, she was turned into a fish by the magical power of the water, and from that time she continued to live in the lake in that form all the rest of her days.

How was the babe saved from perishing in the woods? What was the name of the shepherd who received her?

Nor did the poor child die that had been left exposed in the wood. A flock of doves found her lying there under the tree, and they at once took compassion on her. While some of them hovered about the spot to watch over her as she lay, others went off to the neighboring cottages to see if they could not, in some way or other, contrive to bring her food to eat. The shepherds who lived in the cottages saw the doves, and, observing their extraordinary actions, determined to follow them into the woods and see what it meant. The doves led the shepherds to the place where the babe was lying. The shepherds took the child, and carried her home, and one of them, a man named Simma, having no chil-

SEMIRAMIS IN THE WOOD.

dren of his own, adopted her. He named her Semiramis, and brought her up in his cottage as his own child.

Relate the circumstances of her marriage.

As Semiramis grew up, she became renowned through all the country around for her beauty, her wit, her graceful manners, and the sweetness of her disposition. Now it happened that Simma, her adopted father, was chief of Ninus's shepherds in this province, and when Semiramis was about seventeen years of age, and in the highest bloom of her beauty, the king sent one of his chief officers, named Menon, to make a survey of his flocks there. Menon came to the country of the shepherds to attend to this duty, and so saw Semiramis at Simma's house. He was enraptured with her beauty and her grace, and he immediately offered her his hand. Semiramis was for a long time unwilling to leave her adopted father and her happy home among the shepherds, but finally she allowed herself to be persuaded, and she became Menon's wife. Shortly afterward she bade her father and all her old

companions farewell, and went away with Menon, in great state, to Nineveh.

How was her husband at length temporarily separated from her? How did she rejoin him?

She lived in Nineveh two or three years very happily, until at length, in one of the wars in which Nineveh was engaged, Menon, who was a general in the army, was called upon to accompany the king on a grand military expedition which he was about to make into the country of the Bactrians, which lies to the eastward of Assyria. The expedition was quite successful for a time, but at last the army arrived before a city called Bactra, which made so obstinate a resistance that for a long time they could not subdue it. They encamped about it, and invested it closely on every side, but the walls were strong and high, and they could not gain admission into the city. At length, after a considerable time had passed, Menon began to wish to see his wife again, whom he had left in Nineveh, and, as he could not be spared from the army to go and visit her, he sent word by a messenger requesting her to come and visit him. She was very ready to come, and, in order to travel more safely, she disguised herself as a young man, and in this way made the journey without meeting with any molestation. In due time she arrived safely at the camp. Menon was overjoyed to see her.

Describe the exploit which she performed at the siege.

Semiramis immediately began to take an interest in the siege, and, after examining carefully the situation of the army and of the town, she observed that there was a certain tower at a corner, which, being built on a rocky eminence, had been left somewhat unguarded. She said to her husband that if he would give her a band of good and true men, such as she would choose out of his troops, she would climb up to that tower and get possession of it, and thus gain access to the city. Menon consented. Semiramis made the attempt, and succeeded triumphantly. She climbed up

with her men to the tower, and, as soon as they had got upon the wall, they made signals to the army below, and opened the gates and let them in. Thus the city was taken.

SEMIRAMIS ON THE WALL.

What was the result of this transaction?

The king was, of course, struck with admiration at the heroism of the deed, especially when he learned that the leader of the band that scaled the tower was a young and beautiful woman, the wife of one of his generals. He immediately sent for her, and when he came to see her, he was so much struck with her beauty and commanding air, that he told Menon that if he would give her up to him he would give him his daughter Sosana for a wife.

How did Menon receive the king's proposal? How did the affair end?

Menon absolutely and positively refused to make any such exchange. "Then," said Ninus, "I will compel you to give her up. I will torture you till you do, and I will begin at once by putting out your eyes." Menon was dreadfully distressed and terrified by

these threats, but still he would not give up his wife, and, finally, he was driven to such a pitch of desperation in his anguish that he killed himself. Ninus then married Semiramis, and thus she became the Assyrian queen. What she herself thought of these proceedings, and how she felt at being thus transferred from one husband to another, no one knows. There is no evidence that she made any objection.

What became of Semiramis after her marriage to the king?

Ninus returned to Nineveh, taking Semiramis with him, and there they lived together in peace and prosperity. After a time they had a son named Ninyas, and not long after Ninyas was born, Ninus died. Semiramis herself then took possession of the empire in the name of her son, and she reigned for many years in great magnificence and splendor. She greatly enlarged the city, and adorned it with many sumptuous edifices. She carried on many foreign wars, and built and embellished a great many cities, and performed a vast number of heroic exploits. She died at length, after having acquired a character of having been one of the most remarkable women that ever lived.

Who was Sardanapalus? What was his character?

The first severe shock which the Assyrian empire received took place under the reign of a monarch named Sardanapalus. He was a very effeminate and dissolute man. He spent almost all his time shut up in his palaces with the dancing and singing women and girls that he kept there for his amusement, and he devoted himself entirely to the kind of pursuits and occupations that such women would be naturally pleased with, until at length he carried his effeminacy to an almost incredible extreme. He used to dress himself in woman's attire, and curl his hair, and paint his face, and put on jewels and other ornaments such as women were accustomed to wear in those days. Indeed, he seemed to wish that he was a woman himself, and he did all in his power to change himself into one.

What effect did his mode of life produce? Who headed the conspiracies formed against him?

Of course, such a mode of life as this rendered the man odious and contemptible to his subjects, and very soon the affairs of the government, being wholly neglected, became involved in great confusion. The people were indignant at this misrule, and very soon the governors of some of the great provinces began to plan a rebellion. One of the chief leaders in these plots was Arbaces, the governor of Media. He wished very much to obtain access to Sardanapalus in his palace, in order to see for himself whether his conduct was as effeminate and disgraceful as public rumor represented it. For a long time, however, he could not succeed. The servants of the palace, according to Sardanapalus's orders, would not allow visitors to go in.

How did Arbaces at length contrive to gain admittance to the palace? What was the result of his observations?

At length Arbaces applied to a eunuch, who is a sort of servant employed a great deal by Oriental sovereigns, and offered him a

THE BRIBE.

golden cup as a bribe to induce him to admit him to see the king. The eunuch yielded to this temptation, and Arbaces went into the palace in disguise. He was fully confirmed in his opinion of the infamy of Sardanapalus's conduct by what he saw. He communicated the results of his observations to the other leaders, and they immediately matured their plans. The rebellion broke out, and the whole country was soon involved in war.

What was the end of the rebellion? What desperate plan did Sardanapalus at last adopt?

The rebels gradually gained ground against the king, defeating his armies one after another, until at length Sardanapalus himself was obliged to retreat to Nineveh, where he was closely shut up, and reduced to the greatest straits. At last, finding that there was no hope for him, and being determined that neither he himself, nor any of his household, nor even his treasures, should fall into the hands of his enemies, he resolved upon destroying them all. So he selected from among his palaces one which stood, among others, in the midst of an inclosure of parks and gardens in the heart of the city, and ordered all his treasures to be carried there, his gold and silver utensils, his costly armor, his stores of embroidered garments, his signets, his jewels, and his gems. He also sent to the same palace his women, his eunuchs, his dancing and singing girls, and all his household. Finally, he went in himself, and then ordered the doors to be shut and barred, and the palace to be set on fire. The order was obeyed, and the palace, with the king himself, his household, and all his treasures, were burned up together.

Describe the conflagration.

So great was the pile, that the fire continued to burn, they said, for fifteen days. There was a wall around the inclosure which was guarded all the time by soldiers, who, in accordance with the king's command, would not let any body come in. The people outside saw the smoke of the fire, but it was several days before

they found out what such a great conflagration among the palace buildings could mean. They thought it was some great sacrifice that the king was offering.

What became of the Assyrian empire at the death of Sardanapalus?

At the death of Sardanapalus, the first or great Assyrian empire came to an end; for the leaders of the rebellion, when Sardanapalus was overthrown, divided the empire into three separate kingdoms, making one for each of them. Of these new kingdoms, Media was one, Babylonia was another, and what remained of Assyria, with Nineveh for the capital, was the third.

What became of Nineveh?

The city of Nineveh never recovered from the blow that it received at the revolution that took place in the days of Sardanapalus. It gradually declined in wealth and power, while the other divisions of the empire, Babylonia and Media, gradually increased, and at length, a few hundred years later, the kings of these two realms united together in one of the wars that broke out, and laid siege to Nineveh. The people of Nineveh defended themselves as well as they could, but the defense they made only served to exasperate their enemies, so that at length, when the Babylonians and Medians succeeded in getting possession of the city, they were so infuriated against the inhabitants that they sacked it, and destroyed it altogether. The territories of the Assyrians were after this absorbed in those of their conquerors, and thus this famous empire, considered as a separate and independent power, came to a final end.

What calculation has been made in respect to the duration of the Assyrian empire?

Although so little is known at the present day of the Assyrian empire, or of the kings that ruled over it, the period during which its power and prosperity continued was very long. According to the best calculations that can now be made, the town of Nineveh

was first built 2400 years before Christ, and it was not till 900 years before Christ that the great empire was brought to an end in the days of Sardanapalus. The smaller empire continued 300 years more. Thus the whole duration of this famous dominion extended over a period of 1800 years, which is nearly as long as from the Christian era to the present time.

CHAPTER III.

BABYLON.

What was the situation of Babylon in respect to Nineveh?

By looking at the map placed near the commencement of the last chapter, you will see the situation of Babylon in respect to Nineveh. Nineveh was on the Tigris, while Babylon was on the Euphrates. The distance of one of these cities from the other was about three hundred miles in a straight line, and considerably farther by the course of the river.

Which was the most ancient city?

It is very probable that Babylon was originally built at as early a period as Nineveh; but as the period of its independent power and its greatest prosperity was much later, we have received more full accounts of it than of the former city.

When did Babylonia become an independent kingdom?

During the time that the Assyrian empire was in the height of its power and splendor, the region of country in which Babylon was situated, which was called Babylonia, was a part of it, and was ruled by a governor who derived his power from the King of Assyria. After the destruction of Nineveh in the time of Sardanapalus, as related in the last chapter, this province became an independent kingdom, and the power and wealth for which Nineveh had been so renowned was transferred in a great measure to Babylon, its great southern rival.

Who was governor of Babylon at the time of the fall of Sardanapalus? What thought occurred to him after the burning of the treasures?

There was one transaction, by which the wealth of Babylon was increased at the expense of Nineveh, that was very curious. It occurred immediately after the fall of Sardanapalus and the burning of his treasures. It happened that the name of the governor of Babylon at that time was Belesis. He was one of the rebels who conspired against Sardanapalus. After the fire was over, and he and his fellow-conspirators had obtained full possession of the city, it occurred to him that there must be a large amount of value in the form of gold and silver, and perhaps of other things not fully consumed, remaining in the ruins.

What means did he contrive for getting possession of the treasure that remained?

So he wished to get possession of all the remains of the fire, and he contrived this ingenious way of doing it. He informed the other rebel generals that in the midst of the fight he had made a vow to the god of Assyria that, if the god would grant him victory, he would convey all the ashes of the conflagration to Babylon, and deposit them in a great temple which he would build to receive them there in honor of the god.

"And now," said he, "since victory has been bestowed upon us, I feel bound to fulfill my vow."

What was the result of this scheme?

Of course, the generals could not well make any objection to so pious a proposal as this, and so Belesis set his men at work to gather up all the remains of the fire and convey them to Babylon, and there immense quantities of gold and silver were found, which Belesis employed in embellishing the city and in enriching his royal treasures.

How much is known of the line of Babylonian kings?

Belesis made Babylon a great and wealthy capital. After him

we find, in ancient accounts, a record of a line of monarchs whose reigns extended over a period of several hundred years. We know nothing, however, of all these kings except their names. Indeed, after the time of Belesis, the first information that was obtained of the Babylonian history is the accounts contained in the Scriptures of the intercourse and connection between the Babylonians and the Jews.

What was the first act of intercourse between the King of Babylon and the Jews?

The first act of intercourse was a very friendly one. The King of Babylon sent a complimentary embassy to King Hezekiah to congratulate him on his recovery from sickness. Hezekiah received the messengers with great distinction, and showed them all his treasures.

Through what regions did the road between these countries lay?

By referring again to the map, you will see that the distance from Babylon to Jerusalem was not very great, though the road from one of these cities to the other lay through a somewhat dreary and desert country. Jerusalem was nearly west of Babylon, as you will see.

What effect did the display which Hezekiah made of his treasures have upon the Babylonians? What consequences ensued?

Hezekiah acted very unwisely in making such a parade of his treasures to the Babylonian embassadors, for, of course, their report to the king, when they should get home, would awaken in his mind a desire to get possession of them. This, indeed, was the effect; and before a long time, wars broke out between the Babylonians and the Jews, and a series of invasions took place, in the course of which all the Jewish treasures were seized and carried off, and at last the people themselves were made captives, and driven across the deserts to Babylon, to work as slaves for their conquerors there.*

* The curious circumstances under which the wars between the kings of Babylon

KING HEZEKIAH SHOWING HIS TREASURES.

How were the captive Jews employed in Babylon?

The work which they had principally to do was to dig water-courses for the overflow of the rivers—the lands all about Babylon being low and level—to make dikes and embankments, to

and the Jews first broke out, and all the particulars of the several invasions, are given in a very interesting manner in the books of Kings and Chronicles, beginning at 2 Kings, xxiii., 29.

make bricks, and build walls and towers with them, and to construct other public edifices in and about the city, and to perform personal services for their owners.

How long did the captivity last?

This captivity lasted seventy years. How it terminated we shall presently see.

Who was the most celebrated of the Babylonian kings?

The king who figured most conspicuously, perhaps, among all the Babylonian sovereigns, was Nebuchadnezzar. He was one of the greatest and most renowned of all the kings of Babylon. He very much enlarged the city, and embellished it with most magnificent structures, so as to make it, at the time, the wonder of the world.

How is the city described by the ancient historians?

The most marvelous accounts have come down to us of the extent and grandeur which Babylon attained when the improvements which he made in it were completed. The sides of the city, it was said, were fifteen miles in length; this would make the inclosed area more than two hundred square miles. We must not suppose, however, by any means, that all this great space was occupied with streets and buildings, for the cities of that age of the world always included vast spaces of open ground, which were used for parks, gardens, forests for hunting, and even for tillage land. Indeed, Babylon, as represented by the writers of those days, was a small kingdom inclosed in walls rather than a city.

Describe the walls. How were the Babylonian bricks manufactured?

The walls were very thick and very high. They were built of brick, and were cemented by a bituminous sort of slime, which is found in that part of the country, and which answers exceedingly well instead of mortar. The reason why bricks were used for architectural constructions in Babylon instead of stone was, that there were no stone-quarries near, the country for hundreds of

miles, up and down the river, consisting of level plains, which seem to have been formed almost entirely by alluvial deposits from the river. The soil beneath the surface in all these plains was formed by a sort of half-indurated mud and slime, which could be cut out by the spade in square blocks, and these blocks, when dried, made very good bricks without baking. Thus, in fortifying the city, the material which came out of the ditches was used to make the wall, and this was so convenient that it was easy to make the ditch very wide and deep, and the wall very broad and high. It was said that the walls of Babylon were so broad in some places that ten or fifteen carriages could drive abreast upon the top of them.

Describe the form of the city and the arrangement of the streets.

The city was square, and there were twenty-five gates on each side, making one hundred gates in all. There were twenty-five streets each way, running from the gates on one side to those on the other. These streets crossed each other at right angles, and divided the whole interior area of the city into six or seven hundred squares or blocks, each of which must have been about three quarters of a mile in length each way. The houses and other edifices of the city were built only along the margin of the squares, by the side of the street, leaving the whole interior of them for gardens, parks, lawns, pleasure-grounds, and fields for cultivation.

Why was a large space for cultivation within the walls considered necessary?

It was considered very important to have a large space of ground for cultivation inclosed within the walls of the city, so that, in case of its being besieged by an enemy, and of the siege being protracted beyond the time that the supplies of food would last, the people could raise food from this land, and thus maintain themselves much longer against the danger of famine than would otherwise be possible.

In what way did the river divide the city? How were the banks of it defended?

The River Euphrates flowed through the city from north to south, and divided it into two equal parts. The walls of the city were continued along the banks of the river, with gates opposite to the streets, and steps to go down to the water. These inner walls were, of course, not so strong as the outer ones, for it was not supposed that any army could enter in that way except by coming up or down in boats on the river, and this, of course, would be an exceedingly difficult and dangerous operation.

Describe the palaces and the gardens.

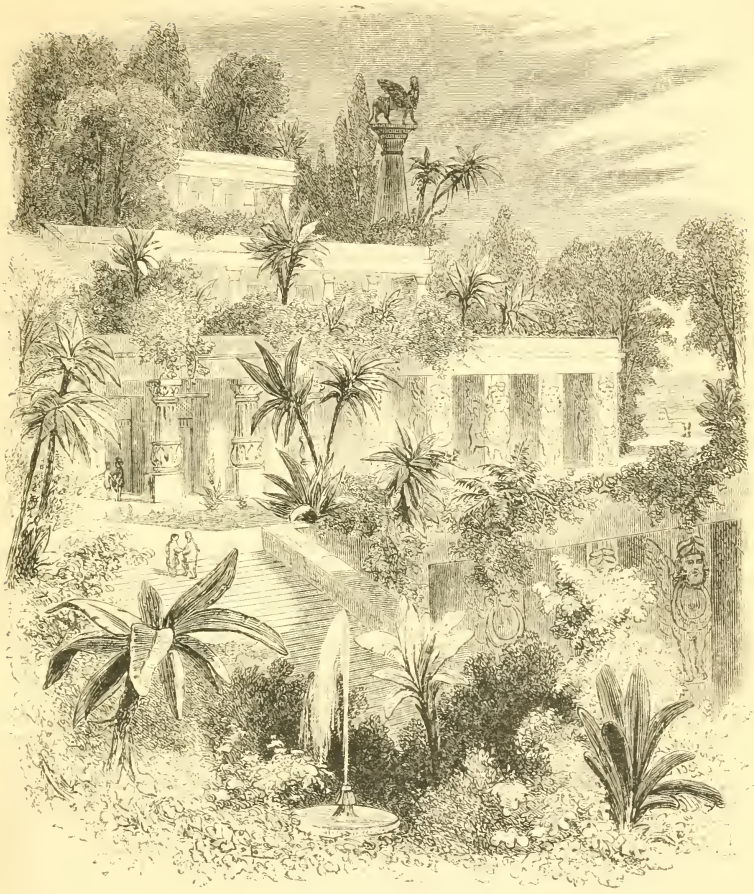
Nebuchadnezzar built very magnificent palaces, too, in Babylon, and surrounded them with parks and gardens, all very beautifully laid out, and most splendidly adorned. But perhaps, after all, the most wonderful of all his structures was what was called the hanging gardens, though the structure might, perhaps, more properly have been called an artificial mountain.

What were the circumstances which led Nebuchadnezzar to conceive the idea of the hanging gardens?

His particular object in building this curious work was to please one of his wives, a young and beautiful princess named Amytis. She was a native of Media, which is quite a mountainous country, and when she came to reside at Babylon, though she was pleased with the extreme beauty and fertility of the plains which lay along the river, she complained of the monotony of them, and said she longed to see a hill. The celebrated hill called the hanging gardens was the result.

Describe the gardens.

The structure consisted of a series of platforms or terraces, supported on arches of masonry, rising one above another, so high that the topmost one overlooked the walls of the city, which were said to be more than a hundred feet high. The several platforms were formed of immense flat blocks of stone, which were brought from



THE HANGING GARDENS.

a great distance up the river for this express purpose. On these platforms was laid a very deep covering of garden mould, deep enough for the largest trees to grow in. These various platforms, thus covered, were laid out and cultivated as gardens, with walks, parterres of flowers, groups of trees and shrubbery, fountains, stat-

ues and bowers, and with broad flights of steps leading up from one platform to the other. The structure must have presented some such an appearance as is represented in the preceding engraving.

What great power at length began to overshadow the Babylonian kingdom?

The Babylonian empire rose to a very high degree of grandeur and renown under the reign of Nebuchadnezzar, and its power continued in a great degree unimpaired under Nebuchadnezzar's successors for many years. At length another great power, which had been for some time rising, farther to the northward, began gradually to overshadow it. This was the empire of the Medes and Persians.

What king of the Medes and Persians laid siege to Babylon? Who was then king of Babylon?

At length Cyrus, the king of that country, in the course of his conquests advanced toward Babylon, and laid siege to the city. This was during the reign of a king of Babylon named Nabonadius—the same who in the Scriptures is called Belshazzar. He was a very effeminate and inefficient man, and he left the whole management of the government and the defense of his capital in the hands of his mother, the Queen Nitocris.

Who was Nitocris, and what was her character?

Nitocris was a woman of remarkable genius. She was, as it seems, quite distinguished in those times for her engineering and architectural plans. She had contrived, and caused to be executed, several grand designs for improving and beautifying the city. She caused to be constructed, for instance, an immense lake or reservoir, to take off the superfluous water in case of a flood, and thus prevent the land being devastated by inundation. She, too, had built the bridge which connected the two parts of the city across the Euphrates. Some time before she died, she caused her tomb to be built over one of the principal gates of the city, where it long remained a monument to her memory.

How did Nitocris manage the war?

Nitocris, being left by her son Belshazzar in charge of the defense of the city against the invasion of Cyrus, displayed a most wonderful degree of courage and energy in carrying on the war. A great battle was fought at first without the walls, but the Babylonians were defeated and driven within the city, and were shut in by Cyrus, who then commenced a siege which lasted several years.

What was the plan which Cyrus finally devised for getting into the city?

At length Cyrus contrived a way of getting into the city, which has been celebrated in all ages of the world as one of the greatest strategic exploits in war that were ever performed. This plan was no less than that of diverting the Euphrates from its course, and then marching his army into the city along the old bed of the river.

What was the first step in executing the plan?

In executing this plan, Cyrus first employed a vast number of men to build dams across the river above the city, and to open channels to convey the waters off over the surrounding country, which was very low and level, and contained great numbers of old, deserted channels, and wide tracts of low, swampy land to receive it.

What was the object of the gateways which he constructed in the new channels that were dug?

In constructing these works, Cyrus made gateways in the sluices and dams, so as not to change the flowing of the water till all was ready, and he took great pains to conceal the operations from Belshazzar's armies within the city.

How did Belshazzar act while these preparations were going on?

In the mean while, Belshazzar within the walls felt perfectly secure. The fortifications of the city, although they would have

made but little resistance to the cannonading of modern warfare, were complete protection, he thought, to the battering-rams of Cyrus's army, and he little knew what means the enemy was taking to effect an entrance. In this feeling of security he, with his nobles devoted himself to the enjoyment of all the gayeties, luxuries, and festivities which his palaces and the resources of his city could furnish.

What were the final preparations made by Cyrus for the execution of his plan?

Cyrus meantime pushed forward the execution of the scheme by which he was to gain admittance unresisted into the besieged city. He stationed a very large detachment of troops at the opening in the wall where the river entered the city, and another at the other side of the city, at the opening where the river came forth. He then gave orders that, as soon as these forces should observe that the water of the river had subsided and disappeared, they should go down into the bed of the stream and march into the city.

What was the result?

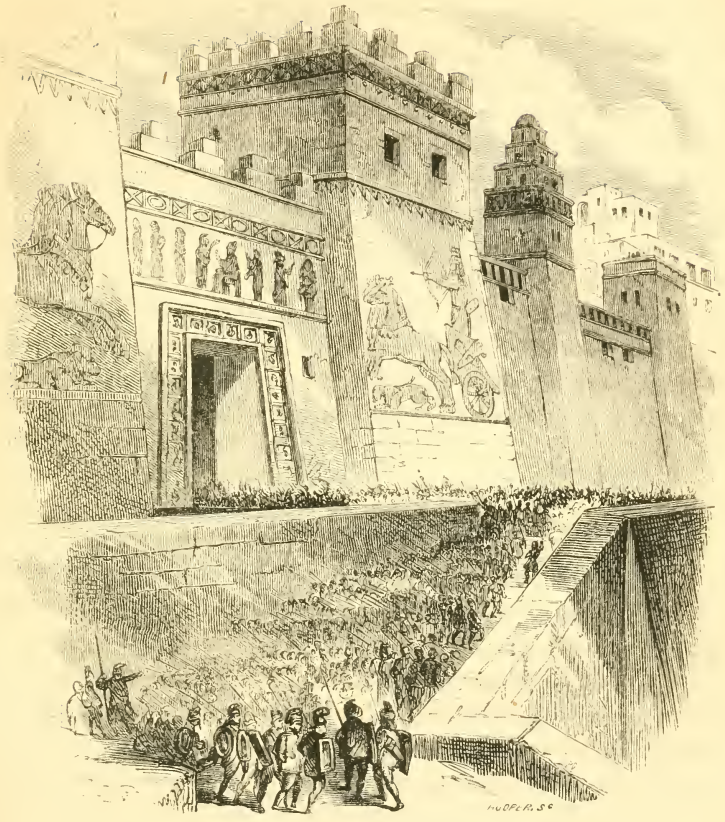
When all these preparations were ready, the proper orders were given, and the gates in the dams were shut, and those in the sluices opened at such a time in the evening as to cause the bed of the river within the city to be laid dry in the course of the night. The army of Cyrus then marched in over the sands, now bare, and then, going up the stairways, entered the city through the gateways in the river walls, which had been left comparatively unguarded.

How many columns entered the city?

Thus the enemy came suddenly into the city, and marched without opposition to the very heart of it, one column coming from the north, and another from the south wall.

What became of Belshazzar?

Belshazzar was found carousing with the nobles of his court in the royal palace, where he was put to death in the midst of the company.



CYRUS ENTERING BABYLON.

What book in the Scriptures contains an account of these transactions?

The book of Daniel, in the Bible, contains a very interesting narrative of the downfall of Belshazzar.

What was the condition of Babylonia after this conquest?

From the time that Babylon was thus taken, the city itself, together with the country pertaining to it, became a province of the

great Medio-Persian empire. The people revolted from time to time, and endeavored to regain their independence, but they did not succeed. Babylon gradually declined in wealth and power, and at length all its mighty edifices went entirely to ruin.

What became of the Jewish captives at this time? In what books do we find the history of their return, and of their efforts to rebuild Jerusalem?

Not long after the conquest of Babylon by Cyrus, the Jews were released from their captivity, and were allowed to return to their native land. Very interesting accounts of the difficulties which they encountered on their return, and of the labors, dangers, and sufferings which they incurred in rebuilding Jerusalem, are given in the Scriptures, in the books of Ezra and Nehemiah.

CHAPTER IV.

RUINS OF NINEVEH AND BABYLON.

What degree of reliance is placed at the present day in the accounts given of Nineveh and Babylon by ancient writers?

A great many of the marvelous tales that were related in ancient times of the cities of Nineveh and Babylon are considered entirely fabulous at the present day, and it might even have been doubted whether such cities ever existed, were it not that the ruins and remains of them have recently been discovered and extensively explored. The remains found among the ruins prove the truth of many of the ancient accounts.

What was the general appearance of the ruins when first observed?

These ruins remained concealed for more than a thousand years, none of them being visible above the surface of the ground. Nothing was to be seen, indeed, on the sites which they occupied but long grassy ridges and conical mounds, which, though very cu-

MOUNDS.

rious in their form and appearance, presented nothing to the eye indicating their true character as ancient ruins.

Why is it that these cities went so entirely to decay?

These cities would probably not have gone so entirely to decay if they had been built of any solid material, such as granite or marble, for the pyramids, and many of the columns and temples in Egypt, which are of far greater age, remain standing to the present time. But the structures of Nineveh and Babylon, having been built chiefly of bricks made out of the mud dug out of the meadow lands, and hardened only by being dried in the sun, in the course of a few centuries went entirely to ruin, and the exterior surfaces of the heaps, being softened by rains, were gradually covered with soil and vegetation, and so, in process of time, it was entirely forgotten that there had ever been any cities there.

Who first explored the mounds, and what did they find?

Within a few years, however, certain French and English travelers in the East undertook to dig into some of these mounds, and explore the contents of them. They found them full, in every part, of bricks, pottery, ruined walls, sculptures, fragments of architectural ornaments, and other ancient relics and remains, which not only prove that these places were really the sites of ancient cities of vast extent and magnificence, but also furnish us with a great deal of curious information in respect to the customs, usages, and modes of life which prevailed in those ancient days.

What was done with the relics that were discovered?

A great many of these relics, containing inscriptions and pictorial representations, which were found lining the walls of the palaces, have been taken out carefully and carried to England, where they have since been set up in the British Museum, in long rooms similar in form to those in which they were found, and where they may now be seen and examined by all the world.

Describe the sculptures which were discovered.

Some of these sculptured pictures represent hunting scenes, and some battles and sieges, showing the forms of ancient weapons, and the modes of warfare practiced in those days. Others give us views of civil or military processions, or of scenes in domestic life. We can thus learn from them a great deal about the forms of the furniture, the utensils, and the arms used by the ancient Assyrians and Babylonians, and also gather much information in respect to their usages and modes of life.

What weapons are represented in the three figures shown?

Here, for example, are three figures of warriors, showing the kinds of weapons and armor which were used in those days.

ARCHER.

SPEARMAN.

SLINGER.

What is the first warrior, and how is he armed?

The general character of the dress in all these figures is the same, though the weapons are different. The archer has one of his arrows in his hand, and he holds his bow in the other. He has also at his side a quiver to put his spare arrows in. The quiver is made to hold his bow likewise.

What is the second warrior, and how is he armed?

The second is a spearman. He wears a crested helmet on his head, and he holds a large round shield on his left arm. His legs are protected by chain-mail.

What is the third warrior, and in what position is he represented?

The third warrior is a slinger. He has just thrown a stone. He holds another in his hand ready to put into the sling, and he has, moreover, a small pile of stones at his feet. All three of the warriors have swords by their sides, in addition to their own appropriate weapons.

Describe the group representing the ceremony of writing down the number of the slain after a battle.

Many of the sculptures on these slabs represent groups of men performing certain acts, by means of which we obtain an insight into several of the customs of these ancient nations. On the following page, for example, is one representing the mode by which, after a battle, the victors were accustomed to reckon up the slain. The soldiers are bringing in the heads of their enemies and throwing them together in a heap, in the presence of two officers appointed to keep the reckoning. One of these officers is counting the heads, and the other is writing the number down.

In what respect do the figures in this group correspond with the others?

The dresses of these men are similar to those of the other figures. They are archers, and their bows, being not in use, are placed in the quivers.

WRITING DOWN THE NUMBER OF THE SLAIN.

Describe the group representing men attacking a city.

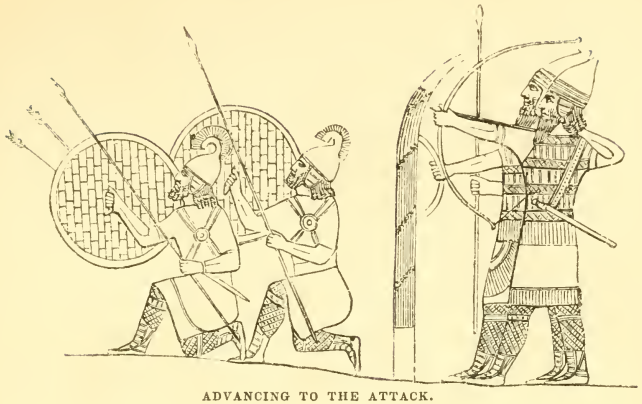
On the opposite page is a sculpture representing soldiers advancing to the attack of a besieged city. The two foremost are armed with shields and spears. The shields are to defend them from the arrows which the enemy shoot at them from the walls of the city. Two such arrows have been already intercepted, and we see them sticking in one of the shields. The men are crouching down and kneeling as they advance, so that their bodies may be more perfectly covered and protected by the shields.

What is the arrangement for protecting the archers?

The two other men are armed in quite a different manner. One of them is an archer, and is armed with a bow and arrow, while the other one supports a large shield before him to protect him. A spearman can hold his own shield, for it requires only one hand to throw a spear; but for a bow and arrow both hands are required.

Describe the shield used to protect the archers.

The shield is very large: the lower end of it rests on the ground,



ADVANCING TO THE ATTACK.

so that all the shield-bearer has to do is to keep it in an upright position, and also to move it forward from time to time as the archer advances. This he does by means of a handle which we see attached to the inner side of the shield.

What is the form of the top of it?

The top of the shield is bent over, so as to protect the faces of the men standing behind it.

What else does the shield-bearer carry besides the shield?

The shield-bearer, besides his shield, is armed with a spear. He manages the shield with one hand, and the spear with the other. The two spearmen in front wear the same kind of crested helmet that we saw on the head of the spearman in the single figure on a previous page, and the archer and his shield-bearer wear pointed ones, like that of the slinger.

What custom prevailed in those days in respect to fighting in pairs?

It seems to have been very much the custom in those days for soldiers to fight together in pairs, like this archer and shield-bearer, and to conduct various other operations in the same manner where more than one pair of hands was required. Sometimes even there

are three, as, for example, in the chariots of war, where there are usually represented three men standing up together, one to drive, one to hold a shield, and a third, the warrior, who is armed for the fight. We should have supposed that three men standing thus together in one small chariot, each having a different function from the rest to perform, would have been very much in each other's way; but it seems that, by careful training to the duty, they acquired so much skill in it as to act together as if they formed but one man—a sort of six-legged and six-handed man.

Describe the sculpture representing two men fighting as a pair on horseback.

Here is another sculpture which affords a very remarkable ex-

THE COMPOUND HORSEMAN.

ample of these complex animals. It consists of two horses, ridden by two men, one to drive both horses, and the other to fight with a bow and arrow. You can see that the left-hand horseman holds the reins of both horses, so that the other rider may have both

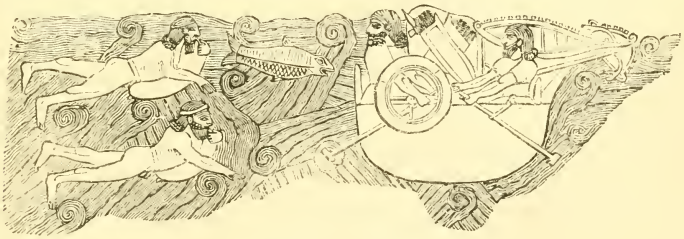
hands free for his bow and arrows. He has a quiver, and we can see the ends of the spare arrows projecting out of it a little way at the top.

What sort of boats are represented on these sculptures?

The boats that are represented in these ancient sculptures are very curious. It seems that the original mode of making boats on these rivers was to take the hide of an ox, or some similar animal, and stretch it over a frame of osiers. The form of such a craft would, of course, be very peculiar—short and broad, and more like an oval bowl than a boat. Besides these boats, the men were accustomed to swim across the rivers by means of the skins of smaller animals, which they inflated for this purpose, and placed under them to buoy them up, as a boy would do with a bladder.

Describe the sculpture representing the crossing of a river.

Here is a sculpture showing these things very plainly. The



CROSSING A RIVER.

waving lines which form the groundwork of the picture represent water. In one place we see a fish swimming in it. There are a great many such water-pieces as this in the different sculptures. The boat goes first, transporting a war chariot. We can see the wheel, and the other parts of the chariot in the boat. Two men, denoting soldiers of the army, are following, swimming on inflated skins. The man who is steering the boat is looking back to see how the swimmers get along. There are two other men rowing. We know that the articles in the boat are the parts of a war chariot, because in many of the other sculptures we have full repre-

sentations of these chariots going into battle, and the parts are the same as are represented here. In one sculpture, indeed, there is a representation of people on the bank of the stream taking a chariot to pieces, in order to put it into a boat, while other persons standing by are blowing up their skins in order to get ready to swim.

What is the action represented in the sculpture of the war chariot?

Here is a representation of one of the chariots complete. Ob-

WAR CHARIOT.

serve the peculiar structure of it, and the style of the harness. By comparing the several parts of this chariot with those in the boat, you will see that they are the same.

Describe the form of the chariot and the action of the men.

The wheels of the chariot, you perceive, are massive, though low, and the body is small. There is just room enough for two men to stand. One holds the reins of the horses, while the other is armed with a bow and arrow. He is just shooting the arrow. Beneath the horses lies a wounded enemy. His attitude denotes that he is in pain. His bow and his quiver lie by his side.

There are two quivers full of arrows by the side of the chariot. There is also a spear ready to be seized at any moment when it is required. The bird flying above the horses represents a vulture flying toward the battle-field to devour the slain.

How are the horses caparisoned?

The horses are gorgeously caparisoned, their trappings being adorned with tassels, and rosettes, and other similar embellishments. It is so with almost all the horses that are represented in these sculptures. Observe, for example, how splendidly this horse's head is adorned.

HEAD-DRESS OF A HORSE.

There seems to have been an established fashion in respect to all these things, for on all the sculptures the devices of the dress and equipage are very nearly the same.

By what means have these ancient relics been brought to light?

Travelers from England and France, visiting the ruins of Babylon and Nineveh, have made vast excavations in the mounds, with the assistance of the Arab natives, and have brought to light these relics.

Were the Arab natives who lived near these mounds acquainted with what they contained?

The country bordering on the rivers Tigris and Euphrates is inhabited by Arabs, a wild and half-civilized people, who live in villages of huts which they have built along the banks of the rivers, and sometimes on the slopes of the mounds. They have no idea whatever of the history, or even of the existence of the ancient cities whose ruins lie buried under their soil. When the English and French travelers began to dig into the mounds, they supposed that they were searching for hidden treasures, and noth-

ing could exceed the amazement which they manifested as they stood around the excavations and gazed on the prodigious sculp-

ASTONISHMENT OF THE NATIVES.

tures, and the curious utensils and relics that were brought to light.

What degree of civilization do these sculptures indicate in the Assyrians and Babylonians?

It is very plain, from these sculptures, that the ancient Assyrians and Babylonians were quite a cultivated people, and had made great progress in many of the arts and refinements of life.

CHAPTER V.

FOUNDATION OF THE PERSIAN EMPIRE.

Describe the situation of Media and Persia. Who laid the first foundations of the Persian empire?

To the eastward of the great river valleys watered by the Tigris and Euphrates—the region of the cities of Nineveh and Babylon—are the two countries of Media and Persia—Media on the north, and Persia on the south. During the period while Nineveh and Babylon were flourishing, these countries, too, were gradually increasing in wealth and power, until at length they entirely overpowered those earlier dominions. The great conqueror in whom the power of the Medes and Persians was first combined was Cyrus, and he subsequently extended his command over all that part of Assyria, thus laying the foundation of the great Persian empire.

What is thought at the present day of the accounts given of Cyrus by the ancient historians? Why are these accounts deemed incredible?

This Cyrus was one of the greatest and most renowned conquerors of ancient time. He lived, however, at so early a period, that no authentic and regular accounts of his history were written at the time, and the world was, accordingly, filled for some hundreds of years after his death with the most romantic and marvelous tales respecting him. We can not possibly believe these stories, even if we were to wish to believe them; for, besides being so marvelous, they are, many of them, inconsistent with each other. It is well, however, to know what some of these stories were.

What was the parentage of Cyrus?

A remarkable tale is told of a very narrow escape from destruction in his infancy. He was born in Media, and was the son of

Mandane, who was a princess of that country, her father being the king. The king's name was Astyages.

Describe the occurrence which led Astyages to feel alarm in respect to his daughter.

One night, at the time when Mandane was living at home with her father as a young maiden, Astyages had a dream concerning her which frightened him. Kings in those days, who governed, not by any just right, but by despotic and arbitrary power, were always ready to take alarm in respect to the tenure of their sway, and Astyages imagined that his dream denoted that his daughter would in some way or other be the means of dethroning him. "Ah!" said he to himself, "she will marry some warlike prince, and will rebel against me and take away my crown."

What measures did Astyages adopt to avert the danger? Whom did he choose as a husband for Mandane?

In order to prevent this calamity, the king began to look about for some husband for Mandane who was of so gentle and quiet a disposition that there should be no danger of his cherishing any such ambitious designs. He made choice of Cambyses, the prince or governor of Persia, which country seems to have been at that time, in some sense, a dependency of Media. So Mandane was married to him, and soon after she went to Persia with her husband.

In what way was the alarm of Astyages renewed?

By-and-by Astyages had another dream, which led him to suppose that the danger which he had to fear from Mandane would come from her son, and not from her husband. This frightened him more than ever, and he sent for Mandane to come home, in order that he might kill her child as soon as it was born.

What measures did he now adopt?

Accordingly, as soon as the child was born, he gave it to one of his officers named Harpagus, with orders that he should kill it. He was very unwilling to kill the child himself, and so he gave it

to a herdsman, directing him to carry it out into the woods, and leave it there till it was dead, and then to bring the body home.

Describe the situation of the herdsman's family at this time. What became of Cyrus?

Now it happened that the herdsman's wife had a child at this time that was dead, and the body was lying in the hut when her husband brought little Cyrus home. So she concluded to make an exchange. She kept Cyrus alive, and carried her own child out into the woods, intending to leave it there a few days, and then to take the body to Harpagus and pretend it was that of Mandane's child. While the body was lying in the woods, a man was stationed near to watch it, and drive off the beasts and birds of prey.

THE HERDSMAN'S INFANT.

In due time they carried the body back to their hut, and Har-

pagus came to see it. He then went to the king and told him that Mandane's child was dead. He was perfectly sure of it, he said, for he had seen the body.

When at length these things were discovered by the king, was he pleased or displeased that Cyrus was saved? What return did he make to Harpagus?

Several years elapsed before it was discovered by the king that Cyrus was alive. He had then become a tall and handsome boy, and the king, when he accidentally discovered him, was very much pleased, though he was dreadfully enraged with Harpagus for having failed to obey his command to kill him. He punished Harpagus by killing *his* son in the most cruel and horrid manner. Harpagus made no open complaint, but he secretly resolved to be avenged.

Where and how was Cyrus brought up?

Cyrus was sent to Persia to his mother, and was brought up there. Here he was educated in a very thorough and careful manner, according to the customs and modes of education adopted in those days. He was taught to wrestle, to run, and to perform various other athletic exercises. He was practiced also in the use of arms and armor employed in those days—the spear, the javelin, the bow and arrow, the shield and the sword. He was often taken out into the forests, too, with the other young men of the court, to practice what he had learned in hunting wild beasts.

What was his character in his youth?

Cyrus became a great favorite while he lived in Persia with his mother, on account of the amiableness and gentleness of his manners, and the kind and open-hearted honesty which he manifested in all his actions. In a word, he was a general favorite among all who knew him.

When did he return to Media?

When he was about twelve years old, he went to make a visit to his grandfather in Media, and remained there several years.

How did he appear there, and how was he regarded?

Here he attracted much attention, and made himself a still greater favorite than he had been at his father's court in Persia. He surpassed all the young men of the court in strength, in agility, in manly courage, and in the high moral and intellectual qualities which he manifested in all his intercourse with those around him.

Describe the adventure that he met with in hunting.

The following engraving represents an incident that occurred in hunting, that strongly illustrated the ardor and impetuosity of his character. The hunting party, while hunting a stag, came to a dreadful chasm, and all except Cyrus reined up their horses instinctively upon the brink of it; but he drove on, and went over

CYRUS'S HUNTING.

it, though at the imminent risk of his life. On gaining the farther side of the chasm, he pressed on, overtook the stag, and killed him with his javelin.

What was the character of Cyrus when he became a man? Who first conceived the idea of making him king?

At length Cyrus returned to Persia, and there, in process of years, grew up to be a man, and, as might have been expected, from the energy and impetuosity of character which he had manifested as a youth, an aspiring and ambitious man; and in process of time, Harpagus, who had not forgotten his vows of vengeance against Astyages, began to form plans to raise a rebellion, and, after dethroning Astyages, to make Cyrus king of Media and Persia in his place.

What was the result of these plans?

He communicated this plan to Cyrus, and Cyrus, after some hesitation and delay, concluded to accede to it. He raised an army in Persia, and marched into Media. Harpagus joined him, and the revolution was effected. Astyages was deposed, and Cyrus ascended the throne as King of the Medes and Persians.

Describe the first military expedition which Cyrus undertook.

As soon as he had well established himself in power, he began to think of enlarging his dominions, and one of the first expeditions which he undertook was the invasion of the territories of Crœsus, king of Lydia. You will see the situation of Lydia, and the route which Cyrus took in marching into it with his army, by looking at the opposite map.

Who was Crœsus, and for what was he chiefly renowned?

Crœsus was immensely rich. He obtained his riches from the gold which was found abundantly in one of the rivers in his dominions. The common proverb, "as rich as Crœsus," refers to him. Sardis was the capital of his dominions, and the River Halys was the eastern boundary of it. The capital of Cyrus, in Media, was Ecbatana. The situation of all those places can be seen upon the map.

Describe the situation and extent of Crœsus's dominions.

Crœsus was not only very rich, but he was also very powerful,

EXPEDITION OF CYRUS.

and he had himself been extending his conquests very far and wide beyond the boundaries of his native kingdom of Lydia when Cyrus went to meet him.

What was the result of Cyrus's invasion of Lydia?

Cyrus was successful in his invasion. He defeated Crœsus's armies in the field, and then besieged and conquered Sardis, the capital, and finally took Crœsus himself prisoner, and carried him away captive. He, however, allowed him a great deal of liberty, and treated him always with the utmost kindness and consideration.

What other great military expedition did Cyrus undertake? How did it succeed?

Cyrus acquired great renown from the success of this expedition to Lydia, and not very long after his return he marched into Babylonia and laid siege to Babylon, as was related in a preceding chapter. Here he was successful too, and thus the boundaries of his empire were still more enlarged. Thus he went on from one

conquest to another, until at length almost the whole of Asia, so far as it was then known to the world, was under his sway.

What new plans did he now form?

One might have supposed that he would now be content, but the ambition of these great conquerors is insatiable, and at length, after the lapse of many years, among his other plans, he conceived the desire to conquer the Scythian country, which lay beyond the River Araxes, which you may see on the map to the north of Media.

Who was the queen of the Scythians at this time? What was her proposal to Cyrus when he reached her frontiers?

The sovereign of this country was a queen named Tomyris. Cyrus, after some fruitless negotiations, advanced to the Araxes, and was planning how he should cross it, when Tomyris sent him word that she did not fear him, and that he need not trouble himself to devise any ingenious way of getting across the river, for she was willing to allow him to cross without resistance. She would retire three days' march from the river, she said, if he wished, and let him come into her dominions without opposing him; or, if *he* would retire three days' march from the river, she would come into *his* dominions, and fight him there.

Which of the alternatives did Cyrus choose? What was the result?

Cyrus chose the former, and so he crossed the river and marched into Scythia. Tomyris met him, and a battle was fought. First Cyrus's soldiers seized Tomyris's son, and he, in his anguish and despair at having been made a captive, killed himself.

Describe the circumstances of Cyrus's death.

Afterward a greater Scythian force came up, and another battle was fought, in which Cyrus himself was killed. Tomyris was so exasperated with him for coming to invade her dominions, and for having caused the death of her son, that she cut off his head and plunged it into a bucket filled with the blood of Persians, saying

as she did so, "There! bloodthirsty wretch! you can there drink as much blood as you will." Thus the mighty conqueror came to a miserable end.

Who succeeded Cyrus?

After the death of Cyrus the army left Scythia and went home, and the immense empire which he had established fell into the hands of Cambyses, his son and successor.

At what time did Cyrus live?

The time when Cyrus lived was between five and six hundred years before Christ. He commenced his reign in the year 559 B.C. This is almost the first date in ancient history that is considered as certainly known.

CHAPTER VI.

THE STATES OF GREECE.

When the Persian empire had extended itself to the confines of Europe, what group of states did it find rising to power and ready to oppose it there?

During the time while these three Asiatic empires—the Assyrian, the Babylonian, and the Persian—had been successively rising to power, and each falling again to make way for the next, a great many other states and kingdoms had been gradually growing up in different parts of the world. Among them were the *States of Greece;* and when, at length, the Persian empire had extended itself so as to include all the western part of Asia, it began to come into collision with these states of Greece, and a series of dreadful wars arose between those two great powers, which continued for hundreds of years. Before beginning to narrate the history of these wars, I must go back, and give some account of the origin of the different states and kingdoms of Greece, and of the character of the people.

Describe the situation of the States of Greece. What waters separated these countries from the Persian dominions?

The territories of Greece were situated in Europe, near the confines of Asia. They were separated from Asia, as appears in the map, by the Ægean Sea and the Sea of Marmora, and by the straits connecting the Sea of Marmora with the Black Sea on the north and the Ægean Sea on the south. It is necessary to observe this particularly, for in the wars that took place between the Greeks and the Persians, one of the greatest difficulties and dangers which the armies encountered in the outset was the getting over this water. They usually crossed at the narrow strait which lies between the Ægean Sea and the Sea of Marmora, which was called in those days the Hellespont.

STATES OF GREECE.

Describe the face of the country. What was the character of the people?

The country of the Greeks was farther to the north than that of the Assyrians, Babylonians, and Persians, and, instead of consisting of smooth and level plains, it was very rugged and mountainous, and the character of the people, in consequence of this very fact, perhaps, was quite different from that of the inhabitants of the river valleys of Asia. They were more hardy, more intellectual, more active and energetic, and far more capable of enduring fatigue, privations, and suffering.

Describe the system of government that they adopted.

They loved liberty too, and wished to manage their own public business themselves, instead of giving themselves up, as the Asiatic nations were always ready to do, to the arbitrary sway of a despotic sovereign. Thus, instead of one great kingdom or empire, the people of Greece formed themselves into a great many separate republics and states, in which the people themselves, in assemblies which they held for this purpose, regulated and controlled the government. They often had kings, indeed, but then they kept these kings under a strict responsibility, and, when they overstepped or abused their power, they rose against them, and deposed, and sometimes killed them. Indeed, they were, in all essential respects, republics rather than kingdoms.

Which were the two most prominent states? For what is Macedon celebrated?

The two most prominent and important of the states of Greece were Athens and Sparta. Besides these, there were two other kingdoms, situated to the northward of Greece proper, that subsequently acquired great renown—namely, Epirus and Macedon. Macedon became celebrated through Alexander the Great, who was king of that country, and who acquired great fame, both for himself and his native land, by his conquests eastward in Asia. Epirus owed its fame, in the same manner, to Pyrrhus, one of its kings, who was also a great conqueror, though the course of his expeditions was turned westward into Italy and other parts of Europe. We shall come to the history of these heroes by-and-by. All that is necessary now is that you should notice the position of these countries on the map, a little north of the great Grecian peninsula.

Describe the cities of Athens and Sparta.

The city of Athens was on a neck of land called the Peloponnesus, just north of the entrance to the Peloponnesus, while Sparta was situated within the peninsula. They were both populous and

powerful cities, and they exercised a great influence and control over all the other states of Greece. They were rivals to each other, and often enemies, especially when there was no foreign foe to contend with.

What was the situation of Athens?

Athens was one of the most beautiful cities in the world. It was built at the foot of a steep, rocky hill. The summit of this

VIEW OF ATHENS.

hill was strongly fortified, and was called the Acropolis or Citadel, and there were many temples and monuments upon it, all magnificently adorned.

For what qualities were the Athenians celebrated?

The Athenians were celebrated for their wealth and refinement, and for their exquisite skill in music, painting, and sculpture. They were great scholars too, and the fame of their science and

philosophy was renowned throughout the world. They had learned the art of writing, and poets and historians arose among them whose works were very much admired. These books, of course, could not be printed, for the art of printing was not known in those days; so the authors were accustomed to read them aloud, at the great assemblies of the people that were convened from time to time for games and celebrations.

Describe the characteristics of the people of Sparta.

The Spartans were a very different people from the Athenians and the other Greeks. They affected to despise wealth, and to contemn luxury and refinement in all its forms. They prided themselves on their fortitude, their energy, and their indomitable powers of endurance. They trained up their children to endure hardships, to despise pain, and to be utterly reckless of danger. They considered the Athenians as effeminate, ostentatious, and vain; while the Athenians considered them, on the other hand, as rude, rough, and little better than savages. They laughed at the Spartans' iron money and black broth, and insisted that, to possess courage, strength, and fortitude, it was by no means necessary that men should make themselves barbarians.

Describe the general situation of the rest of the country.

Besides Athens and Sparta, there were other cities and kingdoms in Greece, which were sometimes independent of each other, and sometimes were confederated together in groups and combinations, which were continually changing. The country was inexpressibly beautiful, the landscape being varied every where by a succession of blue mountains, fertile valleys, and picturesque shores where deep and tranquil bays alternated with bold headlands and promontories, and by large and fertile islands, scattered every where over the surface of the surrounding seas.

In what respect did the architecture of the Greeks differ from that of the Asiatic nations?

The buildings which the Greeks constructed were far more en-

during than those of the Asiatic nations, for they were made of marble instead of mud bricks. The remains of them continue to the present day. They are all in a state of great dilapitation and decay, it is true, but many of them still retain such a degree of preservation that the original form and proportions of them can be plainly seen, and they are considered to this day as the most perfect models of architectural beauty that the world has ever produced.

At what time did these states of Greece come first into collision with the Persian empire?

It was with these states of Greece that the great Persian empire came into collision, in the period immediately succeeding the first establishment of it by the conquests of Cyrus the Great.

CHAPTER VII.

DARIUS AND THE FIRST INVASION OF GREECE.

Who succeeded Cyrus as king of Persia?

At the death of Cyrus, the government of the Persian empire devolved upon Cambyses, Cyrus's eldest son.

What was the character of Cambyses?

He was a monster of despotism and cruelty. He commenced his career by an invasion of Egypt, and there, after a great variety of disasters, he was at length killed. He had a brother named Smerdis, but this Smerdis had been assassinated by Cambyses's orders, so that when Cambyses himself was dead, there was no one to succeed to the throne.

Who was Smerdis the Magian, and what ambitious design did he form?

There was another Smerdis—a Magian—among the officers of Cambyses's court, and he resolved to take the command of the empire, and pretend that he was Cyrus's son. His name was the

same, and then, besides, he looked like the true Smerdis. There was another thing that favored the deception, and that was that it was not generally known that the true Smerdis was killed, for Cambyses had ordered the assassination to be perpetrated secretly.

Did Smerdis succeed in his attempt? How did he attempt to prevent the people from discovering the imposture?

Smerdis the Magian succeeded in making the people think that he was the true prince, and he governed the country for some time without any opposition. He kept himself all the time closely shut up in his palace, allowing no one but his own family and servants to see him, for fear that something might happen by which the people might find him out.

What danger did he most fear?

The thing that he was particularly afraid of was lest some one should see his ears. It seems that Cambyses, some years before this time, had ordered his ears to be cut off in a fit of anger against him, and Smerdis was now very much afraid that he might be discovered by means of this indelible disfigurement; so he kept himself closely shut up, and also covered his ears carefully with his hair.

Describe the scheme which the nobles formed for discovering the truth.

In process of time, however, some of the nobles began to suspect him, and finally they laid a plot to induce one of his wives, named Phædyma, who was a daughter of one of the leading conspirators, to go to him when he was asleep and feel for his ears. It was Phædyma's father that proposed to her to do this. At first Phædyma was afraid. She said that she should not dare to do such a thing. But her father urged her, saying that, if Smerdis was really an impostor, the deception ought to be made known.

Phædyma at last consented to do as her father desired, though she knew that she hazarded her life in the attempt. "If he has no ears," said she, "and if I awaken him in attempting to feel

for them, I am sure that he will kill me. He will kill me on the spot."

PHÆDYMA AND SMERDIS.

How did the plan succeed?

Phædyma examined and found that the ears were gone. The conspirators, when they learned this, matured the plot. Darius was the leader of them. They broke into the palace and killed the impostor Smerdis, and then, organizing a new government, they put Darius at the head of it.

Who was the leader in this revolution, and by what name was he afterward known in history?

This was Darius the Great. He is so called partly on account of the splendor and magnificence of his reign, and partly to distinguish him from another Darius, who was king of Persia at a subsequent time.

What great design did Darius conceive in respect to Greece?

It was in the reign of Darius the Great that the first great contest took place between the Persians and the Greeks. Darius himself was the aggressor. He conceived the plan of an invasion of Greece, intending to conquer the whole country and annex it to the Persian dominions. The idea of undertaking this great enterprise was first suggested to him by a Greek physician named Democedes, who was at that time a captive in Susa, which was then the capital of the Persian empire.

Relate the circumstances which led to the first acquaintance between Democedes and Darius.

The way in which Darius came to know Democedes was this. One day, when he was riding furiously in the woods, in hunting, he fell from his horse and hurt his ankle. All the physicians of the court tried to cure it, but they only made it worse. At length somebody informed Darius that there was a Greek captive in the city who was very skillful as a physician, and so Darius sent for him. Democedes soon cured the ankle, and subsequently became a great favorite of the king.

What resulted from this acquaintance?

Democedes gave Darius a great deal of information about Greece, and at length contrived to interest him in the plan of invading that country. His proposal was that Darius should first send out a secret expedition to explore it, and bring back an account of its resources, its geographical situation, and such other information as would be necessary for the proper conducting of the campaign.

What was the secret motive of Democedes in making this proposal?

Democedes was very cunning in forming this plan. His motive was to make the scheme a means of affording him an opportunity to return to his native land.

"For," said he to himself, "if the king sends a reconnoitering party to explore the country, he will, of course, send me as a guide

to them, and then, when I once get to Greece, I will take good care not to come back again."

How did the expedition of Democedes end?

This cunning contrivance was very successful. Darius sent the expedition and directed Democedes to go with it as guide. Democedes went, and he pretended to be very much interested in the object of the mission until he got into Greece, but then he made his escape from the party and left them to take care of themselves. After meeting with a great variety of adventures and narrow escapes, and being finally reduced to a state of great destitution and distress, they made their way back again to Darius, and reported all that they had learned.

For what cause was the invasion of Greece for a time delayed?

Darius resolved to put his plan of the invasion into execution, though he was obliged to postpone it for some time on account of other wars in which he was then engaged in Asia, and of rebellions that had broken out in his dominions, and which, of course, it was necessary first to suppress. At length, when all his other enemies were subdued, he began to organize his grand expedition into Greece.

Describe the arrangements which Darius finally made for the invasion of Greece.

He assembled an immense armament, and put it under the command of one of his generals named Datis. He also ordered a large fleet of ships, galleys, and transports of all kinds to be collected together at Cilicia, which was the nearest point on the Mediterranean Sea. His plan was to march his troops to that point by land, and then to convey them the rest of the way over the sea, by means of this fleet.

What course did the expedition take in advancing into the Grecian territories?

The plan above described was carried into effect. The troops marched to Cilicia and there embarked on board the fleet. The

fleet soon afterward set sail. It advanced along the southern shores of Asia Minor, and then turned to the northward into the Ægean Sea. As the fleet moved slowly on, the commanders stopped from time to time to take possession of such islands as came in their way. The people on the other islands assembled upon the heights to watch the progress of this immense armament as it moved majestically along. It was supposed to be the greatest fleet which at that period of the world had ever been assembled.

What effect was produced in Athens by the approach of the fleet? Where did the Persian expedition land?

The people of Athens were in the greatest consternation, for the fleet was advancing directly toward that city. They had sent to Sparta and to other parts of Greece for aid, but no force could be assembled in sufficient season to prevent the landing of the troops. The fleet advanced up the channel between the island of Eubœa and the main land, which you will see upon the map,* and there were brought into port near Marathon, which was not very far from Athens, and the troops were safely landed. There were about a hundred thousand men.

What was the comparative strength of the two armies?

The Greeks, on the other hand, when their forces were all assembled, were found to consist of only ten thousand, and the generals were in great doubt and perplexity what to do. Some were in favor of shutting themselves up in the city, and defending themselves as well as they could there; but one of them, named Miltiades, was strongly in favor of going out to attack the enemy on the plains of Marathon, where they were encamped.

What was the proposal made by the Greek general?

"If the ten thousand men will follow me," said he, "we will break through the hundred thousand Persians, and drive them into the sea."

* For the situation of the Ægean Sea, and of the countries here referred to, see the map on page 82, or refer to any ancient Atlas.

Was this proposal accepted? Describe the battle that took place, and the result of it.

The Greeks acceded to this proposal. They marched out under the command of Miltiades, and advanced toward the plains of Marathon, where the Persians were encamped. The Persians were astonished to see them coming. They could not think it possible that so small a force would dare to attack the immense host that was arrayed against them. The Greeks, however, came on with headlong impetuosity, bearing down all opposition, and cutting their way into and through the ranks of the enemy with a fury that nothing could withstand. The Persians, in various parts of the field, continued for some hours to struggle against them, but they were finally beaten in every part and driven off, some into the surrounding fens and morasses, and others into the sea. A small portion of the force succeeded in regaining the ships and galleys, and, after encountering great hardships and suffering, made their way back again to Persia.

What is the name of this battle?

This was the great and celebrated battle of Marathon. It was the end of the first Persian invasion of Greece.

What other expedition against Greece did Darius form?

After this, Darius formed another plan for the invasion of Greece, intending to put his son Xerxes in command of the expedition, but he died before the time arrived for the expedition to set out, and Xerxes, his son, reigned in his stead.

CHAPTER VIII.

XERXES AND THE SECOND INVASION OF GREECE.

What step did Xerxes take after his accession in respect to Greece?

As soon as Xerxes had succeeded to the throne, and had set-

tled the affairs that required his immediate attention in Persia, he held a grand consultation of his officers and generals to consider whether he should go on with the expedition which his father had planned for the invasion of Greece.

How did he propose to vary Darius's plan?

He said that if he should decide to undertake the enterprise, he should not attempt to convey his troops in ships by sea as his father had done, but should march them by land to the Hellespont, and cross there by means of some sort of bridge that he would construct for the purpose.

What was the counsel of Mardonius?

Mardonius, one of his chief generals, expressed a strong approval both of the plan itself, and of the proposed mode of executing it. He said that it was manifestly the destiny of Persia to rule the world, and that, as all the neighboring nations in Asia had already been subdued, the next step in the path of glory which lay before the monarchs of the Persian empire obviously was to subjugate Greece. He said, too, that by the plan which Xerxes proposed, namely, to enter Greece by means of a bridge across the Hellespont, he could take a force into Greece so overpowering that all attempts at resistance would be utterly hopeless and impossible.

What was the opinion of Artabanus? How did Xerxes decide?

Xerxes had an uncle named Artabanus, a venerable man, who was eminent in wisdom as well as advanced in years; and he, when it came to his turn to speak in the council, strongly dissuaded his young nephew from embarking in any such enterprise. He told him that it might possibly prove very easy to get into Greece, and yet not at all easy for him to get out of it again. But Xerxes was young, and ardent, and very sanguine in his disposition, and nothing that his counselors could urge would persuade him to give up his design.

Describe the plans which Xerxes formed, and arrangements that he made for carrying them into execution.

So he immediately began to form plans, and to make arrangements in every part of the empire, for enlisting soldiers, purchasing horses, establishing granaries and depôts of provisions, manufacturing arms and ammunition, and wagons and carriages of every kind that were used in the military movements of those days. These operations occupied four years, and at the end of that time the various divisions of the army were assembled at their several places of rendezvous, ready to commence their march; and at length, when the appointed day came, they all advanced together on the different converging roads that led to the shores of the Hellespont, at the point where the bridge was to be made.

What occurred in respect to the bridge?

The bridge was to be a floating one, built of boats. The strait was too wide and deep for any other kind of structure. The boats for the bridge had all been made before the army arrived. They were now soon arranged in position, and the bridge was made, but a storm coming up, the structure was broken to pieces by the winds and waves, and so they were obliged to build it a second time.

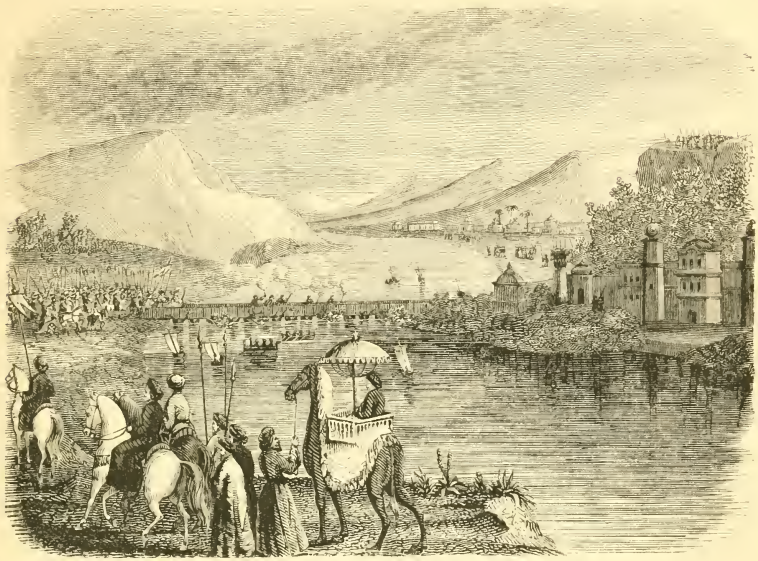
How was the bridge constructed?

There were two ranges of vessels placed side by side, from shore to shore. These were all secured to their places by strong cables. Over the decks of the vessels a platform was made of timbers, and this was covered with a thick layer of earth for a roadway.

Describe the final crossing of the bridge by the army.

When the bridge was completed, the immense army commenced its march across it in a magnificent procession, arrayed with the utmost possible pomp and parade. There were horses and chariots elegantly equipped and caparisoned, and camels, and elephants, and guards splendidly dressed and armed, and torch-bearers carrying torches aloft in the air, and waving banners and sounding

trumpets. This was the head of the procession. It occupied the



CROSSING THE HELLESPONT.

two first days. It consisted first of the vanguard, and then of the king himself, with his guards and attendants, and the officers of his court. The whole army was so large that it took seven days for the troops all to pass over.

For what purpose did the army halt at Doriscus?

After the passage of the strait had thus been safely effected, Xerxes marched the whole army to a great plain, called the Plain of Doriscus, not far from the place, and there went through a grand review of the whole mighty host. Besides the land forces, there were a great many ships that were attendant on the expedition, and these were drawn up in a line a little way from the shore.

Describe the review of the troops on land.

When every thing was ready, Xerxes ascended into his war chariot, and, accompanied by a great cavalcade of officers and

guards, he rode along the lines of his troops, reviewing them all. They had been collected from the different nations of Asia, and as each separate division of them wore the dress and bore the arms peculiar to his own tribe or people, the different portions of the line presented an immense variety of splendid equipment, which formed a most magnificent spectacle. The lines extended many miles. They made a reckoning of the men while encamped on this plain, in order to ascertain the number, and found it to be one million seven hundred thousand. There is, perhaps, no reliance to be placed on the accuracy of this calculation. Indeed, it is quite certain that the number was greatly exaggerated, but there is no doubt that the army was immensely large.

Describe the review of the fleet.

After thus reviewing the land forces on the plain, Xerxes embarked in a galley of state, and, accompanied by other galleys for his officers and attendants, with flags and banners waving, and the

oars of the rowers keeping time with the music of military bands. he reviewed the fleet, which was drawn up along the shore.

Who was Demaratus?

It happened that there was a Greek exile named Demaratus in the Persian camp at this time, and Xerxes, after the review, sent for him to come to his tent to ask his opinion of the campaign.

What was the question which Xerxes asked of Demaratus?

"You are a Greek," said he, "and know your countrymen. Tell me, what do you think? When they come to see what an immense fleet and army I have got, advancing against them, do you think they will attempt to resist, or will they submit at once without any opposition?"

What was Demaratus's reply?

Demaratus was a Spartan, and in reply to Xerxes's question, he said in substance that he could not answer so well for the rest of Greece, "But I know full well," he added, "that if all the rest of Greece were to submit, and the Spartans had only a single thousand men, they would fight you."

Relate the farther progress of the expedition. What difficulties did they encounter?

Xerxes smiled at this idea, and soon afterward set his immense army in motion. Of course, the difficulties of getting forward such a mighty mass, with all the trains of baggage and provisions that attended them, were immense. They had to make roads, and build bridges, and cut through mountains, and drain swamps, and perform a vast number of similar engineering operations. Then there was great difficulty in obtaining food and water for such a mighty throng. They ate up all the corn they could bring with them or find in the country, and drank all the springs and rivulets dry.

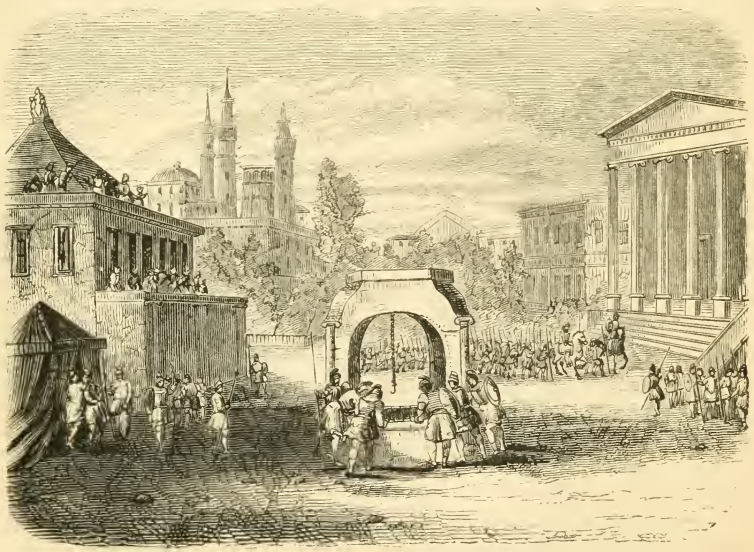
What was the effect of this invasion on the people of the country?

The route of the army lay along the northern shores of the Ægean Sea. You will see the track marked upon the map.

The people of the country, while the army were passing, were in a state of the utmost terror and dismay. Some fled from their dwellings, carrying with them all such valuables as they could easily remove. Those that remained were often treated with great cruelty. Their possessions were seized by the soldiers, and sometimes they themselves were made captives, and compelled to follow the army. At one time Xerxes conceived the plan of offering a human sacrifice, in order to propitiate the favor of some of the gods, and so he took nine young men and nine young girls from the people of the country, and buried them alive.

What was the success of the embassadors sent forward by Xerxes?

While his army was thus advancing into the country, he sent embassadors forward to the various cities and states, summoning the people to surrender to him and acknowledge themselves trib-



THE PERSIAN EMBASSADORS AT SPARTA.

utaries to Persia. The customary form of sending such a summons in those days was to demand "earth and water." The giving of a little earth and water, with certain ceremonies of transfer, denoted a conveyance of a title to the country from which the earth and water were taken. When Xerxes's embassadors came to Sparta, the people took them into the street and threw them down into one of the public wells, telling them that if they wanted earth and water they would find plenty of it there.

Describe the character of the country through which the army was to march. What was the situation of Thermopylæ?

You will see by the map that Xerxes, in marching his army round the Ægean Sea, would pass through Thrace and a part of Macedonia, and thence through Thessaly. These were all comparatively open countries, and could not well be defended by a small force against a large army. But between Thessaly and the other states of Greece which lay to the southward there was a range of mountains extending across the country, with only a narrow pass at a place called Thermopylæ, between the mountains and the sea, through which the army could pass. So the Greeks determined to concentrate their forces at this pass, and endeavor to stop the Persian army there.

Describe the battle of Thermopylæ.

When at length Xerxes and the advanced guard of his forces came up to the defile, the great and celebrated battle of Thermopylæ was fought. There were three hundred Spartans, under a general named Leonidas, stationed at the head of the defile, at a place where the pass was so narrow that very few men could be engaged. Xerxes sent forward detachment after detachment from his army to break through this guard, but they could not succeed. At length, after some days, the Persian troops found a way up by a secret path through the forests and along the side of the mountain, so as to come out upon the pass at a wider place, some distance below where the Spartans were stationed. They went in

the night, and the next morning the Greeks in the defile below saw them assembled on the declivities of the mountain, ready to come down upon them in great numbers to overwhelm them. They immediately—all except the Spartans—resolved to retreat.

What was the determination formed by Leonidas? What was his fate?

The Spartans, however, would not go. Leonidas said that he had been sent there by his government to defend the pass; he had had no orders to leave his post, and, therefore, come life or death, he should stand to it to the end. So the other Greeks retired, and the Persians poured down in thousands from the declivities of the mountain upon poor Leonidas and his band, and, after a dreadful combat, killed them every one.

What followed after the forcing of the pass?

The pass was now open. The whole Persian army marched on, and, after ravaging all the country on the way, they reached Athens, took possession of it, and burned it.

Describe the progress of the fleet. What happened at Salamis?

But, though thus far successful with his army, Xerxes was destined to meet with a great reverse in his fleet. While he was marching toward Athens, his fleet was advancing by sea in the same direction, intending to attack the Greek fleet, which was anchored at Salamis, near Athens. When the time arrived for the battle, he caused a throne to be built for himself on an eminence near, so that he could watch the contest, expecting to enjoy the spectacle of a great victory. Instead of that, however, he had to witness a dreadful defeat. The battle was long-continued, and fought with savage ferocity; but the Persians were defeated, and their fleet almost wholly destroyed. This was the great battle of Salamis.

How did the whole expedition finally end?

Things soon took an unfavorable turn, too, on land, and Xerxes,

discouraged and alarmed, began to feel anxious to get away from the country and return home. After a great deal of debate with his generals, he finally set out on his return; but, as the resources of the country were now mostly consumed, the troops suffered inconceivable hardships on the way. Hundreds and thousands of them perished of hunger, exposure, and disease. The bridge across the Hellespont was broken down, and vast numbers of the men, worn out by sickness and fatigue, were drowned in their attempts to get over. Xerxes himself, however, with a small number of his guards, succeeded at last in getting safely back to Susa.

What was the fate of Xerxes?

Here, overwhelmed with mortification and chagrin, he gave himself up to reckless dissipation and vice, and was finally assassinated by one of the officers of his household.

CHAPTER IX.

ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

What were the relations of Macedon, the country of Alexander, at this time?

Alexander the Great was king of Macedon, which, though lying north of Greece proper, was still itself essentially Greek in the language and character of its people, and during the lifetime of Alexander's father, Philip, it was connected with the other states in their general congress or confederation.

Describe Alexander's character. What were the first objects of his attention after ascending the throne?

Alexander succeeded to the throne of Macedon when he was a very young man. He was, however, possessed of very commanding talents, and was inspired with a very lofty ambition. He spent some time after his accession to the throne in subduing rebellions in his provinces, and in securing to himself the same as-

cendency that his father had held in the Greek confederacy, and which the other states were at first disposed to refuse to him on account of his being so young. He was then but little more than twenty years of age.

Did these measures succeed?

The measures which he took to accomplish these ends were so vigorous and determined, and he carried them into effect with so much resolution, and, at the same time, with so much prudence and skill, that all Greece soon acquiesced in his ascendency over them, and he found himself in complete and quiet possession of more than his father's power.

What grand design did he at length form?

At length, in looking around for something new to undertake, he conceived the design of retaliating on the Persians for their repeated invasions of Greece, under Darius and Xerxes, by undertaking himself a grand invasion of Persia. For a man so young as he, scarcely twenty years of age, the sovereign, too, of so comparatively small a kingdom, to conceive the design of marching a thousand miles into the heart of the greatest and most powerful empire in the world, was one of the boldest and most extraordinary undertakings that could easily be conceived.

Who were his principal generals?

There were two old generals, named Antipater and Parmenio, who had served under Philip, Alexander's father, and they strongly dissuaded the young prince from engaging in so desperate an enterprise. But he persisted in his design.

Describe the arrangements that he made in setting out on this expedition.

He raised an army of thirty-five thousand men for the campaign. He took Parmenio with him to command the troops, and left Antipater at home to govern Macedon while he should be gone. With these troops he crossed the Hellespont, and commenced his march through Asia Minor.

Where is the River Granicus? What forces did Alexander encounter there?

Here, however, he was soon met and opposed by a large Persian army of several hundred thousand men, that were drawn up on the banks of a small river called the Granicus, which was near the site of the ancient city of Troy. It seems that Darius (for that was the name of the king of Persia at that time) had heard of Alexander's plans, and had sent one of his generals, named Memnon, to meet him as soon as he should enter the Persian dominions. So Memnon gathered together all the troops that were at his command in that part of the empire, and, having drawn them up on the banks of the Granicus, waited there to see what Alexander would do. He felt confident of victory, for his troops were far more numerous than those of Alexander.

Describe the battle. What was the result of it?

Alexander, when he arrived at the bank of the river, was not at all intimidated by the superiority of the force brought up to oppose him, but, drawing up his men in order of battle, he marched them across the stream, and attacked the Persians on the bank with the utmost fury. After an obstinate conflict, the Persians were entirely defeated. Their ranks were thrown into disorder, and they fled in all directions. Alexander encamped on the battle-ground to refresh his troops and take care of the wounded. In a few days he resumed his march, and advanced into Asia Minor without any opposition.

What was the situation of Issus?

By a reference to the map on the following page you will see the River Granicus, and also, on the northeastern corner of the Mediterranean Sea, you will see a place marked Issus. It was at Issus that Alexander fought his next great battle. He fought here against Darius himself; for Darius, as soon as he heard that Memnon had been vanquished at Granicus, and that Alexander was coming on with none to oppose him, immediately gathered

MARCH OF ALEXANDER.

together all the disposable forces of his realms, and prepared to go forth himself to meet the invader.

What preparations did Darius make to meet Alexander?

Darius did not think there was any serious danger in the approach of such a "boy," as he called him, and of so small a force, but he thought that the occasion afforded him a fine opportunity to make a display of his greatness and power. So he organized an immense armament, and set forth at the head of it with great pomp and parade. He brought with him his family and all his court, and a vast quantity of gold and silver in the form of camp equipage and other treasures. The Persians were always very fond of pomp and display, and on this occasion Darius undertook to surpass all that the world had ever seen of military grandeur.

Describe the battle of Issus. What was the result of it?

Darius marched westward from Susa, while Alexander was advancing to the eastward through Asia Minor. The two armies met at Issus, and a great battle was fought. The Greeks were

victorious. The Persian troops were routed every where, and all the roads were thronged with the flying masses, that trampled upon and killed each other as they fled in terror and confusion. All of the tents, with the immense treasures that they contained, fell into Alexander's hands, and the mother and wife of Darius, together with many other of the ladies of the court, were taken captives. Darius himself barely succeeded in escaping the same fate.

How did Alexander treat his captives?

Alexander treated his captives, especially the mother and wife of Darius, in the most kind and considerate manner.

What plans did Alexander now form?

He concluded that he would not follow Darius immediately, but would first go down the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, and take possession of Tyre, which was at that time a great and wealthy commercial city.

Describe what took place at Tyre.

The city of Tyre was built on an island, at a little distance from the main land, and, in order to reach it with his troops, Alexander undertook to build a pier to cross upon; but, before the pier was finished, the Tyrians came across from the city in galleys, and set the end of it, and the battering machines which stood upon it, on fire, and a great part of the works were consumed. They were soon, however, repaired, and the pier completed; and then Alexander at length obtained possession of the city.

What proposal did Alexander receive from Darius at this time? What was Alexander's decision?

About this time Alexander received an embassage from Darius proposing peace. By this embassage Darius offered him a very large sum of money for the ransom of his family, and agreed to give up to him all the western part of Asia, as far as to the River Euphrates. But Alexander refused these proposals, and insisted on going on until he had conquered the whole. His aged general Parmenio advised him to accept this offer. But Alexander re-

fused. "I would," said Parmenio, "if *I* were Alexander." "So would I," said Alexander, "if I were Parmenio."

Where did Alexander go after leaving Tyre? What great city did he found there?

From Tyre Alexander continued his march to the southward into Egypt. You will see the situation of Egypt by looking at the map.* Here he had a great variety of adventures, but was, on the whole, successful in the campaign. While in Egypt he laid the foundations of the city of Alexandria, near one of the mouths of the Nile, and so well was the site of the city chosen, that it soon became one of the most wealthy and powerful commercial cities in all the East. Indeed, it has continued to maintain this character, in a great measure, to the present day. It is the principal port of Egypt, and has been celebrated for many centuries as the great resort of merchants and travelers in that country.

Where did Alexander proceed after leaving Egypt? Describe what took place at the River Tigris.

After completing his conquest of Egypt, Alexander turned his course again to the northward, and advanced into the heart of the Persian dominions. Darius, in the mean time, had collected another immense army, and had drawn them up to meet Alexander on the plains of Arbela, in the country of the Tigris and Euphrates. Alexander, in marching to meet Darius, had great difficulty in crossing the River Tigris. His army undertook to wade across the stream, but the current was so deep and rapid that many of the men were swept away and drowned, and others, who were not carried away themselves, lost their spears and their bundles of clothes, and these things were floated down in immense quantities, to embarrass and impede the men below. Alexander waded with the rest. He went in advance of the others to help find the shallowest parts and the best places to land. At length they reached the bank, and the army then marched on toward Arbela.

* See Page 90.

Where was the final battle fought? Describe Alexander's dress and appearance on the morning of the battle.

At Arbela the great final battle was fought. On the morning of the battle, Alexander was very much excited with sentiments of pride and joy. He dressed himself in very splendid armor. He wore a short tunic, with a belt embossed with beautiful figures. On his head he had a helmet of polished steel, with a neck-piece behind made of the same metal, and ornamented with precious stones. The helmet was surmounted with a white plume. His sword was light and slender, and was of the most perfect temper. It was a present to him from the King of Cyprus. He carried, also, a shield and a lance, both made in the most perfect manner for use, and not for display. Every part of his dress, in a word, was arranged for convenience and efficiency.

What were the means of defense employed by the Persians?

The Persians had elephants in their armies, and war chariots such as we saw represented in the sculptures of the ancient Assyrians, only these Persian chariots had the axles armed with scythes, made to cut down the enemy when the chariots were driven among them. The numbers of the Persians, too, were immense. Their lines extended for many miles along the plain.

Describe the result of the battle.

The Persians were defeated. The Macedonians advanced in a small, but compact and irresistible band, bearing down every thing before them. The elephants turned and fled, and in their flight they trampled down the Persian ranks that were behind them. Alexander's soldiers seized the chariots and disabled them by cutting the traces of the harness. In a short time the whole Persian host was thrown into confusion and fled, and Alexander was left master, not only of Arbela, but of the whole Persian empire.

What progress did Alexander make after the battle of Arbela?

After this he met with very little resistance. He took posses-

sion of all the great Persian capitals, and he marched through wild

MARCH THROUGH THE PASS OF SUSA.

mountain passes, to the remotest provinces of the country, until he had subjected the whole empire to his sway.

What was the fate of Darius?

As to the unhappy Darius, his fate was now sealed. After the battle of Arbela, some of his generals, headed by one named Bessus, rebelled against him, made him a prisoner, and fled, carrying him with them. Alexander pursued them. After hunting the fugitives for some days among the mountain roads, they at length came up so near to them that Bessus and his men, finding that they could not get away, stabbed Darius, and then fled themselves alone. Darius died very soon after Alexander came to the spot.

What was the fate of Alexander?

Alexander was now sole master of the Persian empire. He

went to Babylon, and there, in the pride and joy which he felt in having accomplished so great an enterprise, and acquired so resplendent a fame, he gave himself up to dissipation and intemperance to such a degree as to destroy his health, and at length he died suddenly in the midst of one of his carousings.

What became of his empire after his death?

His vast empire was then divided among his generals, who, by the wars which they waged with one another, kept the world in terror for many years.

CHAPTER X.

THE FOUNDATION OF ROME.

During the contests between the Greeks and the Persians, what other great empire was rising to power?

During all this time, while these dreadful contests for power had been going on between the Greeks and Persians on the confines of Europe and Asia, another great empire had been rising up farther to the west. This was the Roman empire.

At what period was Rome originally founded?

The seat and capital of the Roman empire was the city of Rome, which was built on the River Tiber, in Italy. In order to give an account of the original building of it, we must go back several hundred years, for the founding of Rome took place in about the year 750 before Christ, while Alexander died only a little more than 300 years before that era.

For what purposes were cities usually built in ancient times? How were they defended?

The cities built in ancient times were very different in their origin from those of the present day. They were built then by companies of armed men, banded together for mutual defense. The people of the country around cultivated the land, and paid

tribute to the government of the cities, in consideration of being defended from any enemies that might come to plunder their farms. The cities were generally surrounded with walls, so that in case of alarm, the people of the surrounding country might retreat to them, and be defended.

Why are not modern cities usually surrounded with walls?

Very few cities built at the present day are surrounded with walls, partly because walls now would be of no use unless they are made thick enough and strong enough to stand against cannon, and to make such walls as these is immensely expensive. But all that was required in ancient times was to make walls that men could not climb over. The worst that in any case they had to stand against was the blow of a battering-ram, and it was very easy to make a structure solid enough for that.

Are there any authentic accounts of the original building of Rome?

Rome was such a city as this at the beginning. There was no account of the first building of it written at the time; it is very doubtful even whether any of those who were concerned in the affair knew how to write, nor is it probable that they attached any great importance to what they were doing, for there was no reason to suppose that the town would ever become any greater or more powerful than any of the thousand other towns in Italy, and in the countries around it, that had risen up in substantially the same way. At length, however, when Rome became a great city, a most extraordinary and romantic tale was found to be coming down from generation to generation in respect to the first building of the city. It is not now supposed that this story is true; but, though we can not really believe it, it is still proper to know what it is.

What is the ancient legend in respect to Æneas?

The story is, then, that the ancestors of the men who built Rome came from Troy by sea, under Æneas, and landed in a part

of Italy called Latium, on the banks of the Tiber, a short distance from its mouth. In the adjoining map you will see the situation of Latium, and the place where Æneas is reputed to have landed, not far from the Tiber's mouth.

What was the issue of the landing in Italy of Æneas and his followers?

These men settled in the country, and formed a kingdom of their own there, which lasted for several hundred years.

Why did the brother of the royal princess wish to destroy his sister's twin children? How did he propose to destroy them?

At length it happened that a certain princess of the royal family, who had been consecrated as a virgin in a temple in one of the towns in Latium, in violation of the vows which she had taken, united herself to a young man whom she accidentally met in a grove near the temple, and lived with him secretly. After a time she had two children—twins. Her uncle, who was then king of the country, was very angry at this. He ordered the children to be thrown into the Tiber. The reason why he did this was, he was afraid that, when these children grew up, they might dispute his right to the throne, being, as they were, the princess's children.

Describe the plan adopted by Faustulus for destroying the children.

THE TWINS.

The name of the man who was sent to drown the children was Faustulus. He could not bear to throw the helpless babes directly into the water, and so he made a sort of box for them. Having put the children in it, he launched them forth upon the water. "Poor little things!" said he; "I will give you what chance I can for your lives."

Who were these children?

These children were the celebrated twins Romulus and Remus, who afterward became the founders of Rome.

What became of the ark that they were placed in?

The little box or ark in which Faustulus had placed the babes was carried swiftly down the current, until at length, at a little curve in the stream, it struck upon the beach and was upset; the poor children were tumbled out upon the sand.

How were the lives of the children saved?

They immediately began to cry, and an old mother wolf who happened at that time to be prowling in the forest heard them, and came to see what was the matter. The wolf took pity on the children, thinking, probably, that they were little wolves, and nestled down over them to nurse them.

What animal aided the wolf in taking care of the children? What finally became of them?

The wolf took care of the children for some days. There was a woodpecker in the woods, too, that assisted her, by bringing ripe strawberries and other such things for the children to eat. At length a herdsman who lived in that neighborhood found the babes in the nest which the wolf had made for them in the grass by the river side, and brought them home. He also found the box which the children had floated down in, and carried that home too.

When the young men grew up, what became of them?

The boys grew up, and became remarkably tall, handsome, and accomplished young men. At length the secret of their birth was discovered, and they went back, after meeting with various adventures and encountering many difficulties, to the royal palace in Alba, which was at that time the capital of the kingdom. Here, in the course of a year or two, certain difficulties arose between the young men and the government. A strong party adhered to Romulus and Remus, and at length, to settle the trouble, it was arranged that they should leave Alba with all their friends and followers, and go and build a new city for themselves.

Where did they go to found a new city?

Romulus and Remus set off at the head of their company, and, after exploring the neighboring country for some time, they selected a place on the Tiber for the site of their city, and they all went to work to build the wall.

Describe the quarrel which occurred between Romulus and Remus.

The work went on pretty well for some days, only there soon began to grow up a difficulty between Romulus and Remus in respect to the command. Each was jealous of the other, and wished to be first himself. In the end, a sudden quarrel arose one day about the wall, when Romulus took up a spade, and struck

his brother down with it in a fit of passion. Poor Remus was killed in an instant by the blow.

How was Romulus affected when he saw what he had done?

Romulus was overwhelmed with remorse and horror at the deed he had done, and he did every thing in his power to express his grief, and to show respect to the memory of his brother.

Describe the progress of the enterprise after Remus's death.

After a brief interruption, produced by this unhappy event, the work of building the city went on. A great number of people from the neighboring country came in to join the enterprise, so that it was necessary that the original plan should be enlarged. After a time they consulted on the system of government to be adopted, and decided to make it a monarchy. They chose Romulus king. From this small beginning arose the great and world-renowned city of Rome.

With what neighboring country did the Romans first become involved in war?

Things went on very peaceably for some time with the new kingdom, for most of the surrounding provinces gave their allegiance to the new government of their own accord. The Romans, however, at length became involved in a terrible war with a people called the Sabines. You will see the situation of the Sabine country in relation to Rome by looking again at the map.* It lies to the northeastward from Rome.

What was the first great want experienced in Rome in respect to population?

This war had a very extraordinary origin. It was wholly the fault of the Romans. The case was this. They found, after their city was built and their kingdom in some degree established, that the inhabitants were almost altogether of the male sex. The reason was, that, though the young men were willing to come in great numbers to join their enterprise, the girls and young women of the

* See map on page 97.

surrounding countries were afraid to trust themselves in such a turbulent community.

Describe the plan which the Romans formed for procuring wives.

In order to remedy this want, the Romans prepared a splendid spectacle and entertainment just without the city, and invited the Sabines to come, bringing with them their sisters, and cousins, and other female friends. In the midst of the feast, the Romans arose and seized the women, each taking one for his own wife, and carried them off within the walls of the city, while they drove the men away.

How did they contrive to seize and bear away the women?

They accomplished their stratagem by means of the suddenness and unexpectedness of the movement. Romulus himself gave the signal. He chose a moment during the last day of the celebration, when the attention of the company was absorbed by a grand spectacle, and the Sabine men were wholly off their guard. Romulus himself was seated on a sort of throne, where all the Romans could see him, and he gave the signal by taking off his mantle. When the Romans saw the signal, they all arose at once, drew their swords, seized the females, and bore them away before the Sabines had time to arm themselves, or recover from their surprise.

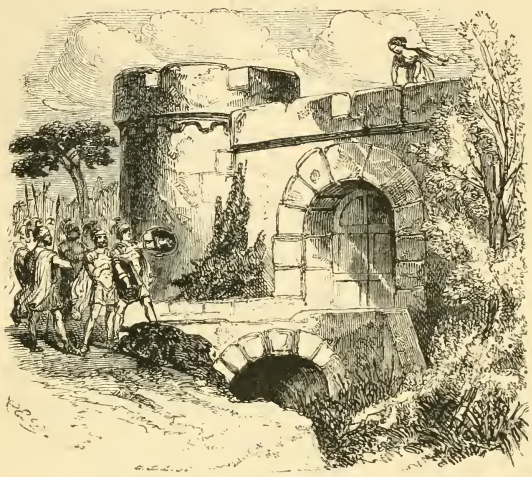
What was the result of this measure?

The men went home in a great rage, and immediately declared war. The war was carried on for some time with great vigor, the Sabine women remaining all the time within the city with their husbands; for the Romans had at once persuaded or compelled them to become their wives.

What was the proposal made by Tarpeia in respect to admitting the Sabines into the city?

At one time the Sabines came very near taking the city. They did succeed in getting possession of a portion of it. A girl named

Tarpeia let them in. She spoke to them from the top of the wall at one time when there was nobody by to hear, and promised that she would open a gate for them in the night and let them in, if they would present her those things that they wore on their arms. She referred in this offer to certain bracelets which she saw upon the soldiers' wrists. She discovered that they were ornaments of some kind, but yet she seems not to have known what they were called.



THE BRACELETS.

How did the soldiers fulfill their agreement?

The crafty soldiers promised to grant her request, and at night Tarpeia opened one of the gates, and let them in. The soldiers then, as they passed along by her in going through the gate, threw their shields upon her until their number and weight crushed her to death, saying, as they did so, that that was what they wore upon their arms.

In what way was the Sabine war finally ended?

After a while, the Sabine war was brought to a conclusion through the intercession of the Sabine women themselves. They came out between the combatants, and begged them not to fight any more. They told their fathers and brothers that, although they were dreadfully frightened at first, yet now, since they had become settled as the wives of the Romans, they were contented

and happy; and, at any rate, the mischief was done, and could not now be undone, and so they entreated the two nations to make peace and live in harmony.

Describe the plan of union which was finally formed.

They all finally agreed to these proposals, and the Sabines and Romans joined together to form one kingdom. The Sabine territory was added to the Roman dominions, and the Sabine chieftains came to Rome and shared in the government there.

Who succeeded Romulus as king?

Romulus lived some years after this, and at length died, and another king, whose name was Numa Pompilius, succeeded him. Numa Pompilius was a Sabine.

Describe the condition and progress of Rome under the kings.

After this the kingdom of Rome continued to flourish more and more for many years, under a line of several successive kings. Excellent arrangements were planned for the internal administration of the country, and many additions were made to the territory, some by war and conquest, and some by peaceable negotiations. Every thing went on prosperously and well, except that the kings gradually became arbitrary and tyrannical. At first, as is usual in such cases, they were wise and good, and formed their plans and arrangements with a view to promote the welfare of the people, but each new monarch was less faithful to his duties than his predecessors, and at last they became extremely unjust, selfish, and tyrannical.

In what manner was the reign of the kings brought to an end?

After some time, one of the kings, named Tarquin, treated a noble Roman lady so outrageously, at a time when her husband was away, that she killed herself as soon as her husband had returned, and she had had an opportunity to call upon him to revenge her wrongs. Her husband raised a rebellion, and the people drove Tarquin out of the city, and resolved that they would never be governed by any king again.

How long did the kingly government continue in Rome?

Rome was governed by kings for about two hundred and forty-five years.

CHAPTER XI.

ROME UNDER THE CONSULS.

What system of government did the Romans adopt after expelling the kings?

When the Romans deposed their kings, they adopted the plan of choosing every year two chief magistrates, called *consuls*, who were to reign in conjunction with each other. This system continued for about five hundred years, and under it the Roman commonwealth rose to a very high degree of grandeur and renown.

Describe the condition and progress of Rome under the consuls.

The city itself, during this period, advanced very rapidly in size, in population, and in wealth. The walls were extended, and the inclosed space enlarged, and castles and temples were built upon the hills. The government was so well planned and so ably administered, and the measures that were adopted were so systematic and comprehensive, and were carried into effect with so much promptness, resolution, and energy, that the power of the Romans extended continually more and more, until at length the whole of Italy was brought under its dominion, and then they began to make conquests and establish colonies beyond the seas.

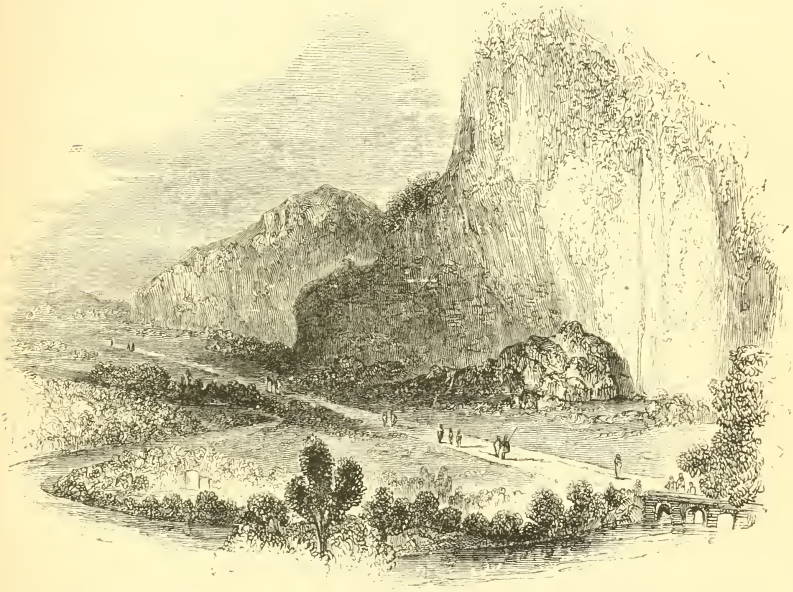
In what manner did the Romans exercise their power over the nations that they conquered?

The various nations which came thus under the dominion of the Romans submitted generally very readily and willingly to their sway, for the government which they exercised over their realms was usually very just and fair. They made great improvements in the laws of these countries, and they constructed an im-

mense number of public works which were of great utility. They built aqueducts to convey water into towns, and bridges across rivers, and piers and breakwaters in ports, and light-houses for the guidance of ships coming in from sea.

Describe the military roads which they constructed.

They also constructed great military roads all over Italy, making



ROMAN MILITARY ROAD.

them so hard, and smooth, and straight, and building them of such solid and substantial materials, that many of them remain to the present day. These roads were intended in a great measure for military purposes, such as the marching of armies and the transport of baggage, but they were so extremely useful for the purposes of trade and commerce, that they exerted a vast influence in promoting the progress of the people of Europe in refinement and civilization.

Who and what were the plebeians? Who were the patricians?

Notwithstanding this general prosperity, the Romans experienced many difficulties and incurred many dangers during this period. One of their troubles was the internal dissensions that took place between the different classes of the population. The lower classes of people were called *plebeians.* The upper classes were

PLEBEIANS.

styled the *patricians.* The plebeians were a very sturdy and somewhat turbulent set of men, who were by no means disposed to submit to being trampled upon by the proud, aristocratic families above them, and thus a great many contests arose, each party contending for a greater share of power than the other was willing to accord to it. At length the plebeians carried the day, and the

patricians were obliged to allow to them their proper share of the power.

Give an account of the war made upon the Romans by the Gauls.

At one time, too, the Roman commonwealth came very near being entirely overwhelmed and destroyed by the violence of foreign enemies, and it was saved by the courage and military skill of one of the plebeian generals, whose name was Camillus. The enemies in this case were the Gauls, the people that inhabited the northern part of Italy. The Gauls had advanced to the very gates of Rome. The people and a portion of the army were shut up within the city, while the principal part of the army had fled to a neighboring stronghold, and had intrenched themselves there. They were greatly perplexed, and did not know what to do.

To whom did the army offer the command? What was the reply of Camillus?

The army at last sent for Camillus to come and take the command. Camillus had had the command in former wars, and had acquired great renown; but he had afterward fallen into disfavor with the people, and had gone into banishment. And now, when the army sent to him to come and take the command of them again, he replied that he would not do it unless the people of Rome themselves voted to appoint him. So they sent a messenger to see if he could make his way into the city. This was an extremely difficult undertaking, for the Gauls had invested Rome on all sides; they had even broken through the walls, taken possession of and burned a large part of the city, and had shut up the Romans that remained in a sort of citadel on the top of Capitol Hill, where it would be very difficult for the messenger to reach them.

What was the decision of the people?

The messenger, however, succeeded in making his way into the city, and in getting into the citadel. The people there, on receiving his message, voted unanimously to make Camillus dictator.

What were the powers of a dictator?

A dictator was an officer appointed in great and extreme emergencies, with absolute power to do whatever he thought best. Every body was to obey him, whatever his orders might be.

Describe the occurrences which took place when Camillus assumed the command.

When the messenger returned, Camillus took command of the army, and marched to the relief of Rome. He came upon the Gauls by surprise just as the Roman people were weighing out a large sum of money in gold to pay for peace. Camillus stopped this proceeding at once, saying that the Romans were accustomed to secure peace with steel, not with gold. He fell upon the Gauls with great fury, and routed them completely. Their army was utterly discomfited and driven away, and Rome was saved.

What were the feelings of the people when they saw the condition of the city?

When the people came down from the Capitol, and found to how complete a state of devastation and ruin the city had been reduced, they were so dispirited and discouraged that many of them were inclined to abandon it altogether, and to emigrate in a mass to some other place; but Camillus dissuaded them from doing this, and so they all went to work to repair and rebuild the city, and in a few years it was greater, more wealthy, and more prosperous than ever.

In what two great foreign wars were the Romans engaged during the time of the consuls?

During the time that Rome was under the consular government, the people were engaged in two great foreign wars, which were so important that they must be made the subjects of separate chapters. The first was a war with Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, and the second was with the Carthaginians.

CHAPTER XII.

PYRRHUS, KING OF EPIRUS.

Describe the situation of Epirus.

The country of Epirus was situated on the Grecian side of the seas lying to the westward of Italy. You will see the position of it by the map on the next page. It was north of Greece proper, and to the southward and westward of Macedonia, the country of Alexander.

Who was the king of Epirus at this time?

Pyrrhus was born about four years after Alexander, so that the wars which Alexander waged in the East against the Persians took place at nearly the same period in the history of the world with those which Pyrrhus carried on in the West with the Romans.

What danger did Pyrrhus escape in his childhood?

There were two rival families in Epirus, each of which claimed the throne. Pyrrhus was the heir of one of these families. The other family succeeded in gaining the ascendency, and they determined to kill all the members of the rival household, so as to get them out of the way. They did kill nearly all of them, but Pyrrhus himself escaped.

How was he rescued?

He was an infant at the time, and his life was saved by his nurses and attendants carrying him away. They fled with him, intending to take him across the frontier of the country into Macedonia, where they thought he would be safe.

Relate the occurrences of his flight.

At one time they came very near being overtaken by the troops which were sent to pursue them, for they were stopped in their course by a river which was so swollen by the rains that they could not get across it. There was a town on the other side, and

some people of the town were standing on the shore when they came up. The persons who had charge of little Pyrrhus called out to these people, but could not make them hear, on account of the roaring of the stream. They wished to tell the townspeople upon the other bank who they were, and to ask them to contrive some way by which they, and the little prince under their charge, might get across the water. But it was impossible to make them hear.

How did the party communicate their wishes across the river?

They stripped a piece of bark from a tree that was growing there on the bank, and wrote what they wanted upon it by means of the tongue of a buckle which belonged to the belt of one of the young men. Then they tied the piece of bark to a stone or something heavy, and threw it across the stream to the people on the other side.

How did they transport the child across the river?

The people then got axes, and cut down some trees, and made

a raft, and in this way they got the child and all the persons who were with him safely over.

What became of Pyrrhus after this escape?

The men who had charge of Pyrrhus found it would not be safe for him to remain in Macedonia, so they turned to the northward, and went on till they came to the country of Illyria, which you will see on the map lying to the northward of Macedonia and Epirus. Here little Pyrrhus was received and taken care of by the king, and he remained here until he grew up to be a man. Then, after waiting for a time to watch for a favorable opportunity, he raised an army and marched into Epirus. The people were willing to receive him, having fallen out at that time with the other branch of the royal family, and so he very easily established himself on the throne.

Describe the character of Pyrrhus. What was the first war that he became engaged in?

Pyrrhus was a very ambitious, high-spirited, and warlike man, and was not at all disposed to remain quietly at home, and govern his empire in peace and quietness. There were various wars going on at this time among the surrounding nations, particularly in Macedonia, where two or three different princes were fighting for the mastery of the kingdom. Pyrrhus joined himself to one of these parties, and went into Macedonia with his army. Here he gradually got involved deeper and deeper in the quarrel, and he continued in the country for several years. At last, when he was beginning to get tired of this, a circumstance occurred which led him to conceive the idea of crossing over the sea into Italy, and making war upon the Roman empire.

In what period of the history of Rome was it that Pyrrhus formed his design of invading Italy?

This was during the time that Rome was governed by consuls, and between two and three hundred years after the consular government commenced.

Where was Tarentum? What were the circumstances that induced the Tarentines to invite Pyrrhus to come to their country?

If you look upon the map* you will see that just in the *hollow of the foot* of Italy there is a round gulf, called the Gulf of Tarentum, and that at the head of this gulf stands the city of Tarentum. Now the Romans, in the time of Pyrrhus, had extended their dominions over all that part of Italy, except that they had not yet been able to subdue the people of Tarentum. They were now, however, drawing very near to this city, and the Tarentines were in great alarm. They had heard of Pyrrhus, and of his fame as a warrior. They knew, too, that he liked war, and was willing to fight in other people's quarrels when he had none of his own; so they concluded to send to him to come to Tarentum and assist them. They said that they would put all their armies under his command if he would do so.

What argument was offered at Tarentum against giving Pyrrhus this invitation?

Some of the more considerate and far-sighted of the people of Tarentum were altogether opposed to sending for Pyrrhus in this way. "Depend upon it," said they, "that if we send for such a man as he to come among us, and put our troops under his command, he will make himself our master, and we shall be all his slaves; and if we are going to submit ourselves to any other government than our own, we may as well be under the Romans as under Pyrrhus."

How did the people finally decide?

The people were so much alarmed at the danger from the Romans that they would not listen to these counsels, and so, after many stormy and violent debates and discussions, it was decided to send to Pyrrhus to invite him to come, with a view of putting all their forces under his command.

* See page 110.

Describe the arrangements of the expedition.

As soon as it was known that Pyrrhus was going to embark in this enterprise, great numbers of men in Epirus volunteered to join him, and he soon collected a very large army. He also caused a great number of galleys to be built or purchased, in order to transport his troops and munitions of war. As soon as a part of this fleet was ready, he sent forward a large detachment of his army in it, under the command of one of his generals. Pyrrhus himself followed a short time afterward with the remainder of the force, the vessels having been sent back for the purpose. His army consisted of twenty elephants, three thousand horse, twenty thousand foot, two thousand archers, and twenty thousand slingers.

What disaster occurred at the outset?

The enterprise commenced disastrously, for no sooner had Pyrrhus set sail with his part of the army than a storm arose, and made sad havoc with the fleet. The vessels were dispersed in all directions, far and wide. The ship that Pyrrhus was in succeeded in getting pretty near the shore, but then the wind suddenly changed and threatened to drive it back to sea again. So Pyrrhus leaped out into the water, and attempted to swim to shore, and many of his officers and attendants immediately jumped overboard too, to assist him. They all came very near being drowned, though at last, after being dashed about mercilessly for some time by the waves, they succeeded in reaching the land.

What portion of the expedition was saved?

Some of the other ships, too, succeeded in effecting a landing at different parts of the coast, but when Pyrrhus collected his forces together again, he found that there was but a very small part of the original number remaining. Of his twenty elephants there were only two left. The rest had all been drowned.

What course of procedure did Pyrrhus adopt when he reached Tarentum?

Pyrrhus, however, nothing daunted, proceeded to Tarentum, and,

entering it with great pomp, he immediately took possession of all the departments of the government just as if he were the natural and proper king of the country. He found the people in a great state of alarm and confusion, but he soon reduced things to order. He strengthened the walls and gates, and organized the garrison, and adopted a very strict system of rules and regulations for the government of the city.

How soon did he hear news of the Romans, and what did he then do?

While he was engaged in these operations, the news came that the Roman army was approaching, under the command of one of the consuls. The consul's name was Lævinus. Pyrrhus marched out to meet them. After advancing some days he came into the neighborhood of the encampment, and then, watching for a favorable opportunity, taking with him a suitable guard, he went out to reconnoitre.

Describe the general arrangements of a Roman encampment.

Nothing could be more completely systematized and arranged than the Roman encampments of those days. The tents were disposed in rows, like the buildings of a town, with streets between. The place chosen was usually a spot of level ground on the banks of a river or other stream, for it was necessary to have abundant supplies of water for the army close at hand. The camp was generally square, the streets crossing each other at right angles, and it was surrounded by an embankment which served the purpose of a wall. There were gateways through this embankment, with roads leading from them down to the water.

What impression was made upon Pyrrhus's mind by the sight of the encampment?

At the time that Pyrrhus went out to reconnoitre the position of the Romans, he found them encamped on the banks of the River Siris, which you will find laid down on the map not far from Tarentum. He was very much struck with the magnificence of the

PYRRHUS VIEWING THE ROMAN ENCAMPMENT.

spectacle, and began to think that he had a much more formidable enemy to contend with than he had at first supposed.

How did the Romans cross the river?

He, however, prepared for battle, and very soon the Roman army marched across the river and attacked him. They came across in three bodies, holding their shields over their heads as they waded through the water. The divisions looked like immense animals covered with scales.

Describe the stratagem that Pyrrhus resorted to on the day of the battle. What was the consequence of it?

Pyrrhus was accustomed, when on the field of battle, to wear a gay and beautiful suit of armor, which made him very conspicuous among the other generals; but in this instance, just before the battle commenced, he changed his dress with one of his officers named Megacles, and, in consequence of this, the enemy supposed that Megacles was Pyrrhus, and so, whenever they saw him, they press-

ed upon him with great fury, and finally they killed him. They of course thought it was Pyrrhus that was killed, so they took off his armor and carried it about the ranks, with music and banners, in token of triumph. This produced a very encouraging effect on the Romans, and, as a consequence, greatly discouraged the Tarentines, for they too, for a time, supposed that Pyrrhus was killed. The effect was so great, that at length, in order to correct the mistake, Pyrrhus was obliged to ride along the ranks of his army with his head uncovered, calling out at the same time to the men every where to look at him, and see that he was still alive.

DISPLAY OF THE ARMOR.

What was the result of the battle?

At length, after a long and obstinate contest, the Romans were defeated. The victory was owing, in a great measure, to the elephants. The Roman horses were terrified at the sight of such huge beasts, and they fled from before them in dismay, trampling down the troops under their feet, and producing dreadful confusion and slaughter.

What were the consequences of this victory? Why was not peace now made?

This victory made Pyrrhus master of the eastern part of Italy, and, on reflection, he concluded to be satisfied with that, and so he sent an embassador to Rome to propose peace; but the Ro-

mans said that they would not listen to any proposals of peace while Pyrrhus remained in the country. So the embassador came back, and both parties prepared again for war.

How did the Romans attempt to defend themselves from the elephants in the second battle?

After some time another great battle was fought. This time the Romans were prepared for the elephants. They came on against them with chariots armed with long spears, that projected forward very far from the pole, so as to pierce the elephants before they could come near. They also had blazing torches to wave in the air, and firebrands to throw at the huge beasts, in order to frighten them. In this way they drove many of them back, but still they could not entirely subdue them.

What was the result?

The battle ended doubtfully. Both parties withdrew at the end of it to their camps, and remained there for some time, not knowing what to do next.

Relate the story of Nicias.

While things were in this state, Pyrrhus's physician, whose name was Nicias, went secretly to the Roman camp, and offered for a bribe to poison Pyrrhus. Instead of accepting this offer, the consul seized the traitor and sent him in chains to Pyrrhus, with a letter explaining to Pyrrhus the atrocious proposal the man had made. Pyrrhus was very much struck with the generosity of this act, and, as an acknowledgment of it, he immediately sent the Romans all the prisoners that he had taken in the battle.

Relate the sequel of the history of Pyrrhus.

After this Pyrrhus continued for some time in Italy, and the war, though it turned occasionally in his favor, was more frequently against him. At length he was driven back to Tarentum, and, finally, he concluded to withdraw from the country altogether, leaving all Italy under the Roman dominion. He carried on several other wars after this in various countries, being always ready

to go whenever he was called, to fight in any body's quarrels, no matter who they might be.

Describe the circumstances of his death.

At last he found his way into Greece, and there, while he was fighting in the streets of the city of Argos, a woman, whose son

DEATH OF PYRRHUS.

he had killed, threw a tile down upon him from the top of a house

as she saw him going by. The tile struck him on his head, and felled him from his horse. He lay there helpless upon the ground for a little time, nobody knowing who he was. At length a soldier came by, and, having stopped to look at him, and finding it was Pyrrhus, he cut off his head.

What was Pyrrhus's character?

Thus ended the life of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, one of the most celebrated warriors of ancient times; a man who seemed to love fighting for its own sake, and who was always ready to engage in any quarrel just for the sake of the excitement and pleasure of war.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE CARTHAGINIANS AND HANNIBAL.

What was the situation of ancient Carthage?

Soon after the time of Pyrrhus, the Romans encountered another still more formidable foe in Hannibal the Carthaginian. Carthage was a great city that had been gradually growing up in Africa, on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea, while Rome had been rising to power and wealth in Italy. Thus Rome and Carthage were rivals.

What were the principal pursuits of the Carthaginians?

There was this difference between the two cities, namely, that Rome was an interior town, and it was maintained at first by the agriculture of the surrounding country, while Carthage, on the other hand, was a commercial town, and the people lived by buying and selling merchandise. The merchants of Carthage owned a great many ships, and they sent their ships all over the Mediterranean Sea, buying and selling goods in different countries, and making a profit on all their trade, so that, at length, they became very wealthy, and their wealth made them very powerful. They built fleets, they hired large bodies of soldiers, they established

colonies along the coasts of the Mediterranean Sea—they became, in fine, a great maritime power.

How was the city of Carthage originally founded?

The Carthaginians came originally from Tyre. Tyre was one of the cities of Phœnicia, a country on the eastern shores of the Mediterranean Sea. Phœnicia was one of the earliest countries that were settled by man, the Phœnicians being known in history from a period almost as remote as the Assyrians and Babylonians; but, living as they did on the borders of the sea, they were naturally the first to learn the art of building ships and of navigating them, and, in process of time, they established ports and colonies in various parts of the Mediterranean Sea, in order to enable them the better to carry on their commerce. Carthage was one of these colonies; and when at last Tyre was taken, and in a great measure destroyed by Alexander, as has already been related, Carthage took its place, and became the greatest mart of commerce in the world.

For how long a period did the wars between the Romans and Carthaginians continue?

This was the origin of Carthage; and while she was gradually growing up to power and greatness, Rome was growing up too, so that at length the two powers began, here and there, to come into collision, and at last they came to open and general war. The wars between Rome and Carthage continued about one hundred years, with varying success during the continuance of them, but at last Carthage was vanquished, and then, by order of the Roman government, the city was entirely destroyed.

By what name are these wars known in history?

The wars between Rome and Carthage are known in history as the Punic wars. Punic means Carthaginian.

What was the character of the first Punic war? Which party was successful at first at sea?

In the first Punic war the contest was chiefly on the sea. The

difficulty commenced in Sicily; but at length the Romans, finding that the Carthaginians possessed a powerful fleet, concluded that conquering them on land was not enough, so they determined to build a fleet too, and attack them at sea. They did this, and, to the surprise of all the world, they were successful. The Carthaginian fleet was defeated, and almost entirely destroyed.

What measure did the Romans then determine upon? Who commanded the Roman army?

The Romans then determined to carry the war into Africa—that is, to send an army across the sea, and attack the Carthaginians in their own city. The consul's name who had command of the Roman armies in this campaign was Regulus, who has made his name renowned in all ages by the noble fortitude and magnanimity which he exhibited in exposing himself to the severest privations and sufferings rather than be faithless to his duty. Regulus took command of the army and proceeded to Africa.

SITUATION OF CARTHAGE.

How did the campaign of Regulus end?

He was not successful in his campaign in Africa. He triumphed over the Carthaginians for a time, it is true, and advanced with his armies very near to Carthage; but then a large body of Greeks came to the aid of the Carthaginians, and this turned the

scale. The Roman army was defeated, and Regulus was taken prisoner.

What did the Carthaginians finally resolve to do with Regulus?

The Carthaginians were of course overjoyed at the result. For a time they scarcely knew what to do with their captive. Finally they conceived the idea of sending him to Rome, to propose conditions of peace with the Romans, under a promise that if he did not succeed he would come back to Carthage again, and surrender himself into their hands.

How did the Carthaginians reason among themselves in respect to the mission of Regulus?

"He will certainly do all in his power to make peace," said they, "as that will be the only means by which he can escape a miserable captivity. As to his coming back to us, we can trust to his word."

Describe the progress and result of Regulus's mission.

Regulus proceeded to Rome. He laid there the Carthaginian proposal before the senate and people, but, instead of urging them to make peace, he strongly recommended them not to do so. He thought it was best that the war should be carried on. The Romans decided, therefore, not to make peace; but they declared to Regulus that he was not under any obligation to return to Carthage, and tried to persuade him to remain at Rome. But he would not. He had promised, he said, and he would not break his word. They told him that it was a promise extorted; it was given when he was not free, and he was under no obligation to keep it. But all had no effect. Regulus insisted on returning; and, when he arrived among the Carthaginians, they were so enraged with him for not making peace, that they put him to death with the most cruel tortures. They knew that the embassage failed on account of the influence which Regulus himself exerted on the minds of his countrymen.

To what has the great celebrity of the Roman name, in the opinion of mankind, been in a great measure owing?

It was in a great measure owing to this spirit of firm, inflexible, and uncompromising adherence to right and to duty, which was so often manifested by the generals, and statesmen, and soldiers of Rome, that the Roman name acquired so great celebrity throughout the world.

What course did the war take after the death of Regulus?

After the death of Regulus, the war continued seven or eight years, and then, both parties becoming weary of the contest, a sort of peace was made, though there was still no cordial good-will between the countries. This peace, however, such as it was, lasted about a quarter of a century. Then war broke out again. This was the second Punic war, and in the course of it the Roman power was brought into very great danger.

Who was the great hero of the second Punic war? Who was his father?

The great hero of this second Punic war was the celebrated Hannibal. He was the son of a Carthaginian general who had commanded in Spain; for the Carthaginians had colonized in various places along the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, and one of their most important colonies was in Spain. They had gold and silver mines there.

Where and how did the Romans and Carthaginians first come into collision?

The Romans had extended their dominion also into Spain, having fought their way round into that country through France by land; so the frontiers of the two countries came together there. The River Ebro, or, as it was then called, the Iberus, was the boundary. Hannibal's father was in command on the Carthaginian side of the Ebro, and when his son Hannibal, who was a remarkably talented and energetic young man, grew up, he sent to Carthage to have him appointed second in command.

How was it that Hannibal came to have the command of the army? What was the first measure that he adopted?

After some debates and difficulties, this was accomplished, and Hannibal went to Spain. Soon after this, Hannibal's father died. Hannibal was then, of course, first in command, and he soon conceived the design of crossing the Iberus and attacking Saguntum, a city near the frontiers, which, though it was not actually a possession of the Romans, was still their confederate and ally. The Romans warned him not to do it. He, however, would not desist. He attacked Saguntum, captured and plundered it, and thus Rome and Carthage were again brought into a state of open war.

What was the character of Hannibal at this time?

Hannibal was at this time a very young man, and, though he was sedate in his manners, simple and unostentatious in his pretensions, and very calm and quiet in all his demeanor, he was still filled with a spirit of the most exalted enterprise and ambition.

What bold design did Hannibal now form? What were the difficulties to be encountered?

He immediately conceived the very bold design of collecting a very great army, and marching round into Italy through Switzerland, and so coming down upon the city of Rome itself from the north. In doing this he knew that there were almost insurmountable difficulties to encounter. Not only was the distance very great, but there were wide rivers and lofty mountains in the way —rivers so wide and mountains so high that most persons would have deemed it impossible to have transported so great an army through that region of country. Hannibal, however, resolved upon the undertaking; so, after having made all possible preparations, he commenced his march.

What was the difficulty in respect to crossing the Rhone?

One of the first great difficulties which he encountered was the Rhone. His course was such that he was obliged to cross this river at its widest and deepest part. There was not so much dif-

ficulty in respect to the men and the horses, but he had a large number of elephants in his army, and the greatest question was how to contrive a mode for getting these monstrous animals across. There was no other way but to build a great raft and float them over.

Describe the mode which he adopted of transporting the elephants across the river.

He set his army at work to cut down trees in the woods along the banks of the river, and to make a raft of them. This raft was of an enormous size; and in order that the elephants might not be afraid to go on it, he caused it to be covered with earth, turf, and bushes, so as to make it look like the natural ground. When the raft was finished it was brought up by the shore, and the elephants were led upon it, and so floated over.

What was the behavior of the elephants upon the raft?

The elephants were easily induced to walk out upon the raft while it remained moored to the shore, for it was made to resemble very closely a portion of the solid ground. But as soon as the raft was separated from the shore, and the elephants perceived that it was in motion, they became greatly alarmed, and began immediately to look anxiously this way and that, and to crowd toward the edges of the floating mass which was conveying them away. Here they found that they were hemmed in by the water on every side, and they were terrified and thrown into confusion. Some of them were crowded off into the river, and were drifted down by the current, until at length they landed below. The rest soon became calm when they found that all hope of escape was vain, and, resigning themselves to their fate, allowed themselves to be quietly ferried across the river. The raft was towed by boats preceding it, which were propelled by oars.

What were the difficulties to be encountered in passing the Alps?

At last Hannibal came to Switzerland and the Alps. The dif-

ficulties of getting his army over the wild and snowy passes of

CROSSING THE ALPS.

these mountains were immense. All the roads, of course, were to be made, and this required bridges to be built over torrents and ravines, and precipices to be walled up, and rocks to be split and moved out of the way. When the army reached the higher Alps, too, they encountered great difficulty on account of the snow. A violent storm arose and nearly overwhelmed them. The poor elephants, particularly, were amazed at the spectacle, and it was with great difficulty that they could be induced to go forward at all.

Describe the prospect that opened before them when they reached the southern brow of the mountains.

At length, however, the army came out upon the brow of the mountains that was toward Italy, and then they saw stretched out before them a vast extent of rich and fertile country. They de-

scended the mountains, and, after encamping a while for rest and refreshment on the plain, they moved on toward Rome.

What was the general course of the war after Hannibal reached Italy?

The Romans came out with an immense army, under the command of the consuls, to meet them. Battle after battle was fought, and many victories were gained, now on one side and now on the other. The war continued sixteen or seventeen years, during all which time Hannibal advanced nearer to Rome, supporting his army in the mean while by the plunder of the provinces which he conquered.

Where was the great battle fought? What was the result of it?

There was one celebrated battle fought at a place called Cannæ. Hannibal gained a great victory here, so great that the battle of Cannæ has since been as renowned as any of the greatest conflicts of ancient times. The Romans, after the battle of Cannæ, were in the utmost alarm, expecting that Hannibal would come immediately, and storm and plunder the city. But he did not come.

Who was finally appointed general over the Romans? How did the expedition end?

At length the tide of victory seemed gradually to turn in favor of the Romans. A Roman general named Scipio arose, who was far more successful than any of those who had gone before him. The Carthaginian army gradually wasted away. They were beaten in one contest after another, until at length the people of Carthage, becoming dissatisfied with the course which Hannibal's affairs were taking, sent an order for his recall. He was in a dreadful rage when he received this order, but he was obliged to obey.

What expedition was next undertaken by the Romans? What was the success of it?

But the Romans were not satisfied with thus expelling Hannibal from Italy. They sent a large army, under the command of Scipio, into Africa, and there waged war against Carthage so suc-

cessfully that the city was in imminent danger of falling into Scipio's hands. To save themselves from utter ruin, the Carthaginians were compelled to make peace on Scipio's own terms. One of the conditions was that they should give up their ships and galleys, and Scipio burned the whole fleet in sight of the city.

SCIPIO BURNING THE CARTHAGINIAN FLEET.

How long did the peace last?

The peace that was made at this time lasted about fifty years. Another war then broke out, which, however, lasted only a very short time, and at the end of it Carthage was totally destroyed.

CHAPTER XIV.

POMPEY AND CÆSAR.

What was the power that finally supplanted that of the consuls in the government of Rome?

The consular power in the Roman republic, after enduring for

so many hundred years, was overshadowed and lost in a higher power, which gradually rose up and superseded it. This other power was the authority of the great military commanders that were produced by the Roman system, and who, in process of time, came to acquire so great an influence and ascendency as to bring all the civil departments of the state into subjection to them. Having legions of armed men under their command, they had power, of course, to do any thing they pleased.

Describe the effects that were produced by the rivalries of these commanders.

Sometimes two or more of these great commanders would arise at the same time, in different parts of the Roman dominions; for by this time the Roman power had extended over almost the whole of Europe, and over all the western part of Asia, and the northern part of Africa. In such cases as this, the rivals would quarrel with each other, and sometimes produce great devastation in different parts of the empire by the civil wars which they would incite.

What were the two most conspicuous examples of this rivalry?

The first great case of this kind was that of Marius and Sylla. They kept all Italy, and Rome itself, in a state of great alarm and distress for many years with their dreadful quarrels. They had each succeeded in placing themselves at the head of immense armies, and the people could not displace them. The next great case of this kind was that of Pompey and Cæsar. These generals both acquired a great military reputation, each in his own quarter of the world, and then they came together at Rome, and quarreled to see who should be master there.

Describe the early career of Cæsar.

Cæsar acquired his power by his services in the northern part of the empire—in Switzerland, France, and Germany. After having conquered these countries, he fitted out an expedition from France, or Gaul as it was then called, for an invasion of Britain.

CÆSAR'S INVASION OF BRITAIN.

This enterprise, too, was successful, and the Britons, though not wholly subdued, were still, in a great measure, brought under the Roman dominion. The particulars of this invasion, and of the events which followed it, will be related more particularly in the STORY OF ENGLISH HISTORY.

What measures did Cæsar adopt while absent at the north for strengthening his influence at Rome?

While Cæsar remained in his province at the north, he was still all the time engaged in strengthening, by means of his agents, his influence at Rome, and increasing his party there. He was possessed of great wealth, and he employed this wealth in giving entertainments to the people of the higher ranks, and in arranging games and celebrations to please the lower classes. Pompey, the rival general, who had acquired his fame and power with other armies and in other provinces, was doing the same thing. Thus

both had their partisans at the capital, and each was striving with all his power to overbear the influence of the other.

What bold design did Cæsar finally adopt?

At length Cæsar, finding that there was danger that Pompey's party would become the stronger, conceived the daring design of marching with his army to Rome. This would, of course, be in violation of law, for no general could leave his province, especially with his army, without orders from the senate.

What were his thoughts in the prospect of crossing the Rubicon?

The river which formed the boundary of the province toward Rome was the Rubicon. Cæsar advanced to the bank of this stream, and paused for some time, hesitating whether to take the fatal step. "If I cross this stream," said he, "the die will be cast. I must then make myself master of the Roman empire, or else perish."

He stood thus for some time on the shore of the river, musing upon the greatness of the undertaking in which the act of passing across it would involve him. His officers stood by his side. "We can go back now," said he, "if we will, but if we once cross this little stream it will be too late to retreat. We must then go on, and conquer or be destroyed."

What was his decision?

He determined at length to cross the stream. When this decision was once taken, there was no longer any faltering. He put his whole army in motion, and marched directly toward Rome. He was very popular with his soldiers, and they followed him with great alacrity. The people of the country, too, as he advanced along the road, generally espoused his cause.

Describe the effects produced at Rome by the news that he was coming.

Of course, the news of his approach produced the greatest possible excitement in Rome. Armed men assembled in great num-

bers in the public places in the city, and discussed earnestly and

EXCITEMENT IN ROME.

eagerly the question what was to be done. Some were for receiving him, others were for resisting him.

What course did Pompey adopt?

Pompey exerted himself to the utmost to quell the alarm, and to induce the government to take a decided stand against the rebel. "We have nothing to fear from him," said he. "I can raise men enough by stamping my foot to put him down."

Relate what occurred when Cæsar drew nigh to the city? What became of Pompey?

Pompey soon found, however, that the current was likely to turn against him. The approach of Cæsar at the head of such an army, all enthusiastically devoted to his interests, encouraged his

friends and intimidated his enemies. Those who had been most opposed to him fled from the city. Every one who went made the case more hopeless for those that remained. At last Pompey himself, taking with him a few of his most resolute adherents, set off secretly at night, and traveled with all dispatch to Brundusium, the port of embarkation for Macedon and Greece. He was intending to cross over to his own provinces, in order to raise an army and prepare for war.

Did Cæsar pursue Pompey? What occurred at Brundusium?

Cæsar followed him. He reached Brundusium before Pompey had left it; but Pompey succeeded in making his escape by embarking in the night, with all the forces that he had collected, notwithstanding all that Cæsar could do to prevent him.

When Cæsar found that Pompey had escaped beyond sea, what did he do?

Cæsar then went back to Rome, determining to take full possession of the government there, and then pursue Pompey at his leisure. He entered the city at the head of his troops, and assumed at once the general direction of public affairs.

Relate what occurred at the treasury.

He summoned the treasurer to deliver to him the keys of the treasury. The officer replied that it was contrary to law for him to enter. Cæsar said that for men with swords in their hands there was no law, and added, that if the officer did not admit him, he would kill him on the spot. "And you may rely upon it," he added, "that it is easier for me to do it than to say it."

What was the result of the affair?

The officer yielded, and Cæsar took possession of the treasury.

How soon did Cæsar resume his operations against Pompey?

For some months Cæsar was occupied in Italy and the neighboring provinces, subduing opposition, and extending and confirming his power. Then he marched toward the Adriatic to renew his contest with Pompey.

How had Pompey been employed in the mean time?

In the mean time, Pompey had been diligently employed in gathering an immense force in Macedon and Greece, and had drawn them up on the shores opposite Brundusium. The attention of the whole Roman world was directed to the scene, all anxiously awaiting the result of the conflict.

When was the great final battle fought? What was the result of it?

Notwithstanding all Pompey's efforts to prevent it, Cæsar succeeded in crossing the Adriatic with his troops, and then, after a succession of movements, evolutions, and manœuvres, in the progress of which the two armies traversed the country southward as far as Thessaly, they came to a halt on a plain in Thessaly, called the Plain of Pharsalia, and here fought a great battle. It was a most desperate and terrible conflict. Pompey was entirely defeated. His army was driven off in all directions, his camp was broken up, his tents torn down, plundered, and trampled under foot, and he himself was compelled to fly from the field, accompanied with very few attendants, and in a state of the greatest distress and terror.

Narrate the particulars of Pompey's flight.

As soon as he had got beyond the limits of the field, he turned aside, and continued his flight, through forests and solitudes, toward the sea-shore. He reached it at length, and found refuge for the night in a fisherman's cabin. The next morning he embarked in a little boat, and the boatmen rowed him along the shore until they came in sight of a merchant vessel which was about to sail from the coast. Pompey was taken on board. The captain of the vessel received the distinguished fugitive, when he learned who he was, with the utmost kindness and consideration.

How was it that he finally obtained a company of followers again?

In this vessel Pompey sailed along, touching at various points

on the coasts and islands of the Mediterranean, and summoning his friends every where to come to his aid. A considerable number responded to this appeal, and joined him. Some brought ships with them, and so, in time, he had quite a little fleet. Still he went on, and many and anxious were the consultations and debates which he held with his friends on the question where it would be best to go.

Relate the circumstances of Pompey's meeting with his wife at Lesbos.

On his way to Egypt, Pompey stopped to have an interview with his wife Cornelia at the island of Lesbos, where he had sent her for safety. Cornelia came on board her husband's vessel, and resolved to accompany him, and share his fortunes, whatever they might be. She was a very faithful and devoted wife, and was also a very resolute woman. Her presence and her counsels greatly encouraged and strengthened her husband.

Where did Pompey finally decide to go, and why?

At length it was decided to go to Egypt. Ptolemy, the then king of Egypt, had been Pompey's friend, and so Pompey thought that he would receive and protect him.

What advice did Ptolemy's counselors give when they heard that Pompey was coming?

When, however, the little fleet drew nigh the coast, and Ptolemy heard that it was coming, his counselors advised him that the best thing he could do would be to entice Pompey to the shore, and then kill him as soon as he landed. By this they thought they should please Cæsar, who was now likely to become the master of the world.

How did the case finally end?

The king acceded to this plan. He sent men who induced Pompey to come on shore from his galley in a boat, and then, as soon as he disembarked, an assassin, whom they had provided for the purpose, stabbed him, and he fell dead upon the sand.

ASSASSINATION OF POMPEY.

In what manner did they announce the death of Pompey to Cæsar?

The murderers of Pompey then cut off his head in order to send it as a present to Cæsar.

How did Cæsar receive the tidings?

When the dreadful trophy was sent to Cæsar, instead of being pleased with it, he was filled with indignation, and turned away from the spectacle in sorrow and tears. He afterward did every thing in his power to render honor to his great rival's memory.

What are the principal particulars of Cæsar's subsequent history?

Cæsar, who had followed Pompey into Egypt, remained some time there, and then returned to Rome. He was now firmly established as the supreme magistrate of Rome. He did not call himself king, for the Romans, ever since the expulsion of Tarquin,

could never endure the name of king. So he styled himself *Emperor*, which means commander. The word, in the language of that country, is Imperator. His successors in this office took the same title, and they are called collectively, in history, the Roman Emperors. Rome continued under the government of the emperors for several hundred years after the time of Cæsar.

What was the character of Cæsar's government?

Cæsar exercised his government, in many respects, exceedingly well. He arranged and systematized every thing throughout the empire, and advanced the Roman commonwealth to the highest summit of its greatness and power. He made excellent laws, and established wise and beneficent institutions; he planned and executed many vast and magnificent schemes of public improvement, and corrected an infinite number of abuses in the government, and in a thousand ways improved the administration of public affairs.

Describe the manner in which he was accustomed to return from his military expeditions.

From time to time, he went away on military expeditions and campaigns, to quell insurrections, or to subdue some intractable province. In returning to Rome at the close of these campaigns, he usually entered the city in a triumphal car, at the head of great processions, arranged with all possible pomp and parade. On these occasions he caused to be carried in the procession trophies of the victories he had achieved. These trophies consisted of flags and banners taken from the enemy; vessels of gold and silver, and other treasures, loaded in vans; or captives taken in battle, some conveyed in carriages, and some marching sorrowfully on foot, destined, perhaps, to public execution when the ceremony of the triumph was ended; displays of arms, and implements, and dresses, and all else which might serve to give the Roman crowd an idea of the customs of the conquered nations; and, lastly, specimens of the animals that they used, caparisoned in the manner in which the foreign nation used them. One of these processions was so long

THE TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION.

that it was four days in entering the city, and on one of the evenings of these days there were forty elephants in the line, bearing torches to light the way.

What was the end of Cæsar?

At length a conspiracy was formed against Cæsar, and he was stabbed in the senate-house in open day, and thus his life was brought to a sudden and dreadful end. The name of the person who stabbed him was Brutus, though there were other persons who were joined with him in the conspiracy. They all gloried in the deed when it was done.

Thus in Julius Cæsar, as well as in multitudes of others like him, were fulfilled the words of Jesus Christ, "They that take the sword shall perish by the sword."

CHAPTER XV.

EGYPT.

Describe the situation of Egypt.

The country of Egypt—a long and very narrow valley, fertilized by the waters of the Nile—was extremely fruitful, and it seems to have been one of the very earliest portions of the earth that was settled by man. Lying, however, as it does, in a remote and secluded position, it was very little connected with the rest of the world until the time of the Romans, so that little is known of its history by any of the ordinary channels until a comparatively late period. The attention of the world was turned toward Egypt particularly on the occasion when Julius Cæsar went there in pursuit of Pompey, for he remained some time in the country on that occasion, and took an active part in the government of it, as we shall presently see.

For what is Egypt now chiefly remarkable?

Egypt is more remarkable than any other country for the immense and extremely ancient architectural remains which are found there. The great edifices of Nineveh and Babylon, having been built of mud bricks, have long since gone to decay; but those of Egypt were built of the hardest stone, and they were of the most colossal size too, and were constructed in the most substantial manner. They have, therefore, endured to the present day.

Which are the most remarkable of these structures?

The most remarkable of these structures are the pyramids, which were built, as is supposed, for tombs, by the ancient kings. There are about forty of them in all, standing in different groups in the middle portion of the valley of the Nile. They are of various sizes, though the form and the proportions of them are in all cases the same.

THE PYRAMIDS OF EGYPT.

What appearance do the pyramids present when seen at a distance?

Seen in the distance, they look like peaked mountains rising from a sandy plain.

What is known in respect to the origin of the pyramids?

It has always been a great mystery what these pyramids were built for, as no account of the origin of them, nor even scarcely any tradition respecting them, has come down to us. In the most ancient times of which we have any recorded information, travelers and scholars visited Egypt, and found the pyramids there then, just as they are now, and the people who lived in the country then did not know, any more than they do now, who built them or what they built them for.

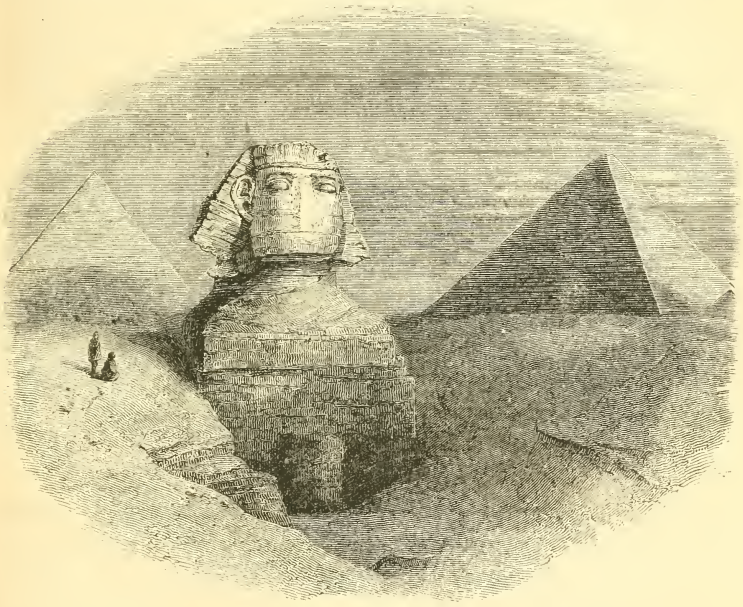
What suppositions have been made to account for them?

Some have supposed that they were temples consecrated to the sun, for many of those Eastern nations were accustomed to wor-

ship the sun as a god. Others have thought that they might have been designed as granaries, to store up supplies of grain; but the prevailing sentiment is, that they were simply tombs or mausoleums erected to perpetuate the memory of dead kings.

What other remarkable monuments exist in Egypt? Describe the Sphinx.

Among the other monuments of Egypt are a number of immense statues and images, one of the most remarkable of which is the Sphinx, a monstrous figure, sixty or seventy feet high, with



THE SPHINX.

the head of a woman and the body of a lion. What this means nobody knows; though the Greeks had a story that such an animal as this lived in their country in very ancient times. It lived in a cave, and whenever it saw any body coming by, it would propose a riddle to him. If the man guessed the riddle, then he was

allowed to go. If he could not guess it, then the Sphinx ran out upon him, seized him, and devoured him alive.

Describe the statues of Memnon.

There are in another part of Egypt two immense statues, called the statues of Memnon, standing alone on the plain. They are of

THE STATUES OF MEMNON.

immense size, as you see by comparing the figures of the men with them in the engraving. The water of the Nile, from an inundation, is spreading over the ground around the statues. They stand firmly in their places still, but, like the Sphinx, they are weather-beaten and time-worn, and all the distinct lineaments of the face are obliterated and gone.

What is the reason why so little is known of the origin of these monuments?

There are a great many other wonderful ruins and remains in

Egypt, though very little is known of their origin, or of their character and design. The reason of this is that the country, in its earliest ages, was so apart from the rest of the world in its isolation and seclusion, that its history did not become mingled and incorporated with that of other nations. Egypt had a language exclusively her own, the language of hieroglyphics. In this language her history was recorded on temples, obelisks, and monuments of every kind, and then the knowledge of this language was lost before the day when travelers and scholars from the rest of the world found their way into the valley.

Is it possible to decipher any of these hieroglyphics?

In modern times, the art of deciphering many of these hieroglyphics has been discovered, and thus a great deal of information about the early history of the Egyptians has been obtained, though this information consists, after all, of little more than the names of the kings and the dates of their reigns.

In what cases has Egypt been referred to before in this history?

We have already related in the chapter on Darius how Cambyses, the son of Cyrus, king of Persia, invaded Egypt, and brought it under the Persian sway. After this, Alexander the Great, when he conquered Persia, conquered Egypt too, as a part of the Persian dominion. You recollect that he passed on directly to Egypt immediately after the conquest of Tyre. It was then that he founded the city of Alexandria. At his death, when his empire was divided among his generals, Egypt fell to one of them named Ptolemy, and from him sprang a line of kings called the Ptolemies, who governed Egypt for many years.

Describe the character and doings of the Ptolemies.

These Ptolemies were a very distinguished race of sovereigns. Being of Greek origin, they were very intelligent and able rulers. They greatly improved Alexandria, and made it a most powerful and wealthy city. As the land was low and level all along that coast, they built a very tall light-house on an island that formed

part of the city. They carried this light-house up to a great elevation, and they kept a bright light burning upon the top of it every night, and all night long, so that ships steering for Alexandria could see it at a great distance out to sea, and so easily find the way in.

What contest was going on in Egypt when Cæsar came there in his pursuit of Pompey?

When Cæsar visited Egypt, there was prevailing there a contest between Cleopatra the queen, and her brother, for possession of the kingdom. Cleopatra, whom Cæsar assisted, as we shall see, in this contest to gain possession of the throne, was a princess in this royal line of Ptolemies. Indeed, her brother's name was Ptolemy.

What did Cæsar do on his arrival in Egypt?

When Cæsar arrived in Egypt in pursuit of Pompey, it was in Alexandria that he landed. He did not know to what part of the coast Pompey had gone, so he himself proceeded directly to the capital. It was here that the news of Pompey's death came to him, accompanied by the head which the murderers sent him, as related in the last chapter.

Describe the course that he pursued in Alexandria.

Cæsar had landed in Alexandria with only a very small force, but he immediately established himself in one of the royal palaces, and assumed a very commanding tone and air, almost as if he were himself the sovereign of the country. Both Ptolemy and Cleopatra were then away, being at the head of their respective armies in the field. There was a governor, however, in Alexandria, whom Ptolemy had left in command there. His name was Pothinus. He was very much displeased with Cæsar's conduct, and with the demands which he made upon him from time to time, but he did not think it prudent to quarrel with him openly. Cæsar, however, expected that it would come to a quarrel in the end, and so he dispatched a messenger to Rome, ordering them to send him a re-enforcement of ships and troops as soon as possible.

What was the effect produced upon the mind of Cleopatra by Cæsar's arrival?

In the mean time, Cleopatra, who was encamped near Pelusium at the time of Cæsar's arrival, was very earnest to see him, and try to persuade him to espouse her cause. This he would very likely be willing to do; for if he were to be the means of deposing Ptolemy, and of putting her upon the throne instead, he could exercise through her a commanding influence in Egyptian affairs.

What were the difficulties in the way of her gaining access to Cæsar?

But the difficulty was, how she was to get to him, for Pothinus was under Ptolemy's command, and would, of course, watch all the avenues of approach to Cæsar's palace with great vigilance and care. She could not march to Alexandria at the head of her army, for Ptolemy's army was strongly intrenched in a position that was directly in the way. She could not attempt to pass alone, or with few attendants, through the country, for every town and village was occupied with garrisons and officers under the orders of Pothinus, and she would certainly be intercepted. She had no fleet, and could therefore not make the passage openly by sea. Besides, even if she could by any means reach the gates of Alexandria, how was she to pass safely through the streets of the city to the palace where Cæsar resided, since the whole city, except the palace thus occupied as Cæsar's quarters, was wholly in the hands of Pothinus's government?

Describe the stratagems that she devised for joining herself to Cæsar.

She finally contrived to send a trusty messenger to Cæsar secretly, to ask him if he was willing that she should come. He sent back word to her to come by all means. So Cleopatra left her camp with a small number of attendants, and in disguise, and came along the coast in a small boat, and so entered Alexandria. She then caused herself to be rolled up into a bale, and to be thus

CLEOPATRA'S STRATAGEM.

carried in on mens' shoulders. The guards at the door asked the men what it was that they were carrying, and they said it was a roll of carpet, or something of that sort, for one of Cæsar's rooms. So they let them go in.

Describe the course and the termination of the war.

Cæsar immediately espoused Cleopatra's cause with great zeal, and, after a long and obstinate war, Ptolemy was drowned in one of the branches of the Nile, in attempting to make his escape across it in a boat, after a battle in which his army had been defeated; and then Cleopatra succeeded to the throne without any farther opposition. Cæsar soon afterward returned to Rome.

What occurred on the death of Cæsar?

Cleopatra continued to reign until after the death of Cæsar. As soon as his death occurred, several great generals rose at once, and began to contend with each other for the command of the em-

pire. Mark Antony was one. Cleopatra espoused his cause. A great battle was fought, and Antony was victorious. The victory placed him at the head of the Roman commonwealth.

What course did Antony adopt in respect to Cleopatra?

As soon as his power was thus established, he sent a deputation to Cleopatra, summoning her to come to Asia Minor, and meet him there, in order to answer to certain charges which he had heard made against her. Many people supposed that this was only a pretense, and that Antony, far from wishing to try Cleopatra for any supposed crimes, only wished to see her and enjoy her society, having heard a great deal of the fame of her beauty. Indeed, the messenger who came for her told her that she need not be alarmed. "As soon as Antony sees you," said he, "no matter what the charges are, you will find yourself in great favor."

The messenger furthermore advised Cleopatra not to hesitate in respect to accepting the invitation. "Proceed at once to Cilicia without fear," said he, "and present yourself before Antony in as much pomp and magnificence as you can command. I will answer for the result." Cleopatra determined to follow this advice. Her imagination was fired with the idea of making so splendid a conquest, and she determined at once to set out on the voyage.

Relate the adventures that Cleopatra met with in going to Antony.

So Cleopatra set out for Alexandria with a fleet, and a large company of attendants, to wait upon Antony. The place to which she went was Tarsus, near the northeastern corner of the Mediterranean Sea. Tarsus is on the River Cydnus, not far from its mouth. Cleopatra sailed up the river in a most magnificent galley, with purple sails and silver-mounted oars. She built a pavilion on the banks of the river when she had landed, and then invited Antony to come and sup with her. He came, accompanied by a party of his friends, and was perfectly amazed at the splen-

CLEOPATRA'S ENTERTAINMENT.

dor and magnificence of the scene, and at the luxuriousness of the banquet. The tents and pavilions where the entertainment was spread were illuminated with an immense number of lamps, which were arranged in a very beautiful and ingenious manner. The vast variety, too, of the meats and wines, and of the vessels of gold and silver with which the tables were loaded, and the gorgeous magnificence of the dresses worn by Cleopatra and her attendants, conspired to form a scene that resembled enchantment more than reality.

What was the result of this interview?

The result was as the messenger had predicted. Antony was so completely captivated by Cleopatra's charms that he soon lost all his ambition, and all his interest in public affairs. He finally went to Egypt, and spent the winter with Cleopatra there in luxury and dissipation. The consequence was, that his affairs went

entirely to ruin, and both he and Cleopatra came to a miserable end together.

ROOM IN CLEOPATRA'S PALACE.

What were the consequences of Antony's connection with Cleopatra?

Antony brought himself into the difficulties which finally led to his destruction by remaining in Egypt so long, and giving himself up so wholly to Cleopatra as to neglect entirely the affairs of government, and to produce great dissatisfaction and discontent at Rome. His great rival Octavius took advantage of this state of things to raise an army and assume an attitude of hostility toward Antony, with a view of making himself master of the empire.

Antony at last aroused himself to effort. He collected a fleet, and went across the sea to meet his enemy. Cleopatra went with him. But it was too late.

Describe the battle of Actium.

The fleets met at Actium, on the western coast of Greece, and a great battle was fought. Antony's force was vastly superior in point of numbers to that of his enemy, and the battle was prolonged and hotly contested; but in the end, Antony was entirely defeated, and he and Cleopatra fled to Egypt together in dismay.

What became of Antony after the battle?

He remained in Alexandria some time in a state of stupid despair, Octavius advancing all the time, and dooming him more and more certainly to destruction. Antony meanwhile abandoned himself more unreservedly than ever to carousals and dissipation. Cleopatra made festivals and celebrations on the most lavish scale. At length, when Octavius arrived, and the whole city was in a state of wild confusion and excitement, Antony killed himself.

What became of Cleopatra?

Cleopatra was taken prisoner. Octavius kept her confined in a tower for some days, intending to take her with him a captive to Rome; but she was found dead in her cell on the day before she was to sail.

By what means was it said that she destroyed herself?

It was supposed that she killed herself by placing an asp—a poisonous reptile—upon her arm. There was, however, no mark of the bite to be seen on her arm, and the actual cause of her death was never certainly known.

What became of Egypt after this?

After this, Egypt became a Roman province.

CHAPTER XVI.

FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

What was the character of Cæsar's power, and how was it exercised?

JULIUS CÆSAR exercised the vast power which he acquired over the Roman commonwealth, on the whole, wisely and well, but it was usurped power after all. He gained it by force; that is, by means of the military strength of the immense armies which had been placed under his command for other purposes.

What is such a government as this called?

A government like this, which is maintained by the power of armies, independent of the will of the people, is called a military despotism.

What is the general character of a military despotism at first?

A military despotism may be, for the time being, a good government or a bad government. It depends upon the character of the man who wields it. The man who first establishes a military despotism is usually a man of great talent and energy, and of enlarged, comprehensive, and far-sighted views; and out of regard to his own interest, seen as he sees it, he governs the country well. He wishes to increase its prosperity, and to develop its resources in full, as a means of aggrandizing his own power.

How is it that its character usually changes afterward?

But at his death, or in one or two generations afterward, all is changed. The power usually falls, sooner or later, into the hands of feeble and incompetent relatives, or dissolute and reckless sons, who have no higher ends or aims, in the exercise of it, than to gratify their own malignant passions, or their dissolute or vicious desires; for these weak or dissolute men, though they never would have been able to establish such a government themselves, find it

very easy to get possession of it when it is handed down to them already established by a powerful predecessor.

Describe the quarrels that usually arose among the great generals, and the effects of them.

For a time after the first establishment of the military despotism in Rome, there was no obvious way, when an emperor died, of determining who should succeed him, and dreadful wars broke out among the great generals that were left in order to decide the question. We have seen an example of this in the case of Antony and Octavius. In these controversies the people had little to say. The armies had got the mastery over them, and they were obliged to submit. The city was thrown into a state of terror and confusion, the country was ravaged, innocent and helpless towns were besieged, sacked, and destroyed, and all the countless miseries and horrors of civil war spread over the whole land by the lawlessness of a vast military monster which those who had created it could no longer control.

What course do the Americans adopt in respect to great armies?

The people of America, who desire to keep the control of their own public affairs in their own hands, are extremely watchful and jealous against the formation of large armies. They know very well that, after passing certain limits, they become masters of the country, and rule it with an iron hand, and that, when once their power is established, it is almost impossible for the people to escape from the miserable thraldom.

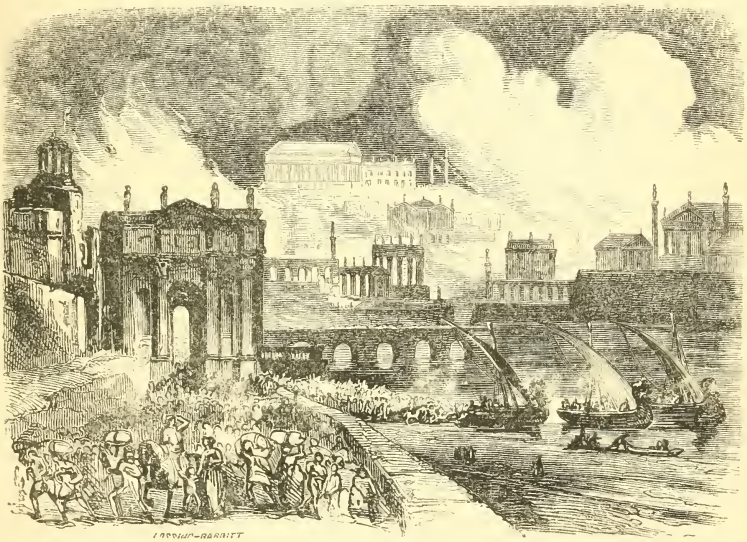
What was, in general, the character of the Roman emperors?

The Roman people made repeated efforts to resist the dreadful domination of these despots, but all was of no avail. The career of one of them might be cut short by rebellion or assassination, but while the army remained there was always another general at hand ready to take his place, and thus the line went on. Some of these emperors were perfect monsters of cruelty and vice. They op-

pressed the people most mercilessly, and when, on any account, they became specially angry with them, they vented their rage and spite in the most wanton and ferocious manner.

What great crime was committed by Nero?

One of them, Nero, it was said, in a fit of anger set the city on fire, and then was so much pleased and amused at the spectacle,



BURNING OF ROME.

that he went to one of the theatres, where he could see the flames to good advantage, and sang and played there with delight.

What became of the administration of the government in these times?

Of course, while the power was in such hands, the whole administration of the government gradually fell into confusion, and, in process of time, the greatness and strength of the empire was wasted away. Rebellions which could not be quelled broke out in the provinces, and riots and tumults, produced by turbulent and

hungry laborers and artisans, swept through the streets of Rome. The peaceful inhabitants were, of course, kept in a constant state of alarm, and all the useful pursuits of life were interrupted or wholly suspended.

RIOTS IN ROME.

How did this state of things finally result?

At length, certain half-savage tribes that lived in those days in the northern parts of Europe, and who had never been subdued, began to encroach upon the frontiers. There was no efficient force there to resist them, and so they advanced gradually, nearer and nearer, year by year, toward the heart of the empire. The names of some of the principal of these hordes were the Ostrogoths, the Visigoths, the Vandals, and the Huns.

Who was the most distinguished leader of the barbarians that invaded Rome?

One of the most distinguished of the leaders of these barbarians was Alaric, the king of the Visigoths. He came from the northern part of Germany. He came on gradually at the head of his hordes until he had conquered Greece, and then he advanced with a powerful army into Italy, and threatened Rome.

How did the Roman emperor attempt to save the city from ruin?

The Roman emperor, finding himself entirely unable to meet the invader, offered Alaric a great ransom if he would spare the city. This ransom consisted of a vast sum in gold and silver, and a large quantity of silk and scarlet cloth, these being the kinds of treasures that the barbarians most highly prized. The offer of this ransom was a very desperate measure. Such a mode of buying off either conquerors or robbers is never long effectual, for such men are never faithful to their agreements, and when they find that they succeed thus in accomplishing their ends, the temptation soon becomes irresistible to renew the aggression.

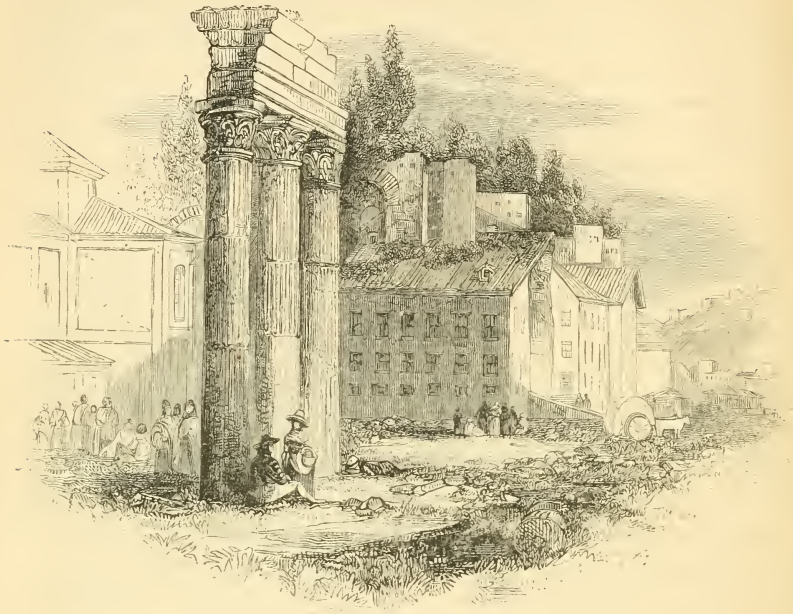
How did the invasion of the barbarians finally end?

This ransom saved the city for a time, but Alaric, as might have been expected, soon came again, and as the emperor had now no second ransom to pay, he laid siege to the city, and by surrounding it, and cutting off the supplies, he compelled it to surrender. Then the whole horde of his barbarian army poured into the city, plundering, burning, and destroying wherever they came. The proud imperial city never recovered from this blow. A great portion of it was burned, and the immense treasures which had been accumulating there for a thousand years were carried off in pillage or wantonly destroyed.

What is the present condition of Rome?

Since that time this ancient capital of the world has gone gradually more and more to decay. The people have become degen-

erate and degraded, and the city itself has now little left to mark its former grandeur except the imposing magnificence of its ruins.



RUINS OF ROME.

What became the general condition of Europe after the fall of Rome?

After the fall of the Roman empire, all Europe sank into a condition of semi-barbarism, which continued for several hundred years. This period is commonly called in history the Dark Ages, and it continued until at length the civilization of the modern nations of Europe began gradually to appear, and to develop itself more and more.

CHAPTER XVII.

ANCIENT CHRONOLOGY.

What is chronology?

Chronology is the science that treats of the periods of time in which chronological events have occurred. On the following page is a table, which represents to the eye the progress of time from the Deluge to the birth of Christ, with the most important events recorded at the time when they occurred.

Describe the construction of the table.

The letters B.C. at the head of the column of figures stand for Before Christ, and the figures below denote the years. Each line represents a century.

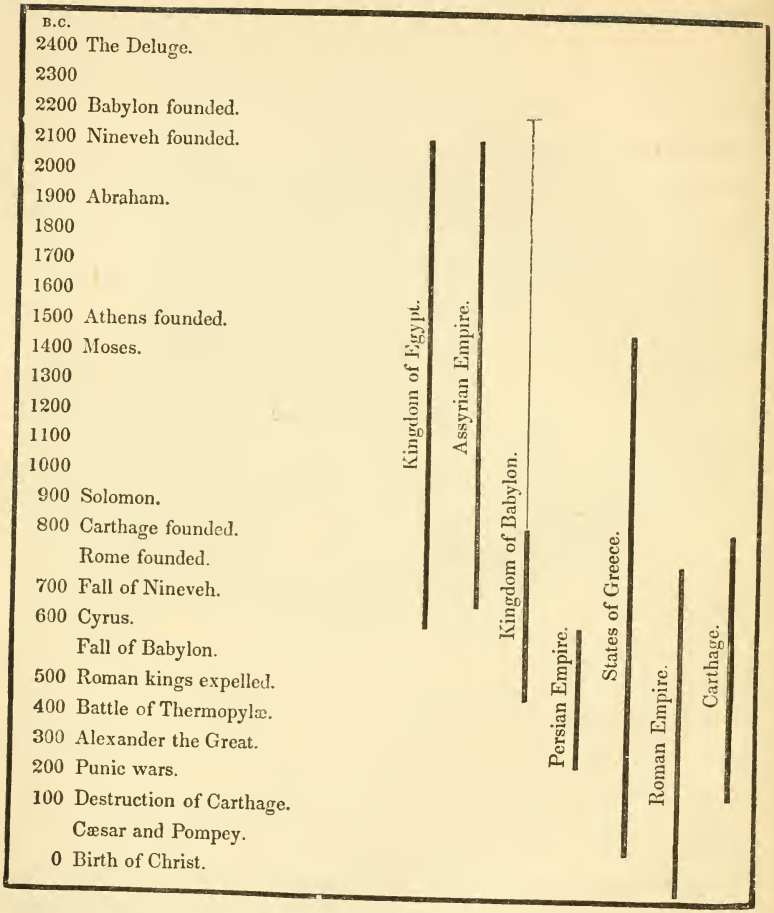
At what period have nearly all the important events that are recorded in history occurred?

From this table it appears that the Deluge took place about 2400 years before Christ, and that nearly all the important events of history which have been thus far narrated in this work occurred during the latter part of the time represented in the Table. The foundation of Carthage, however, though it is mentioned in one of the latter chapters of the book, occurred comparatively early. We observe by the table too, at a glance, the comparative duration of the several great empires of ancient times.

For what portion of the history of the world is our knowledge confined to what the Scriptures teach us?

We observe, also, that after the foundation of Babylon and Nineveh, which are set down respectively at 2200 and 2100, a long period elapses, namely, from 2100 to 800, in which no events except those relating to Scripture History are recorded. The truth is, that of this whole period—about twelve centuries—nothing except what is recorded in Scripture is certainly known. It is not

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.



till about the year 800 that the period of authentic secular history begins. And, indeed, for some centuries after this time, very little reliance is to be placed upon the historical truth of the legends which the ancient writers have recorded.

How is the duration of the several empires and kingdoms represented in the table?

To the right, in the Chronological Table, are black lines representing the duration of the principal empires and kingdoms of ancient times. By this plan the comparative durations of these states are made visible to the eye, the beginnings and endings of the lines being made to correspond with the years at which the states respectively commenced, and, indeed, their independent existence.

What is the object of such a table as this?

Of course, such a representation as this can not be entirely exact, but it assists us very much in obtaining general conceptions of the ancient chronology.

PART II.

ENGLISH HISTORY.

I.

THE STORY OF HISTORY

PART II.

ENGLISH HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

THE ANCIENT BRITONS.

What were the original inhabitants of the island of Great Britain called?

The first part of this work contains a narrative of the course of Ancient History from the earliest ages down to the final fall of the Roman empire, and the sacking of Rome by Alaric and his horde of Goths a few hundred years after the Christian era. In that narrative it was related how Julius Cæsar, the first of the Roman emperors, invaded Great Britain from his province of Gaul. The aboriginal inhabitants, which Julius Cæsar found on the island at the time when he took possession of it, are called in history the Ancient Britons. They are the earliest inhabitants of the country of whom we have any information.

What is the only source of written information respecting them?

Very little, however, is now known respecting them, for they did not understand the art of writing, and so they have left no books giving an account of their origin or their history. All the information we have comes through the statements made by Julius Cæsar respecting them when he went back to Rome, and also by other Roman generals who afterward visited the island. These

statements were written, and have been preserved in the Roman books which have come down to our time.

What other sources of information have we respecting them?

Besides these accounts, there are some sculptures remaining at Rome that have figures upon them, from which people have learned something of the manners and customs of the ancient Britons. Also, in various parts of England, old coins have been dug up, and fragments of arms and utensils. In one place a mould was found which was used for casting spear-heads. It seems the spear-heads of those days were not made of iron, which is usually shaped by forging, but of bronze, which must be cast in a mould. It was by means of the same metal that the people made their war-chariots, their axes, and nearly all their utensils.

What are the metals that were used by the Britons?

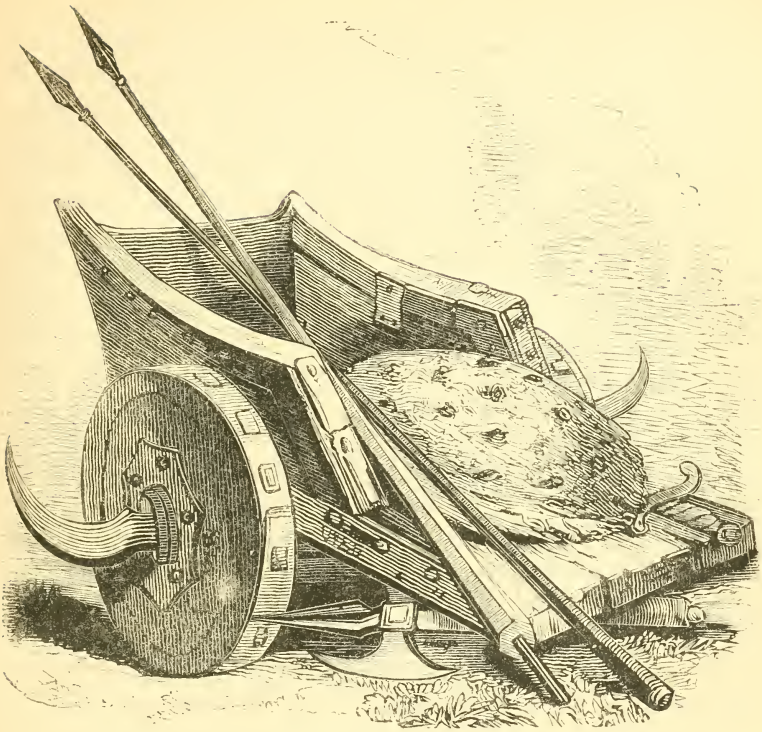
Bronze is a metal formed of copper and tin.* Brass is formed of copper and zinc. The Britons used bronze for their armor because it is harder than iron, though it is by no means so hard as steel. Perhaps, too, they could not work iron very well. There were immense beds of iron ore in the northern and northwestern parts of England, but they may not have been then known. The copper and tin mines are in Cornwall, which is the country lying in the southwestern part of England, near the sea, and these the Britons had been accustomed to work from the earliest ages.

Describe the ancient commerce that originated in the tin mines.

Indeed, it was through these mines of tin and copper, in Britain, that the country had chiefly been known before the days of Cæsar. Merchants were accustomed to go there to procure their metals,

* By *tin* is meant what is commonly called block tin. The material of which tin pails, and other such ware are made, does not really consist of tin, but of thin sheets of iron coated with tin, or, as it is called, tinned iron. It is only the surface which is tin. Tin alone would not be strong enough for such vessels, so they make them of iron, which is previously covered with a coating of tin to keep the iron from rusting.

When vessels made of this ware have been long used, the tin gets worn off, and we come to the iron, as we know by the rusting of the vessel in the worn places.



FORMS OF THE WAR CHARIOT AND THE ARMOR OF THE ANCIENT BRITONS.

and then to convey them to Greece or Italy, and to other countries on the Mediterranean. The Carthaginians used to do this in their ships. So, after the time of Cæsar, did the Romans. They would transport the metals across the Channel to France, thence up the Seine in boats as far as the river was navigable. There they would unlade the boats, and convey the metals across the land to the Rhone, and then put it into boats again, and float it down the Rhone to the sea. At the mouth of the river, or, rather, at the town nearest the mouth, they would embark it on board their ships, and send it by sea where it was required.

Relate the story of Brutus.

These Britons came, it was supposed, originally from the Continent. Indeed, there was a traditon among the people that they came from Italy, under the guidance of a man named Brutus. The story is a marvelous one, and is considered as a mere legend not worthy of any serious attention. Brutus was a wild adventurer, who proceeded from Italy at the head of a horde of men, that were little better than robbers and pirates. He first invaded the territories of a certain king, who, finding that he could not drive him away, offered to give him his daughter in marriage if he would go away of his own accord. Brutus accepted this offer, took his bride, embarked his men in his ships, and sailed away.

Describe the course of his voyage.

Brutus, with his fleet and his bride, sailed on for some time, until at length he came to a deserted island, where his party found the ruins of a city. Here there was an ancient temple of Diana, and an image of the goddess. This image, the legend relates, was endued with the power of uttering oracular responses to those who consulted it with proper ceremonies and forms. Brutus inquired of this oracle where he should go to find a place of final settlement for himself and his followers. The response of the oracle described the island of Britain to him, and directed him how to find it.

He traversed the whole length of the Mediterranean with his fleet, and then, passing out through the Straits of Gibraltar, he followed the coast of Spain to the northward. After a while he came to Britain, and, being much pleased with the country, he landed.

How did he get possession of the country?

He found the country inhabited by giants. The chief of these giants was named Gogmagog. Brutus had dreadful conflicts with these giants in various parts of the island. Finally he conquered and killed them all. Old Gogmagog he threw from the cliffs of Dover into the sea. After this, he and his men settled in the country.

COAST OF ENGLAND AT DOVER.

What was the state of the island at the time when Cæsar landed?

Whatever we may think of these stories in respect to the original settlement of the British Isles, there is no doubt that when Cæsar arrived in Britain he found the country densely peopled. The inhabitants were divided into a great number of different states and kingdoms, and, though they were in many respects rude and uncultivated, they seem to have made considerable progress in the arts of life. Many of their manners and customs were very peculiar.

Describe the towns.

Their towns, for instance, did not consist, as with us, of a compact mass of buildings, but of quite a large tract of country, with fields and woods, and scattered huts all over it. This space was surrounded and inclosed with a sort of wall, made of earth and sodded, for defense, with a ditch outside of it. This intrenchment was carried all around the town. Sometimes the trunks of trees, which had been felled for the purpose, were used for strengthening the embankments.

Describe the houses.

The houses which the people lived in within these towns were mere huts, being more like Indian wigwams than like houses. They are described by the Romans as being small and round, and covered with a conical or dome-shaped roof. There was a door in front for an entrance, and before the door was a sort of yard inclosed by a circular wall. In fact, every thing seems to have been circular in their architecture. This yard was probably for the animals that belonged to the household, to confine them at night. The whole structure is supposed to have presented the appearance represented in the engraving on the opposite page.

What evidence is there that this was really the style of the houses?

We are not obliged to depend altogether on the Roman descriptions of these huts, for there are representations of such structures on some of the ancient monuments of Rome that remain to the present day.

What is known in respect to the furniture and household utensils of the Britons?

In respect to the manner in which these huts were furnished, and to the utensils and implements which the ancient Britons used, very little is now known. Their utensils were doubtless of a very rude and primitive construction, and the number of articles of every kind was probably very small. The people were skillful in

HUTS OF ANCIENT BRITONS.

making baskets and wicker-work, and many of the vessels which they used were formed in this way. Even their huts were sometimes made of wicker-work.

Who were the Druids?

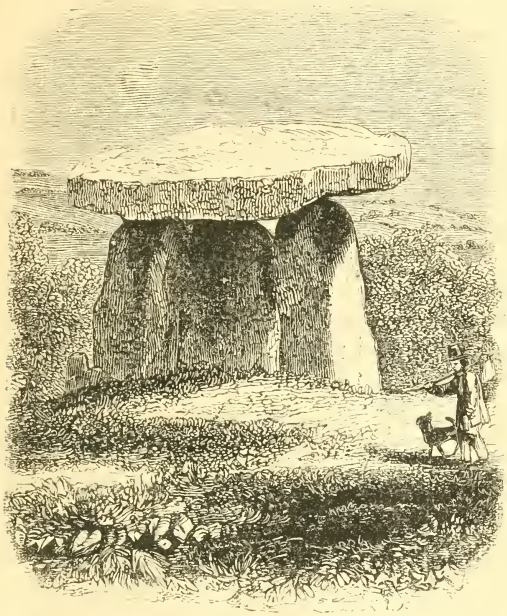
The different tribes and kingdoms of the Britons were governed by their several princes or chieftains, but the most remarkable thing in connection with their system was the existence of a class of priests, whose functions were half religious and half political, called Druids. These Druids performed the religious services of the people and offered the sacrifices. On the following page is a picture of one of them, in his sacerdotal robes.

Describe the remains still existing of the temples of the Druids.

The oak tree was considered sacred by the Druids. They per-

A DRUID IN HIS ROBES.

formed their religious rites and built their temples in oak groves. Thus the oak stands as the emblem and symbol of their religion. Their temples must have been very curious structures. The remains of some of them are to be found in different places in En-



DRUIDICAL RUIN.

gland at the present day. They consisted of great stones, standing up on the ends, and arranged in a circle, with other very large stones placed across at the top. Precisely what the Druids did in these temples is not now known, nor is it known how the temples appeared when they were entire. All that we see remaining of them now is the stones, and these are wasted away and corroded by time, so that even the original form of them does not distinctly appear. In some cases only single sets of these stones remain, as in the preceding engraving. In other cases a large part of the whole circle can be traced. The most remarkable of these Druidical remains is one called Stonehenge, which stands on Salisbury Plain.

What is the chief thing that is remarkable in respect to these ruins?

It is considered very remarkable that a people so rude and uninstructed as the ancient Britons must have been, could have contrived the means of moving such immense stones as those of which these ruins are composed.

CHAPTER II.

THE ROMAN INVASION.

What was the first step taken by Julius Cæsar when he contemplated the invasion of Britain?

When Julius Cæsar, standing on the shores of Gaul, looked across the Channel at the chalky cliffs which form the southern shore of Britain, he said to himself, "Before I attempt to take my army over, I must send a reconnoitrer to explore the shore and find a suitable place to land the troops."

Whom did he send to reconnoitre?

So he sent an officer of his army, named Volusenus, directing him to cross the Channel, and sail along the coast till he found a good smooth shore for landing armed men. Volusenus took only a single galley.

What communication did the people of Britain make to him?

Besides this, Cæsar inquired of all the merchants whom he could see, and carefully collected whatever of information they could give him about the country. The people of Britain, in the mean time, heard, through some of the merchants, probably, of Cæsar's designs, and they sent an embassador to him, with presents and peaceful messages, wishing, if possible, to avert the danger that threatened them by kind and gentle words. Cæsar received the embassage very civilly, and sent back friendly messages in return. He said that he was glad to hear of the amicable feelings that prevailed in Britain toward the Romans; that he wished the Britons to be his allies, and that he was coming soon to pay them a visit. He treated the embassador kindly, and dismissed him with honor.

Describe the preparations that he made for the invasion.

All this time he continued to concentrate his forces on the coast near Calais, and to collect all the ships and galleys that he could

procure, and get them ready for sea. At length Volusenus returned with his report, and Cæsar's fleet prepared to sail.

Relate the occurrences which took place in the passage of the expedition across the Channel.

There were about eighty transports for the foot-soldiers, and eighteen more at a different port for conveying a squadron of horse. At length a favorable morning came, and Cæsar gave orders for the fleet to sail. The two divisions did not set out together, for it took some time to send the order to the port where the squadron of horse was to be embarked. This caused some delay. When the fleets had crossed the Channel, too, instead of finding the landing-place open, as they had expected, they saw a great army of Britons assembled on the beach to resist them. Cæsar's ships then moved along the coast, the Britons following them, ready to give them battle whenever they should attempt to land.

How was the landing at length effected?

At length Cæsar gave the order to turn the galleys in toward the beach, and a dreadful conflict ensued, half in the water and half on the shore. The surges of the sea, as they rolled in upon the shelving beach, were dyed with the blood of the combatants. At last, however, Cæsar effected a landing, and drove the Britons away.

What followed after Cæsar had landed?

He then advanced into the interior of the country, and for some time carried on a vigorous war with the natives. He was generally victorious, but, after all, he did not succeed in making any permanent conquest of the country.

Relate what occurred in respect to the ships.

It was in the fall of the year that this invasion took place, and Cæsar did not think it safe to remain in Britain during the winter. Indeed, as it was, his ships, as they lay on the beach, were once or twice destroyed by the equinoctial storms, and he was obliged to rebuild them or to send to Gaul for new ones. At last, to se-

COMBAT ON THE BEACH

cure them from this danger, he adopted the plan of drawing them up on the shore, and storing them there in a fortified camp. This shows that the vessels which they used in those days could not have been of very large dimensions.

Did Cæsar spend the winter in Britain?

In consequence of these difficulties and dangers, Cæsar left Britain before the winter came on, and returned to Gaul.

Describe the subsequent course of the war.

The Romans, however, did not give up the contest. Some years after this they sent new armies into the country, and in course of

time made themselves masters of a great portion of it, and their dominion, once established, continued several hundred years. During all this time, however, wars were continually breaking out between them and particular kings and princes among the Britons, and a great many extraordinary events occurred. Two of the most distinguished of the enemies of the Romans among the Britons were Caractacus and Boadicea.

Describe the exploits of Caractacus.

Caractacus was the king of a tribe of Britons called the Silurians. I do not know in what part of the island the Silurians lived; some say in the northern part, in or near Scotland. He was a very brave prince. By means of his military talents and skill he acquired a great ascendency over his countrymen, and at length he organized a formidable rebellion against the Romans. He fought them for some time desperately and with great success. The war with him continued for nine years before the Romans were able to subdue him.

What resolution did he and his soldiers finally take?

At last he intrenched himself in a very strong camp, in a place where he thought the Romans would not dare to attack him. "If they do," said he to his soldiers, "we will die, every one of us, before we will yield to them."

Describe the situation of the Roman general in reference to an attack.

His position was so strong that for a time the Roman general, whose name was Ostorius, did not dare to attack him, but the soldiers urged him on. They had been harassed by the operations of Caractacus so long, that now, when his whole force was concentrated in one position, they were burning with impatience to conquer him, and so end the war.

What was the result?

The Roman general was finally persuaded to make the attack, and the result was as the soldiers had anticipated. It ended the

war. The intrenchment of the Britons was broken in, and the whole army routed. Caractacus himself and all his family were taken prisoners.

What became of Caractacus?

Ostorius carried Caractacus and his family, and all his principal attendants and officers, to Rome, and there made a sort of triumphal procession, and paraded the poor captives before the people of the city. The wife and daughters of Caractacus were with him. They and all the other prisoners walked along in the procession, with downcast and anxious looks, and manifesting every indication of terror, distress, and shame. Caractacus himself, however, walked erect, and looked around upon the assembled crowds with a proud and haughty air, which showed very plainly that his spirit was not subdued. When he came into the presence of the emperor, where all the other captives began to beg for mercy in the most humble and imploring manner, he stood wholly unmoved, and answered the questions which they put to him in so manly and undaunted a manner, that the emperor and all who witnessed the scene were struck with admiration. The emperor immediately ordered that his chains should be taken off and that he should be set at liberty.

What became of his family?

His family were liberated too, but they did not return to their native land.

Who was Boadicea? What plan did her husband form to secure for her the protection of the Romans?

Boadicea was queen of a tribe of Britons that lived on the eastern coast of the island. Her husband's name was Prasutagus. He was very much afraid of the Romans while he lived, which was at about the time of the wars with Caractacus or a little after, and when he died he made a will, dividing his property between his two daughters and the Emperor of Rome. He thought this would make the Roman government friendly to him, and that

they would be kind to his wife and daughters when he was no more.

How did this plan succeed?

The plan, however, failed entirely. The Romans, after Prasutagus was dead, plundered his kingdom, and abused and maltreated his family, especially his two daughters, in the most outrageous manner.

What were the temperament and character of Boadicea, and what did she do?

Boadicea was not a woman to submit to such things quietly. She was very strong and masculine in her character, and the injuries which had been inflicted on her daughters made her frantic with rage. She immediately raised a rebellion. She gathered an army, partly from her own kingdom or tribe, and partly from other tribes near that she persuaded to join her. She took the field at the head of this army, which, according to the accounts of the time, was immensely large, and the Romans, gathering together all the troops they could command, came forth to meet her.

Describe the appearance and demeanor of Boadicea before the battle.

Before the battle Boadicea rode along the ranks of the army in a war chariot, with her two daughters behind her. She herself stood up in her chariot, and harangued the soldiers as she passed along the lines, denouncing the tyranny and the crimes of the Romans, complaining bitterly of the wrongs she had suffered from their heartless cruelty, and urging the soldiers to fight valorously in the coming conflict, and thus at once avenge her wrongs and save their common country.

What was the result of the battle?

All was, however, in vain. The battle was very fiercely fought, but the Romans were victorious. Poor Boadicea, when she found that all her hopes were now forever gone, was overwhelmed with despair, and killed herself by taking poison. The Britons remain-

ed near the field of battle until they had honorably interred the body, and then they dispersed and the war was ended.

Describe the change which at last took place in the feelings of the Britons toward the Romans.

In process of time, after two or three generations had passed away, and the anger and irritation engendered by the early wars had been in some measure forgotten, the Britons learned to acquiesce in the rule of the Romans over them, and at last they even began to rely upon the Romans to protect them against their other enemies.

Who were the new enemies of the Britons? How did the Romans defend the Britons from them?

The principal of these enemies were the Picts and Scots that inhabited the northern part of the island. At length, a little more than two hundred years after the first invasion of the island, one of the Roman emperors, named Severus, came there with an army to assist the people to defend themselves against these northern savages. After carrying on the war for some time, and finding it difficult to repress the invasions of the enemy, Severus set his soldiers at work to build a wall across the island from one side to the other, with castles and towers upon it, for a garrison.

Describe the construction of the wall of Severus, and the effect of it.

The wall was not very high, though it was high enough to prevent men from climbing over, and it was thick and strong enough to resist any means of demolition which the Picts and Scots were likely to have at their command. By means of this wall, a comparatively small number of men could keep back a large number of invaders. The wall continued to do good service for a long time, and remains of it are to be seen to this day.

How long did the Romans continue in possession of Britain? What induced them finally to withdraw?

The Romans continued in possession of Britain for two hundred

THE WALL OF SEVERUS.

years after this time, making about four hundred years in all. But then they began to be so hardly pressed by their own enemies, the Goths and Vandals, in Italy, and at the very gates of Rome, that they were obliged to withdraw their troops altogether from such remote provinces as Britain. The Britons then, finding their protectors gone, were obliged to look elsewhere for help.

CHAPTER III.

THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

When and under what circumstances did the invasion of Britain by the Anglo-Saxons take place?

About the year four hundred and fifty, a small fleet of vessels, filled with armed men, suddenly made their appearance at the isl-

and of Thanet, at the mouth of the Thames. They had come across the German Ocean from some place on the Continent. They belonged to a race of men called in history the Anglo-Saxons. The men landed, and undertook to establish themselves in the country. They were joined afterward by others of their countrymen, who came over in great numbers, and in the end they overspread the whole country, the old race of Britons gradually disappearing before them, until finally the whole population seemed to be changed. The present inhabitants of England are chiefly the descendants of these Anglo-Saxons.

What two chieftains commanded the first expedition that arrived?

The party of Anglo-Saxons that arrived first in England, and landed on the island of Thanet, were under the command of two chieftains, Hengist and Horsa, names that have become very famous in English history as those of the two first Anglo-Saxon captains that landed in that country. The opposite engraving represents one of the Anglo-Saxon chieftains, in the dress and armor which they were accustomed to wear in those days. In the background we see one of their vessels in the water.

Who was the prince of the Britons at this time? How did he receive the Anglo-Saxons?

The name of the chief prince of the Britons at that time was Vortigern. When Vortigern heard of the arrival of this new party, he was pleased rather than troubled by it. He hoped that they would help him to defend his dominions from the Picts and Scots, and the other enemies that harassed them. So he sent a friendly deputation to the Saxons, inviting them to become his allies.

What proposal did he make to them?

If they would settle in his dominions, he said, and assist him in his wars, he would grant them the isle of Thanet, and a considerable portion of territory on the main land besides, for their abode, and treat them in other respects in a friendly manner.

ANGLO-SAXON CHIEFTAIN.

How was the proposal received?

Hengist and Horsa agreed to this proposal, and they sent immediately back to the Continent to invite more of the Anglo-Saxons to come and join them. This invitation was readily accepted, and great numbers came.

Who was Rowena? Relate the circumstances of her first introduction to Vortigern.

It happened that Hengist, the first of these chieftains, had a daughter at home, a beautiful young maiden, and the same messenger that was sent to bring more ships and a larger army was also directed to bring her, and probably the other members of Hengist's family. The young lady's name was Rowena. Soon after Rowena arrived, Hengist invited Vortigern and some of his chief officers to a great entertainment which he had made for him in his camp, and in the midst of the entertainment he sent Rowena in to present the king with a goblet of wine. Rowena performed the duty assigned her in a very graceful and charming manner.

What was the result of this transaction?

Vortigern was immediately so much struck with Rowena's beauty and grace, that he proposed to Hengist to give her to him in marriage. Hengist manifested great surprise at this offer, and at first said that he could not possibly give his consent; but, finally, he allowed himself to be persuaded. Indeed, it is probable that this was secretly his design when he sent for Rowena. The maiden herself made no objection to the marriage, and, accordingly, the ceremony was performed. The alliance between the Britons and the Saxons was now complete.

Describe the operations which now took place between the allied chieftains and the Picts and Scots.

The chieftains now turned the united force of their arms against the common enemies, especially the Picts and Scots on the north. The wall of Severus was a very good protection so long as it was well garrisoned and guarded, but when the Roman troops were withdrawn, the Britons could no longer effectually defend it. The Picts and Scots made breaches here and there, and broke through. And then, besides, they contrived to come round the ends of the wall in boats on the sea, and so find their way into England, sometimes in great numbers.

What sort of boats were used in those days?

The boats used by the various tribes of the island of Great Britain in those days are very curious contrivances. They were called coracles, and something very much like them is made in many parts of Wales to this day. They were made of hides stretched

THE CORACLES.

over a frame of basket-work or wicker-work, very much like the boats of the ancient Assyrians, as seen represented in the sculptures found at Nineveh at the present day.

What were the qualities of these coracles?

These coracles were very light. The boatmen, when they came to the landing, could take them up and carry them on their backs, as represented in the preceding engraving. Of course, such a

craft as this would not stand a heavy sea, but they could be navigated very safely across a smooth river, and even along the coast at sea, in calm and pleasant weather.

How did the coming of the Saxons into Britain end?

The Saxons soon succeeded in driving back the Picts and Scots; then they proceeded to establish themselves every where throughout the island, as if it had been their own native home. Their numbers were continually increased by new arrivals, and as they were remarkable for the courage and energy of their characters, and the boldness and decision which marked all the measures of their policy, they gradually became masters of the whole country, and the Britons began to diminish very rapidly in numbers and influence, until at length they had almost entirely disappeared.

During all this time, was there or not a good understanding between the Britons and the Saxons?

During this period a great many wars broke out between the two races, in all of which the Britons were overpowered, so that they came out of every conflict diminished in numbers and weakened in spirit. War broke out, indeed, even in Vortigern's day. Some difficulty arose between him and Hengist, and in the course of it, the latter, professing still to be friendly, invited Vortigern and three hundred of his officers and attendants to come into his camp to a feast, and while there the Saxons rose upon them, and assassinated them all except Vortigern himself, who was taken prisoner, and who was afterward compelled to ransom himself by ceding to Hengist three provinces of his kingdom.

Relate the story of King Arthur.

It was in the course of these wars between the Britons and Anglo-Saxons that the famous King Arthur appeared, about whom, and his Knights of the Round Table, so many ballads and tales have been written. According to these tales, King Arthur was a man of miraculous strength and valor. He was all his life a most terrible enemy to the Saxons. He fought twelve great battles

with them, and was victorious in every one. In one of these battles he killed, they said, in the course of the day, four hundred and seventy men with his own hand.

What feats of strength did he perform?

Besides his battles with the Saxons, King Arthur performed a great number of other exploits, denoting prodigious strength and valor. He hunted and killed the most ferocious wild beasts, and attacked and slew a great many giants, some in England, and some in France and Spain. He instituted an order of knights, which he called the Knights of the Round Table, consisting of those men who were most successful in emulating his strength and courage.

What occurred in connection with his pilgrimage to Jerusalem?

He was a very pious man too, according to the ideas of the times, and after all these great feats of hunting and of arms had been performed, and the world was filled with his fame, he made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. On his return, he found that his nephew, a prince named Medrawd, had alienated the affections of his wife during his absence, and, in consequence of this, he challenged the guilty seducer to single combat. The fight was long and obstinate; at length both parties fell. Medrawd was killed, and Arthur was mortally wounded. His friends carried him off the field, but he soon died, and then they buried him, digging a very deep grave, like a well, for the body, in order, as they said, that the Saxons might not find it, and dig it up again.

On the whole, what was the final result of the Saxon invasion?

Notwithstanding all the resistance that such chieftains as these could make, the Saxon power gradually extended itself throughout the island, and in the course of two hundred years from the time that Hengist and Horsa landed on the shores of Thanet, the whole country was entirely in their hands.

How long did they continue to rule in Britain?

The Saxons, after this, continued to rule in England for about two hundred years more, making about four hundred years in all.

What is the reason that we have less information in respect to the history of England during this period than before?

It is here to be observed that we know very much less of the history of England during this time than during the preceding period, while the Romans were in possession of the country, for the Romans were writers as well as warriors, and they preserved accounts of what they saw and heard, and these accounts have come down to the present day in books written by the Roman historians and scholars. Some of these books were written by the generals themselves in the midst of their campaigns. Others were written by authors at Rome, who took pains to inquire of the generals when they returned from Britain in respect to the events that occurred during the period of their command in the province. In this manner they obtained information of the most important events, and recorded them for the instruction of all mankind, in historical narratives, which were written with so much eloquence and power, that they have been read and admired in all succeeding ages.

Were the Anglo-Saxons generally acquainted with letters?

The Anglo-Saxons, on the other hand, could write very little, and very few of the writings which they produced have been preserved. Thus, while we know a great deal of the first four hundred years of English history, yet of the four hundred years which came after this first period very little is certainly known. Many tales and legends relating to this period have come down to us, it is true, such as the story of King Arthur, but no reliance is placed upon the truth of any of them.

Describe the system of government that prevailed during the Anglo-Saxon period.

In process of time, when the dominion of the Anglo-Saxons had at length become supreme throughout the island, the whole territory was divided into seven states or kingdoms, which were governed each by its own king, while one of the seven, sometimes the chief of one of these kingdoms and sometimes of another, ruled

in some sense over the whole, as general king of the country. This compound sort of kingdom was called the Saxon Heptarchy.*

What were the circumstances under which Christianity was first introduced into England?

It was during the continuance of the Saxon Heptarchy that Christianity was first introduced into England. It had been, however, established in Scotland and in Ireland a century or two before. It was first preached in Ireland by St. Patrick. He was born, the story is, in Brittany, on the coast of France, and was somehow or other, in his youth, taken by a band of robbers or free-booters, and carried to Ireland. Here he was employed by them for some time as a shepherd-boy, and then, at length, when he gained his liberty, he became a preacher of Christianity, and was so successful, that in the course of his life he was the means of bringing almost the whole population of Ireland over to the Christian faith. He founded churches, convents, and schools, he ordained priests and bishops, and he inaugurated a system of religious worship. In a word, he effected a complete religious revolution in Ireland, and founded an establishment there which has endured substantially to the present day. St. Patrick has been accordingly honored as the patron saint of Ireland from that day till now.

Who was the most distinguished preacher of Christianity in Scotland? Relate the history of Iona.

Soon after this, Christianity was preached in Scotland by missionaries from Ireland, and the Picts and Scots were converted to the faith. The most distinguished of these missionaries was named Columba. He went to the court of the king, whose name was Brude, and, after explaining to him the doctrines and precepts of Christianity, persuaded him to be baptized. Brude then granted to Columba a beautiful little island called Iona, which lies a short distance off the western coast of Scotland, for the site of a college

* The word heptarchy comes from the Greek language, and means a system of seven kingdoms.

and monastery, and here Columba founded an institution of learning and piety, which acquired great celebrity.

RUINS OF THE MONASTERY OF IONA.

What is the condition of Iona at the present time?

The ruins of this monastery remain to the present day, and are visited every year by great numbers of tourists, who go out to the island in large parties every summer's day expressly to see them.

Relate the circumstances under which Christianity was first introduced into England.

After this, Christianity was introduced into England. It was first preached to King Ethelbert by a priest named Augustin. Ethelbert was one of the chief kings that reigned during the time

of the Heptarchy. His wife was a Christian princess from some part of France, and this, perhaps, induced him to think more favorably than he otherwise would have done of the new religion.

What arrangements did the king make for hearing Augustin?

The king appointed a time to meet Augustin, and the other priests who came with him, and hear what they had to say. The place of meeting was the open air. The Saxon priests recommended this plan, for they said in the open air the king and his company would be more safe against any of the magical contrivances that the Christian preachers might intend to practice upon them.

Describe the manner in which Augustin came into the assembly.

When the assembly was convened, Augustin and his companions came into it, walking solemnly in a procession. One of them bore a silver crucifix, and another carried a banner on which a picture of Jesus Christ was embroidered. The other monks filled the air with the sounds of a solemn hymn, which they chanted in unison as they advanced into the assembly.

What was the decision of Ethelbert in respect to Augustin's proposal?

Ethelbert heard patiently all that Augustin had to offer, and then said that he did not think it best himself to change the religion of his forefathers, but that he would not forbid Augustin and his brother monks to preach Christianity among the people whenever they pleased. The result was, that before a great while the whole population was converted to the Christian faith.

How did the Anglo-Saxons at length become involved in difficulty themselves?

The government of the Anglo-Saxons went on very prosperously after this for several generations, until, at length, they became involved in great difficulty by the invasion of the Danes.

CHAPTER IV.

THE DANES.

Describe the origin and the character of the Danes.

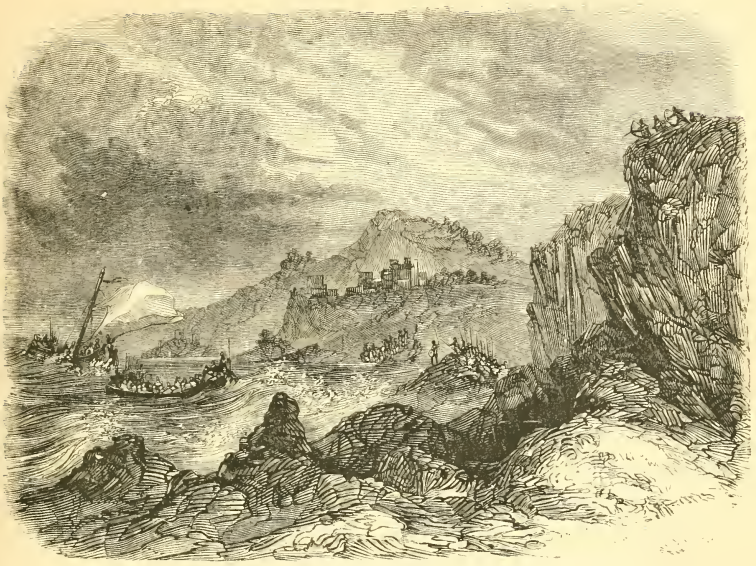
During the time the Saxon kings were reigning in England, a very extraordinary race of men were gradually rising to importance and power on the German Ocean and on the adjacent seas. They came, of course, originally from the land, but they lived almost wholly on the sea, only making occasional visits to the shores of the various countries within their reach for purposes of conquest and plunder. They were, in fact, little better than an organized nation of pirates. As they came originally from Denmark and Norway, and other countries on the shores of the Baltic Sea and German Ocean, they are in English history commonly called Danes. They were under the dominion of a race of chieftains, who, from their being almost always on the water, were called sea-kings.

How were such invasions as these regarded in ancient times?

The work of conquering and plundering a country was, in those ages of the world, considered a very honorable and proper employment, provided the deed was done by a sufficiently large number of people, and on a great enough scale. So these sea-kings, though really pirates and robbers, were considered honorable men, and many young persons, from high families on the Continent, used to come and enter their service from time to time, in order to see the world, and learn the art of seamanship and war.

Describe the characters and modes of life of the sea-kings.

It is true that the life which these sea-kings led exposed them to almost every kind of hardship and suffering. The seas which they frequented were subject to perpetual storms, and often, when they attempted to approach a coast, the wind, rising suddenly, dashed them against the rocky and iron-bound shore. At other



THE SEA-KINGS.

times, when they had been unsuccessful in their enterprises, they were driven out to sea again with insufficient supplies of food, and in the most boisterous weather. Still nothing daunted them. In fact, they became themselves in time as rough and as indomitable as the very storms with which they were accustomed to contend.

What was the final result of the invasion of the sea-kings?

During the period of English history to which we have now arrived, that is, about Anno Domini 850, these sea-kings began to make descents upon the English territory. They succeeded at length in establishing themselves firmly upon the coast, and finally in obtaining possession of a large part of the country, and the Anglo-Saxons found infinite difficulty in expelling them. The contests continued, in fact, for twenty years, and the period is known in the history of England as the period of the WARS WITH THE DANES.

Who was Ragnar Lodbrog?

One of the first of the sea-kings that invaded England was named Ragnar Lodbrog. His father was a prince or chieftain of some sort in Norway, and he himself married a Danish princess, but he was driven away from his wife's kingdom by the power of a rival chieftain, and so he took to the sea. He obtained some ships, collected together a company of desperate followers for crews, and made himself a sea-king.

Describe the plans that he formed for invading Britain.

After cruising about some time in the German Ocean and in the English Channel, and making several successful descents upon the coast, he finally resolved on attempting an incursion into England. So he built two very large ships, and rigged and equipped them in the most perfect manner. He manned them, too, with the most daring and desperate of his followers, knowing well that in landing in England he would have to encounter very formidable enemies.

What course did the expedition take in coming to the country?

Finally, when all was ready, he set sail with his ships toward the coast of Scotland. He followed the coast for some time to the southward, and at length approached the English shores on the confines of the kingdom of Northumbria, which was the most northerly of the seven Saxon kingdoms. Here he landed, and began to advance into the interior.

Who came forth to meet him? Describe the battle and the result of it.

It was not long before the king of the country, whose name was Ella, came down to meet him at the head of a great force. A battle ensued. Ragnar and his men fought like tigers. They knew that if they were defeated there was no hope of their being able to escape, for their enemies would certainly never allow them time to embark again, even if they were to succeed in making their way back to their vessels. They made, however, the most desperate

attempts to get to the shore again when they found that the battle was going against them. Three times they broke through the lines of their opposers, and three times the enemy closed up again between them and the sea, so as to cut off their retreat. At length the whole band were cut to pieces, except Lodbrog himself and a few others, who were taken prisoners.

How was Lodbrog said to have been punished?

It is said that Ella, in his exasperation and rage against Lodbrog for coming thus without any provocation to invade his territories, caused a den to be filled with vipers and other poisonous reptiles, and then shut Lodbrog up in it with them. The animals instantly killed him with their venomous bites and stings.

This was the end of the first invasion of England by the Danes.

What was probably Ella's design in inflicting this horrid punishment on Lodbrog?

Probably Ella thought that, by putting Lodbrog to this horrid death, he should strike terror into the Danes, and prevent any others from repeating the attempt to invade his dominions. But if he did reason in this way he was in error. A just and reasonable punishment tends, it is true, to deter other men from repeating a crime, but a cruel and an excessive one only awakens their anger, and inflames them with a spirit of resentment and revenge.

What was, in reality, the effect produced by this cruelty? Describe the new enterprise undertaken by the Danes.

Such, at any rate, was the effect that was produced in this instance. When the other Danes heard how barbarously their fellow-countryman had been treated, they at once resolved to avenge his death. The sons and the relatives of Ragnar Lodbrog took the lead in this enterprise. They proceeded very carefully and deliberately in forming their plans. They communicated their designs to a great many different chieftains, and invited them to join in the enterprise. In this way they formed a great confederation. There were eight kings and twenty earls, as they were called, in

ARMS AND COSTUME OF THE DANES.

the alliance. The commanders of the expedition were two celebrated kings, named Guthrum and Hubba. Hubba was one of Ragnar Lodbrog's sons.

What occurred on the landing of the expedition?

When all was ready, the expedition set sail for England. They

landed without encountering any resistance. It is probable that the Saxons did not know where they intended to land. The Danes, after leaving their ships, advanced a little way into the interior of the country, and then encamped. Here they quietly established themselves as if they were at home, and began to make preparations for spending the winter. It was late in the fall when they landed.

What were the usual habits of life of these men?

Indeed, they *were* at home, as much so, at least, as men living the lives of pirates and marauders, as they did, could be. They seem to have had no regular abodes on land, but spent the time in summer in cruising about on the sea in quest of plunder, and in winter in some encampment which they made on any accessible shore, where they could most readily find shelter and fuel.

Did the Saxons attempt to drive out the invaders during that winter?

The Saxons, or the English as they may now properly be called, did not disturb the invaders all that winter. They hoped, perhaps, that they had only come to encamp on the ground during the cold season, and that they would go away in the spring.

What occurred in the spring?

Instead of this, however, as soon as the spring opened, they sent for re-enforcements. More sea-kings came, bringing with them additional troops. The army was marshaled, and soon began to move toward the interior. They directed their course toward Northumbria. Their object was to take vengeance on Ella for what they considered his brutal murder of Ragnar Lodbrog. Ella, who had been by some means aware of the danger for some time, now, when he found his enemies actually advancing, gathered all his forces together, and came to meet them.

What was the condition in which Ella now found himself placed? What was the result of the battle fought?

He found, however, that it was in vain to attempt to oppose

their progress. They were animated with such a spirit of resentment and anger against him, that they fought with the utmost fury in every battle, and almost always conquered. In this way they advanced into Ella's dominions, ravaging the country, and bearing down all before them. At last a great pitched battle was fought. The English were defeated, and Ella himself was taken prisoner. The Danes, as soon as they got the wretched king into their hands, put him to death with the most horrid tortures. They then made themselves masters of the whole of Northumbria.

How were these proceedings regarded by the other kingdoms of the Heptarchy?

By this time the other kingdoms of the Heptarchy began to be alarmed. The several kingdoms were in some degree separate from each other, though they had been some time before nominally united.

Who was Ethelred, and what expectations did he form?

The king who was considered the supreme ruler over all of them at this time was Ethelred. Ethelred hoped that when the Danes had accomplished what he supposed had been their chief design in coming to England, namely, to wreak their vengeance on Ella for the murder of Ragnar Lodbrog, they would go back to their ships and leave the island altogether.

What was the actual result?

But this was far from their design. When they found how easily they succeeded in conquering the Saxons in Northumbria, they concluded to go on and take possession of other parts of the island. Guthrum and Hubba sent to the Baltic Sea for more troops, and there were plenty of sea-kings all along the coasts of Norway and Denmark that were ready to accept the invitation as soon as they received it, and thus, in a short time, the forces under Guthrum and Hubba's command were greatly increased.

Describe the subsequent career of the Danes in Britain.

With this large force, which was continually growing larger by

fresh arrivals, the Danes commenced a career of conquest in England which continued for several years, and which ended in their gaining almost complete possession of the island. The parts of the country which submitted to them they colonized and settled with their own men, ruling the Saxons, and reducing them to complete subjection. Those that resisted they ravaged with fire and sword. The king, Ethelred, made every exertion in his power to resist them, but all was in vain.

How did the Danes deal with the convents and monasteries?

The Danes took particular pleasure, while they were thus overrunning the Saxon territories, in attacking monasteries and abbeys wherever they found them, on account of the treasures which they often contained. These monasteries were the residences of monks and nuns, who spent their lives in retirement, pursuing studies of various kinds, instructing youth, and performing the exercises of devotion. These establishments were all held sacred by the Saxons themselves, and in the wars which the different kingdoms waged with each other they were not disturbed. But the Danes, being pagans, paid no regard to any sacredness either of places or things, and they accordingly plundered the convents and monasteries in the most unscrupulous and merciless manner. This led to many scenes of great sorrow and suffering.

Describe the situation and condition of the Abbey of Crowland.

One of the most remarkable of these cases was that of the Abbey of Crowland. This establishment was situated in the eastern part of England, near the shore of a great shallow bay, which you will find laid down on the map of England under the name of the Wash. This Abbey of Crowland was a large and wealthy establishment. It possessed a great deal of land, and the tenants who occupied and tilled it were in some degree under the monks' control.

What was it that aroused the hostility of the Danes against the abbey?

At one time the monks sent two hundred and fifty men to the

army, to assist in fighting against the Danes. This enraged the Danes, and so they determined that when they reached that part of the country they would plunder and destroy the abbey.

Describe the effects produced at the abbey by the approach of the Danes.

When the monks heard that they were coming, they were in great terror and dismay. They determined to remove all their treasures; so they packed them in boats as fast as they could, and sent them down the river, and there buried them in the ground, in a solitary place in the woods where an old hermit lived. They took with them, too, all the strong men that belonged to the monastery, and left only the old and infirm behind.

How were the Danes received by the monks that were left at the abbey?

These old men clothed themselves in their priestly robes, and went into the chapel, and employed themselves there in singing hymns and saying prayers, thinking that if the Danes found them thus engaged, they would spare their lives out of regard to their age and their sacred character. But they were greatly mistaken.

What was the fate of the priests?

The ferocious Danes, full of resentment and anger, broke into the monastery, and then, rushing into the chapel, they began slaughtering the venerable priests, in the midst of their devotions, without any mercy.

Was any person saved?

Indeed, of all the people that were found in the monasteries when the Danes arrived, only one was saved, and he was a small boy. His name was Turgar.

How was he saved?

This boy was saved by a sort of stratagem. One of the Danish chiefs, named Sidroc, saw him standing there in great terror and distress, and took pity on him. He went to him, and gave him a Danish garment. "Put that on," said he, "and follow me. Keep

as close by my side as you can." The boy did so, and the Danish soldiers supposed that he was a Dane. Thus he escaped with his life.

What was the sequel of Turgar's story?

After this, Turgar followed Sidroc and the Danes for some days, but at length he succeeded in making his escape from them. He watched his opportunity when they were crossing a river at a ford with some wagons loaded with treasures. One of the wagons became set, the wheels sinking in the sand. While Sidroc and his men were busy with the wagon, Turgar ran off into the woods, and finally got back to the monastery, where he found the monks at work in sadness and sorrow repairing the ruins.

What was the final result of the invasion of the Danes?

The Danes went on in this way, conquering one province after another of the kingdom, and seizing all the treasures which they could find. At last, Ethelred, the king of the country, was killed, and the Saxon power seemed to be entirely overthrown.

What distinguished prince now succeeded to the throne?

The rightful heir of Ethelred was his brother Alfred, a prince who, though his prospects, at the commencement of his reign, were so exceedingly dark and gloomy, subsequently triumphed over all his foes, and acquired the highest renown. He is known in history as Alfred the Great.

CHAPTER V.

KING ALFRED THE GREAT.

At what age had Alfred learned to read?

The engraving on the following page represents young Alfred, when he was a boy about twelve years old, leaning upon his mother's lap, and showing her that he knew how to read, having studied and learned of his own accord.

ALFRED READING TO HIS STEPMOTHER.

Give an account of Alfred's mother, and of his stepmother.

Alfred's own mother was the queen Osburgha, the wife of the Saxon king Ethelwolf, who reigned before the time of the incursions of the Danes. She had four children, all sons. Alfred was

the youngest. Osburgha died not very long after Alfred was born. Afterward, when Alfred was ten or twelve years old, his father married a young French princess named Judith, and she, of course, was Alfred's stepmother. She was very kind to the children, as stepmothers usually, though not always, are, notwithstanding what is often said to the contrary.

What sort of books were used in those days?

There were no printed books in those days, but the monks and scholars in the monasteries used to write books with the pen. These books were written in very beautiful characters, with small pictures here and there on the pages, in rich and elegant coloring. These little paintings were called illuminations.

How did it happen that Alfred was not taught to read before he was twelve years old?

Alfred's mother possessed one of these books. She had brought it from France. She had been taught to read there, though this was unusual, for, books being very scarce in those days, very few persons except clerks and professed scholars were ever taught to read. Alfred and his brothers, though they were royal princes, and though great pains had been taken with their education in every other point, had never been taught their letters.

How did he finally become interested in learning to read?

Judith showed the four boys her book, and they were all extremely pleased with it. They could not understand the reading, it is true, but they admired the beauty of the characters, and they were especially delighted with the illuminations. Judith told them that she was glad to see that they were pleased with the book, and she said that she would give it to that one of them who would first learn to read it.

How did he learn?

Alfred immediately resolved to learn. He found some clerk or scholar in the palace who was willing to teach him, and in due time he came to his mother and let her see that he could read the

book. She was much pleased to find how well he had learned, and she gave him the book according to her promise.

What progress in study did he subsequently make?

Alfred afterward read and studied a great deal, so that he became, in the end, one of the greatest scholars, as well as one of the most distinguished sovereigns of his time.

How was it that Alfred was Ethelred's successor?

Ethelred, the king who governed England at the time that the Danes commenced their invasions, was Alfred's eldest brother. He had no children, and, of course, when he died, Alfred was his heir, his other brothers having died before him. Ethelred was killed in battle fighting with the Danes. Alfred was with him in the battle, and was fighting by his side when he received his mortal wound. Alfred was then about twenty-three years old.

What was his first duty, and how did he perform it?

The first thing that Alfred had to attend to was the burial of his brother. Besides the obvious propriety of performing the ceremony in a respectful manner, there was an additional duty in this case, that of placing the body in some safe place, where the savage and ferocious Danes could not find it. So he took it away to a remote and solitary place, and their buried it in a very deep grave.

Describe the condition in which he found the Saxon army when he returned to the field.

When he returned to the field, he endeavored to gather the Saxon army together again; but they were so scattered, discouraged, and enfeebled that nothing could be done. They had lost their king. Alfred, the rightful successor, had not been proved. He was a very young man, and no one knew how much or what he could do. It was not reasonable to suppose that he could rescue the country from the dreadful danger in which it had become involved. In a word, the people seemed to be entirely disheartened and discouraged.

What measure did he then adopt in order to protect his own kingdom?

Accordingly, after getting together what force he could, he entered into negotiations with Hubba, who was then the leader of the Danes in that part of the island. Alfred's particular kingdom was Wessex. It lay in the western part. So he agreed with Hubba that if he, Hubba, would leave him in peace in that portion of the island, he, Alfred, would not molest Hubba in any other portions. Hubba, after making this compact, left Alfred in peace, and went away to plunder and ravage the other divisions of the general territory.

How did this plan succeed?

Alfred gained very little good by this measure. In the first place, all the other Saxon princes and chieftains blamed him very much for making a separate peace, for his own particular family domain, while he left the country at large to the mercy of the enemy. What Alfred had to say in reply to this accusation I do not know.

Give an account of the expedition of Halfden.

Then, besides, the peace for himself, that he secured by his treaty, was not substantial or durable, for before long a new party of Danes arrived on his coasts. They were under the command of a prince named Halfden. Halfden landed on the southern coast, and his first exploit was to take possession of one of Alfred's best castles there for his head-quarters, and from this castle he began to make excursions into the surrounding country, plundering and murdering wherever he came.

How did Alfred attempt to defend his dominions from Halfden?

Alfred immediately sent to expostulate with him, saying that he had made a treaty with Hubba by which his particular part of the island was to be held sacred, and not to be invaded by the Danes any more. To this Halfden replied that he had nothing to

do with Hubba or with Hubba's treaty. He was an independent chieftain, acting for himself, and was not to be bound by any treaties but his own.

Relate what took place in respect to the squadron of horse.

So the war went on; and in a short time after this, Halfden and his band greatly strengthened themselves by seizing a squadron of horse which belonged to Alfred's army. Of course, they could not bring horses over with them very well in their vessels, and thus far they had been obliged to fight with foot-soldiers alone. But now they contrived to capture a squadron of horse, and after dismounting and driving off the riders, they took the horses themselves, and thenceforward were much more formidable than they had been before.

How long did Alfred's adverse fortune continue?

Things went on in this way for two or three years, during all which time the affairs of Alfred, and of all the Saxons, were going from bad to worse, until at last the people all became completely discouraged.

Describe Alfred's attempt to build a fleet.

There was one measure, however, which Alfred adopted during this period, which in the end led to great results. It was an attempt that he made to build a fleet. He called together a number of the principal Saxon chieftains, and represented to them that they ought to have a fleet, so as to attack the Danes on the sea before they reached the island, instead of waiting till they had landed, and then attempt to expel them again. The chiefs all agreed to this proposal, and they immediately took measures, under Alfred's directions, to build the fleet. They had many difficulties to encounter in accomplishing this purpose, and especially in procuring sailors to man the ships; but at last they succeeded, and the fleet was ready for sea.

What occurred at the time of the first sailing of the fleet?

When the day appointed for its sailing came, immense numbers

of people assembled on the shores to witness the spectacle. This was the first English fleet, and it is greatly celebrated in history as the origin of that vast and unrivaled naval power that has since made itself the wonder and admiration of the world.

What was the first exploit that the fleet performed?

The fleet was quite successful at first. It encountered a squadron of Danish ships in the channel and defeated them. But, after all, it could guard only a small part of the coast, and so, in spite of all that it could do, the Danes still continued to make descents on the portions of the coast that were unprotected.

What was, after this, the condition of Alfred's affairs in his kingdom?

At length, about seven or eight years after Alfred's accession to the throne, a greater company than ever came over, and, after making some marauding excursions in other parts of the island, they came at length directly into Alfred's dominions. His resources were now so wellnigh exhausted that he had no means of resisting them. The little that remained to him of an army soon dispersed, leaving Alfred with only a few attendants and friends. These, one after another, forsook him too, and then he was left entirely alone, a houseless, homeless fugitive. His career as a monarch seemed to be at an end. Even his wife was not with him. He had concealed her previously in the safest retreat that he could find, so that he seemed now to be utterly friendless and alone.

Relate his adventures in finding a place of shelter.

After wandering about for some time in woods and solitudes, he at length came to a very secluded place, in the western part of England, where a cowherd lived. The place was a sort of island in the midst of a region of marshes and stagnant water. Alfred pushed his way through the thickets until he came to the cowherd's hut. He told the cowherd secretly that he was a Saxon chieftain that had been defeated by the Danes, and asked the man to let him stay for a while in his hut. The cowherd consented, and pre-

tended to employ him as a hired man, in order that his wife might not know who the stranger was.

Relate the incident of Alfred's being set to watch the cakes.

It was while Alfred was at this cowherd's house that the famous incident occurred of his letting the cakes burn. The cowherd's wife, it seems, one evening, when he came home from his work, asked him to watch some cakes that she was baking at the fire while she was busy elsewhere. "Watch them," said she, "and don't let them burn. Call me when they are done." So she went away, leaving Alfred by the fire.

ALFRED LETTING THE CAKES BURN.

What was the sequel of the story?

But Alfred, who was busy making a bow, forgot the cakes, and when the woman came she found them burned black. She was in a great rage. She told him that he was always ready enough to eat the cakes, but that he was too idle and good for nothing to

do any thing in helping to bake them. The good woman little knew that it was a king that she was scolding.

What plans and arrangements did Alfred make during his seclusion?

Alfred remained in this place of seclusion for some time, but at length he gradually contrived to get into communication with some of the other chieftains, and they repaired to the place and held consultations together there. They matured their plans, and then took measures for gathering an army again. They concerted their schemes so secretly that the Danes knew nothing of them until they had quite a force collected and were ready to take the field.

What was the first operation which the new army undertook?

As soon as their plans were matured they marched immediately to attack the army of the Danes which was nearest to them. It was a considerable body of troops, under the command of Hubba. Alfred's army came to the place secretly in the night, intending to surprise the Danes in their camp.

Describe the banner of the raven.

The Danes possessed a banner which they regarded with superstitious veneration. It had a raven embroidered upon it. Hubba's sisters had made the banner for him, and embroidered the raven, and the soldiers believed that it possessed supernatural powers. They thought that it would flutter its wings, when they were going into battle, if they were destined to gain the victory. On the other hand, if they were going to lose the battle, the raven's wings would be lifeless and still. The truth was, that as the wind waved and fluttered the banner when the soldiers were marching with it into the field, it was impossible for them to tell whether the wings made any motion of their own or not, and so they might imagine it either way.

Give an account of the battle.

Alfred and his army came upon the Danish camp in the morning just before daybreak, when all except the sentinels were asleep.

They made so sudden and furious an onset upon them that the camp was thrown into the utmost confusion. The men were all immediately put to flight. Hubba, the commander, was killed in his tent, and the sacred banner was taken.

What were the immediate effects of this victory?

The news of this victory spread like wildfire all over England. It aroused the Saxons every where, and filled them with encouragement and hope. On the other hand, it greatly depressed and dispirited the Danes. They were especially distressed at the loss of the sacred raven. They considered this a very dark omen for them.

Describe the preparations made for a new encounter.

The Danes gathered their forces and prepared for a general battle. Guthrum was the commander of these forces. The Saxons rose in arms too, in all parts of the kingdom, and flocked to Alfred's standard. After a time the two concentrated armies came together, and the great final contest ensued.

What was the result of the battle?

The Danes were defeated. Guthrum fled, and sought shelter in a castle. Alfred pursued him, and shut him up closely in it. After a time the two chieftains entered into negotiations for peace, and peace was made.

What were the conditions of peace?

Alfred granted to the Danes the right to remain in England, if they would live there in quietness as peaceful men; and Guthrum, on the other hand, acknowledged Alfred's sovereignty as monarch of England. Guthrum agreed, too, that he and his followers would become Christians. This was a part of the treaty, and in the ratification of it Guthrum and his fellow-chieftains were publicly baptized with the greatest ceremony and parade.

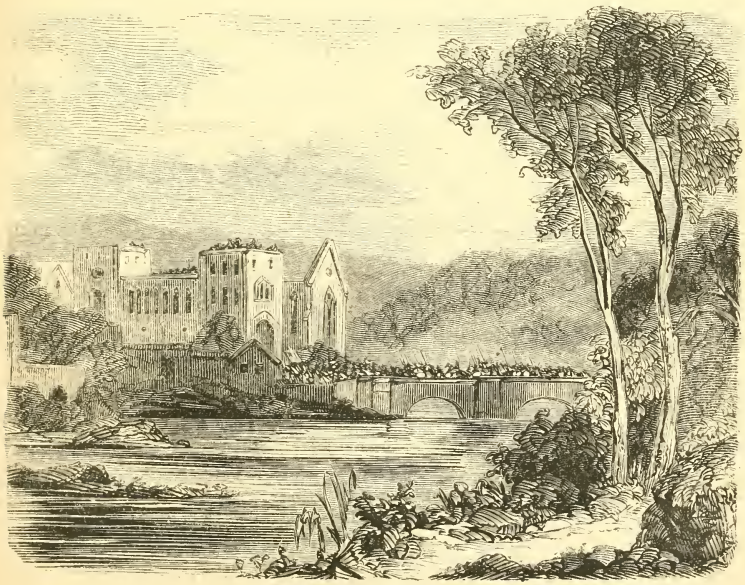
Describe the sequel of Alfred's reign.

After this, Alfred reigned over England long and very gloriously. He devoted himself to the good of his subjects, and he founded

many of the institutions and made many of the laws to which the subsequent power and greatness of the British empire are owing. He had a great many difficulties to contend with, but by his diligence, his patience, and his honest fidelity he triumphed over them all, and at length came to be universally beloved and venerated by his people, Saxons, Danes, and all.

Who was Hastings, and what exploit did he perform?

Alfred was often harassed and troubled by the arrival of new parties of invaders from the northern seas. There was one of these marauders, named Hastings, who came with a fleet of two hundred and fifty vessels, and landed on the banks of the Thames. He gave Alfred a great deal of trouble. At one time, when hard pressed, he took possession of a church, with all his horde, and fortified himself there as if it had been a castle.



HASTINGS IN THE CHURCH.

What was the final result of the expedition of Hastings?

After a time, however, Alfred succeeded in gaining the victory over Hastings, and in driving him away.

When at last Alfred found that his end was approaching, what did he do?

Alfred suffered a great deal from sickness all his life, and at length, when he was about fifty-two years of age, he found that his end was approaching. He called his son to his bedside, in order to make known to him his dying injunctions.

Repeat what he said to his son.

"Thou, my dear son, sit thee now beside me, and I will deliver thee true instructions. I feel that my hour is coming. My strength is gone; my countenance is wasted and pale. My days are almost ended. We must now part. I go to another world, and thou art to be left alone in the possession of all that I have thus far held. I pray thee, my dear child, to be a father to thy people. Be the children's father and the widow's friend. Comfort the poor, protect and shelter the weak, and, with all thy might, right that which is wrong. And, my son, govern *thyself* by *law*. Then shall the Lord love thee, and God himself shall be thy reward. Call thou upon him to advise thee in all thy need, and he shall help thee to compass all thy desires."

Who was Alfred's successor?

So Alfred died, and his kingdom passed peacefully and quickly into the hands of his son.

CHAPTER VI.

THE NORMAN CONQUEST.

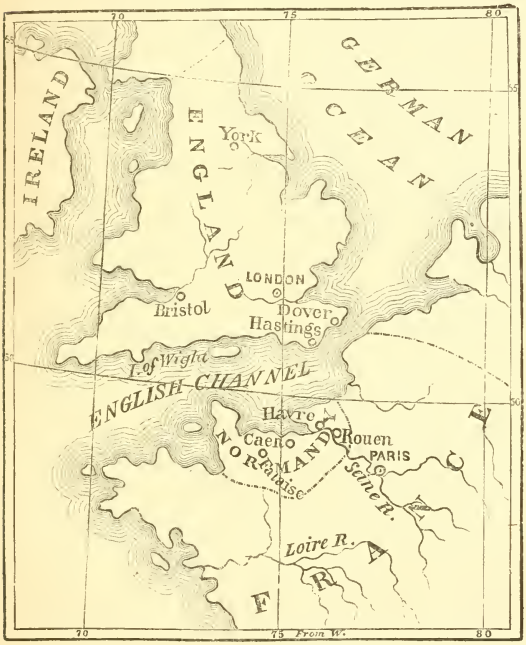
When and by whom was the Norman conquest effected?

About one hundred and fifty years after the death of Alfred, a great event occurred in English history called the Norman Con-

quest. This conquest was effected by a great personage known as William the Conqueror. He was originally a Duke of Normandy.

State what you can in respect to the situation and the early history of Normandy.

Normandy was a very fertile and beautiful part of France, lying along the shores of the English Channel. You will see the situation of it by reference to the adjoining map. It was called by the name of Normandy because it was settled by the Northmen—the identical class of men that had made so much trouble in England under the name of Danes. The original leader of the tribe that settled in Normandy was a noted warrior called Rollo. He landed at first in England, but was driven off from that island by the Saxons, and then he went southward and landed in France. Other companies of Northmen afterward joined them, and they made a permanent settlement in France on the banks of the Seine. They called their country Normandy. The Normans were governed by a line of sovereigns called dukes. William the Conqueror was one of these dukes. He was somewhere about the



SITUATION OF NORMANDY.

seventh in the line. The circumstances which led him to undertake the enterprise of invading England were very peculiar.

How many royal families claimed the English throne at this time, and what difficulty arose from this source?

Some time after the death of Alfred, the contests between the royal family of the Danes and that of the Saxons broke out anew, and for several successive reigns the affairs of the kingdom were quite unsettled, sometimes one dynasty and sometimes the other gaining the ascendency. The two families were connected together by intermarriages, and they were also connected in the same manner with the dukes of Normandy, so that, in process of time, the hereditary claims and rights of the three houses became so interwoven together, that in some instances, when a monarch happened to die without leaving any children to inherit his crown directly, it was, in truth, difficult to tell who the rightful heir was.

What two persons claimed the throne on the death of King Edward the Confessor?

A great difficulty occurred at the death of a certain king of the Anglo-Saxon line known in history as Edward the Confessor. He died without issue. There was a relative of his in England, named Harold, who claimed to be the true heir to the crown. But William, the Duke of Normandy, claimed that he was the heir.

What was the special ground of William's claim?

William alleged that Edward had expressly appointed him to be his successor, and that once, when Harold was on a visit to his dominions, some time before King Edward's death, he had taken a solemn oath never to claim the crown for himself, but to acknowledge William's right to the succession whenever Edward should die.

What were the circumstances under which Harold took the oath, and was he probably sincere in it?

Harold was undoubtedly insincere in taking this oath, and he probably never had any intention of keeping it. He considered

himself as not free when he took it, and the rule was in those days, as indeed it is now, that promises extorted by violence are not binding. The oath which Harold took was not, however, exactly extorted by violence, at least not by any open violence. Harold had been shipwrecked on the coast of France, and had been taken captive by the prince of the country in whose dominions he had been thrown. William, when he heard of this, sent and ransomed Harold, and brought him to Normandy. It was while he was William's guest in Normandy on this occasion that Harold took his oath.

How was it that Harold could maintain that his oath was extorted by violence?

There was no actual violence used on the part of William to extort the oath from Harold. On the contrary, William treated his guest with the greatest outward kindness and consideration. But then Harold knew very well that, notwithstanding all these external appearances, he was really, to all intents and purposes, a prisoner, and that his only hope of being allowed to return to England at all would be in his ready compliance with all that William might demand of him. So he took the oath with every appearance of honesty, but with a secret determination to pay no regard to it whatever when the time for action should come. William, however, was satisfied, and so, after a time, he dismissed his guest in peace, and Harold returned to England.

What measures did Harold adopt on his return to England?

Harold immediately began to form his plans for securing the succession to himself as soon as Edward should die, by strengthening his connections with the leading nobles of the land, and forming a party to espouse his cause. William heard of these doings, and so was satisfied that Harold did not intend to keep his oath. There was nothing to be done, however, until Edward should die, for neither of them claimed any right to the throne during Edward's lifetime.

Relate the circumstances that attended William's receiving the news of Edward's death.

The news of Edward's death came to William suddenly one day while he was in his park trying a new bow and arrow that had been made for him. A horseman came riding into the ring,

THE NEWS OF EDWARD'S DEATH.

and, advancing rapidly to William's side, he communicated the tidings to him in a whisper. William was greatly agitated. He dropped his arrow upon the ground, and gave the bow to an attendant. He then stood for a moment lost in thought, tying and untying the cord of his cloak all the time, in his abstraction. Presently he began to move slowly away. His attendants followed him, wondering what the news was which had produced so great an effect upon him.

What was the effect that the news produced upon him?

William was for a time greatly at a loss to know what to do.

He had heard that Harold had quietly succeeded to the throne of England, and that the whole country had acquiesced. Of course, for him to raise an army, cross the Channel, and attempt to seize the kingdom by force would be a very hazardous undertaking.

What was Fitz Osborn's counsel?

In his perplexity, one of his counselors, named Fitz Osborn, a great officer of state, approached him, saying, "This difficulty, sire, can be very easily remedied. You have the right to the English throne, and you have soldiers enough to enforce your right. Undertake the enterprise without fear. You will be sure to succeed."

What was William's decision?

William finally resolved to follow this counsel. He first, however, sent an embassage to Harold, calling upon him to surrender the English crown according to the oath he had taken. This did no good; and William accordingly resolved on making war.

What were the proposals that he made to his nobles?

He summoned around him the chief nobles of Normandy, and asked them how many were disposed to accompany him on the enterprise, and how many ships and men they could severally furnish. He promised them that if he was successful in gaining his kingdom, he would reward them liberally with lands and titles of nobility, and would enrich them also with the treasures which he expected to receive by confiscating the property of the English nobles who should oppose him.

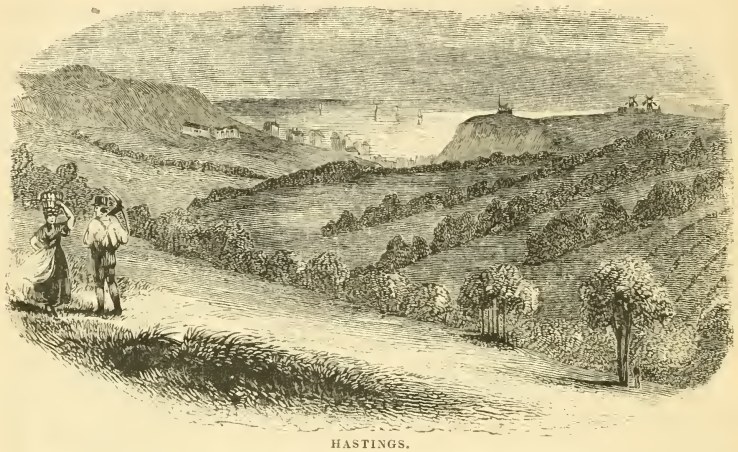
How were these proposals received?

The Norman chieftains embraced the scheme very eagerly. They put down the number of ships and men that they could respectively furnish, and William found, when these were enregistered, that he should have an armament as large as he desired.

Describe the sailing of the expedition and its passage across the Channel.

The expedition was appointed to rendezvous at the mouth of a small river on the coast of France. In due time it set sail. The

fleet was very large. It contained sixty thousand men. The troops were all landed in safety on the English coast, near the Straits of Dover. The army encamped not far from the shore, on elevated ground near the town of Hastings, which is a small town lying on the coast, at the foot of a valley opening toward the sea.



HASTINGS.

What was the effect produced in England by the landing of the expedition?

The whole country was now in a state of great alarm. Scouts and couriers from the army were galloping about in all directions, reconnoitring the ground. The inhabitants of the neighboring villages were flying from their dwellings, carrying with them every thing that they could move.

What were the measures adopted by Harold?

King Harold advanced from the north with a great army to meet the invaders. He sent round a fleet of seven hundred ships too, by sea, to intercept the retreat of the Normans. He was sure, he thought, of conquering them in the battle that was to ensue, and, in order to make the most of his victory, he wished to cut off their retreat. He came with his army to the neighborhood of

Hastings, and there encamped at no great distance from the enemy. Both sides were preparing for battle.

Describe the attempts that were made to settle the dispute without a battle.

Before the actual conflict commenced, some time was spent in fruitless negotiations. Proposals were made on both sides, but the parties could not come to any terms. Accordingly, on the morning of the second day, they drew out their lines in order of battle, and prepared for the fight.

Describe the ceremony with which the battle commenced.

A powerful Norman knight rode out first from the lines, bidding the English defiance, and claiming the right of striking the first blow. He came out singing a ballad, and swinging and flourishing his sword, and throwing it up into the air from time to time, catching it in his hand with great dexterity when it came down. The whole line of soldiers behind him joined in the chorus of the song that he sang.

What became of the Norman knight?

He advanced to the English lines and ran one soldier through the body. A second he felled to the ground. In attacking a third, however, he was mortally wounded himself. The other soldiers of the two armies had in the mean time rushed forward, and the battle now became general. Both sides fought with the utmost fury.

Describe the result of the battle.

The end of it was, that the English army was routed and driven from the field. The battle, however, lasted all day long. When night came, the field was covered with the bodies of the dead and dying, and the surrounding country was filled with flying bands of the English soldiers, now urging their way onward by the light of the moon, through fields and thickets, and now turning back to fight their pursuers. In the morning, William found that he had gained a great victory, and lost one quarter of his men.

What was the result of the battle in respect to Harold and to William?

Harold was killed. An arrow pierced his eye and entered his brain. His party, however, did not yet surrender, and the wars between William and the English line were protracted for seven long years, at the end of which time the country was entirely subdued, and William found himself the undisputed monarch of England. It is in consequence of his having obtained the crown in this way that he is styled in history William the Conqueror.

Describe the arrangements that William made in respect to the kingdom.

In order to secure the crown more effectually to himself and his posterity, William now parceled out the kingdom among his great lords and generals, and conferred upon them all the great offices of state. He introduced the Norman language, a species of French, into the court, and into all the public proceedings of the government.

What disposition did William make of the property of the English nobles?

He confiscated the property of the former English nobles, and enriched his own nobles with it, and so thoroughly did he do this work, that the families that he thus founded, and their descendants, constitute the oldest and most highly honored portion of the great English aristocracy that govern England so entirely at the present day.

How do the English people now regard the descendants of the Normans?

The English people have long since ceased to resist or even to dislike their conquerors; on the contrary, they look up to them with the utmost pride and veneration. Nothing gives a family a greater weight in their estimation, or constitutes a higher claim to their regard, than to say that their ancestors came in with the Conqueror.

How would it probably have been in such a case with Americans?

In America the feeling would be exactly the reverse. The people of this country could not tolerate for a day the idea of being governed by a class who, however long ago, came into the country as foreigners and conquered it, and now hold it as a conquest. They might be compelled by superior force to submit, but they would be exceedingly restive under such a rule, and would be greatly ashamed of their subjection, not proud of it.

What was the character of William's administration?

William governed the realm of England very wisely—that is, he was very adroit and sagacious in the measures which he adopted for consolidating his power, and securing the government of the country wholly, or almost wholly, to his friends and adherents.

Narrate the circumstances of William's quarrel with Philip.

The circumstances of William's death were very remarkable. Philip, the King of France, who was in some sense his sovereign as Duke of Normandy, was never friendly to him, especially after he became King of England, and in various ways gave him a great deal of trouble. Toward the latter part of his life William became very corpulent, and at one time when he was in Normandy —for he went over several times to his old home—he was under some medical treatment for this difficulty which confined him to his bed. While he was in this situation, Philip spoke of him in a very contemptuous and insulting manner, by asking some one from Normandy, who came to his court, if the old woman was still in the straw. When William heard of this he was dreadfully enraged, and declared that, as soon as he got out again, he would come and kindle up such fires in Philip's dominions as should make his realms too hot to hold him.

What was the end of this quarrel?

Accordingly, when he was released from his confinement, he made war upon Philip, and in the course of it, when riding through

a town that they were storming, his horse stepped on some burning embers, and gave so sudden a start, that William, in the ef-

DEATH OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

fort to save himself, broke a blood-vessel, or inflicted upon himself some other internal injury, and so he died.

CHAPTER VII.

RICHARD THE CRUSADER.

What was the general condition of the country for the next hundred years after the death of William?

William the Conqueror died A.D. 1087. After his death the kingdom of England was governed by a line of sovereigns, the successors of William, for about a hundred years, during which time a great many remarkable events occurred, which can not be

here particularly related. Wars were continually breaking out between the different princes of this line; for often, when one king died, there were several of his relatives—brothers, cousins, or sons—that rose to claim the throne; and, in these cases, the several claimants would usually raise armies and fight for the succession.

What were the feelings which subsisted between the people of the country and their conquerors during this period?

The people hated their conquerors, and looked upon them as foreign invaders. They were, indeed, in all respects foreigners. Most of the monarchs of the time were born in France, and they lived most of the time in France, and they regarded their dominions on the Continent as the most important part of their realm. England was considered simply in the light of a conquered province.

In what difficulties were the successors of William involved in respect to their possessions in Normandy?

Before long the different branches of the family became involved in various quarrels in respect to their possessions in Normandy and other parts of France, for they still retained these possessions after acceding to the throne of England. In the course of these wars and commotions, a great many remarkable and curious incidents occurred, which it is very entertaining to read in the different histories of England.

Relate the circumstances attending the death of William Rufus?

One of the most striking of these occurrences was the death of one of the kings named William Rufus. He was hunting in a great forest which William the Conqueror had formed by laying waste a large tract of ground and planting trees all over it. This forest was many miles in extent. William Rufus was hunting in it one day, and, being in a remote part of the wood, alone with one of his officers named Tyrrel, a hart came by, and Tyrrel attempting to shoot it, his arrow glanced against a tree and struck the king in the side, and killed him instantly. Tyrrel was so terrified at

DEATH OF WILLIAM RUFUS.

what he had done that he galloped off at once out of the wood, and made all haste across the country to the sea-shore, and there embarked for Normandy.

How did King Richard the First distinguish himself?

There were various other extraordinary occurrences that took place during this period of English History, but we must pass on to the time of Richard the Crusader. He is known also in history as Richard I. There were two other Richards after him. Richard I., as his surname the Crusader imports, distinguished himself greatly by his exploits and adventures in the Crusades.

What were the Crusades, and how did they originate?

The Crusades were expeditions that the princes and nobles of England and France made to conquer Jerusalem and the Holy Land

from the Turks. Even as early as the time of Alfred, it began to be the custom of people to make pilgrimages to Jerusalem, to visit the places there that were consecrated in their view by being the scenes of the great events of our Savior's history. They thought there was a great merit in doing this, and that, however guilty they might have been in their lives, this pilgrimage would atone for their sins, and make them fit for heaven. Now Jerusalem, at this time, was in the hands of the Turks, and they, feeling no veneration for these sacred places, and no love for the Christians who came to see them, were accustomed to insult the pilgrims, and maltreat them in various ways. The princes and nobles of Europe accordingly conceived the idea of raising an army of volunteers, and, marching to Palestine, to take the country away from the Turks altogether. They formed several expeditions of this kind, which are called the Crusades. The people who went were called Crusaders.*

What was Richard's character?

This Richard the Crusader received the surname, while he lived, of Cœur de Lion, which means Lion Heart. The name was given to him on account of his headlong and reckless bravery. But his heart, if it was like that of a lion, was a very bad heart. He was an overbearing, cruel, and treacherous man, an undutiful son, a faithless friend, and a tyrannical monarch. He was disobedient and rebellious toward his father while his father lived, and by his undutiful conduct did a great deal to bring him in sorrow to the grave. But then, as soon as his father was dead, he turned against all those who had been joined with him in his treasonable and rebellious practices, and put them to death, for fear that they might now join some one else in plotting against him.

What did Richard's brother John think of his brother's going on a crusade?

Soon after he succeeded to the throne, he joined with Philip of

* The word comes from a word meaning the cross. The cross was the emblem that the Crusaders carried on their banners.

France to go on a crusade. He had a brother named John. John was very glad when he heard of this plan. He hoped that Richard would be killed while he was gone, and then he would inherit the throne in his place.

Describe the preparations and arrangements which Richard and Philip made for the expedition, and for raising money.

Richard and Philip raised an immense army for their crusade. It consisted, it was said, of a hundred thousand men. In order to raise money for the expenses of the expedition, Richard sold the public lands of the kingdom, and even the castles and some of the towns. He put up the public offices, too, for sale to the highest bidder, and thus sacrificed the interests of his kingdom in the most reckless manner, in order to raise money just for the purpose of gratifying his own love of fighting and glory. When some one of his counselors remonstrated with him for the extent to which he was carrying these measures, he said he did not care. He would sell London itself, if he could find any body to buy it.

Give an account of the progress of the expedition.

In due time Richard's army was ready, and was sent across the Channel to Normandy. Thence, marching through France, it was joined by the divisions of the French army, and at length the whole force arrived at Lyons. Here Richard's troops were taken down the river to Marseilles, and there embarked on board a fleet of ships. The ships sailed in the first instance for Sicily, which is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about half way to the Holy Land. Philip, who had no ships to convey his troops in, was to march round by land along the coast, and meet Richard in Sicily at an appointed time.

What were the circumstances that led the army to rendezvous in Sicily?

One reason why the army were to rendezvous in Sicily on their way to the Holy Land was because Richard had a sister there. Her name was Joan. She had been married to the King of Sicily,

but her husband had died, and, as she had no children, the nobles had placed one of their number, named Tancred, on the throne. Tancred had cast Joan into prison, and taken possession of her property, which consisted of castles, and towns, and large landed estates. Richard stopped at Sicily ostensibly to avenge his sister's wrongs, but really to have the pleasure of showing his power by lording it over the country, and exacting money from Tancred to fill his treasures. He remained here some time, and accomplished all his ends, acting in a high-handed and tyrannical manner.

What ladies accompanied the expedition? What important event took place at Sicily in connection with the Lady Berangaria?

Richard's mother had come out in one of the ships of his squadron, together with a lady called the Lady Berangaria, whom Richard was intending to make his wife. The marriage was performed in Sicily, and when the affairs of the country were all settled in the island, Richard set sail again with his fleet for the Holy Land, taking his mother, his sister, and his wife with him.

How did Richard agree with his ally Philip?

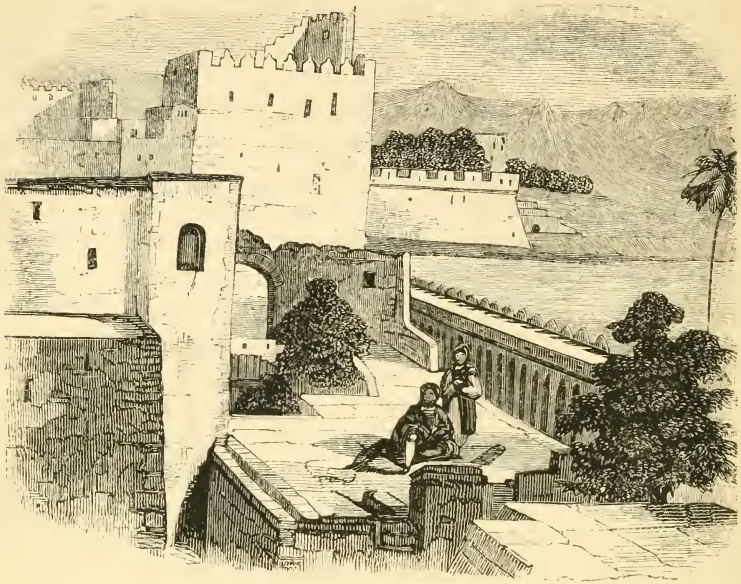
While in Sicily, Richard had begun to quarrel with Philip, his ally. Philip was displeased with the high-handed and overbearing manner in which Richard acted, but his remonstrances produced no effect. Afterward, when the expedition arrived in the Holy Land, the two kings quarreled still more.

What was Philip's first undertaking when he landed?

Philip proceeded directly to the Holy Land, and occupied himself in laying siege to Acre.

In what consisted the importance of Acre?

Acre was a town and fortress in Palestine, on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It was one of the strongest places in the East, and the Crusaders were very earnest to gain possession of it. They had besieged it before, and Philip was encamped before it when Richard arrived.



VIEW OF THE RAMPARTS OF ACRE.

Describe the scene presented before Acre when Richard arrived.

There was an immense number of troops in the camp before Acre, but they had been greatly reduced by sickness and disasters, and were making no progress in the siege. The camp was on high land behind the town, so that the soldiers could see Richard's fleet as it approached the bay, and when it anchored in the roadstead they hailed its arrival with an astounding clangor of trumpets and drums, and every other instrument of martial music then known.

What was Richard's demeanor on landing?

Richard landed his troops and took possession of the camp as if he were the lord and master of it, acting toward Philip and the other Christian commanders in the most overbearing and domineering manner. This made them hate him; but then, on the

other hand, the prodigious strength and prowess which he manifested in the combats that he fought with the Saracens from time to time excited their admiration.

What is said of his strength and courage?

He was a man of prodigious personal strength, and of the most reckless daring, and he could wield the heavy weapons used in those days with dreadful effect. The knights were accustomed to wear steel armor in those times, which afforded pretty good protection against such weapons as arrows, and even spears and swords. This steel armor was, however, very cumbersome to wear. being of itself almost a sufficient load for a man to carry.

What was the battle-axe, and how was it used?

To break through this armor, a heavy weapon called a battle-axe was used, which was a sort of hammer, perhaps, rather than an axe, being intended to break through the armor of the enemy. and crush him to death in spite of it. Richard performed prodigies of strength with his battle-axe. He had had one of these weapons made in England expressly for his use. It was made of the best of steel, and was said to weigh twenty pounds.

What was the result of the siege of Acre?

The Christian army fought many partial combats around the walls of Acre, but they could not succeed in getting in. They, however, invested the city so closely that at last the garrison and the inhabitants were reduced to a state of famine, and were obliged to surrender.

What were the terms exacted of the Saracens?

In the capitulation, the Christians compelled the Saracens to promise that, as a ransom for their lives, they would pay an immense sum of money, and also deliver up as many as fifteen hundred Christian prisoners which they had taken in the course of the war. They also gave up to Richard and Philip several thousand of their own people as hostages for the fulfillment of these stipulations. They were allowed forty days for doing it.

What was the consequence of the non-fulfillment of these terms?

At the end of the forty days it was found that the Saracens could not or would not fulfill their agreement, and so the French and the English led their hostages outside the camp and massacred them all. The number was between two and three thousand, and the most amazing thing connected with this horrid transaction was, that it was generally approved throughout the Christian world. It was deemed quite a meritorious thing to slaughter so many infidels, as the poor Saracens were called. Their only crime was that they defended their country.

Give an account of the remainder of Richard's career in Palestine.

After this, Richard spent one or two years in Palestine, roaming about the country, attacking fortresses and towns, and fighting desperate pitched battles with Saladin, the chief commander of the Saracens, who was almost as famous a hero as he. In this campaign he met with a great variety of wonderful adventures and hairbreadth escapes. He and Philip quarreled more and more, until at last Philip's patience became entirely exhausted, so that he abandoned the enterprise and went home.

What finally induced Richard to return to England? Give an account of his voyage.

Not a great while afterward, Richard heard from England that his brother John was taking possession of the kingdom, so he concluded to go home too. He accordingly set sail early in the summer with a small number of ships, containing his wife, his mother, and his sister, and the chief knights and officers that had accompanied him This fleet was dispersed by a storm. The ship that the ladies had embarked in reached Sicily in safety, but Richard's ship was driven about hither and thither, until at last, since he had now lost all his guards and protectors, he was afraid to land any where for fear that he might be taken prisoner. He had met

with the kings and princes of a great many countries that lie along the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, in the Holy Land, and had made them his enemies by his tyrannical and overbearing demeanor, so that he did not dare to land and make himself known in any of their dominions.

In what manner did he attempt to travel in passing through Germany?

At last he landed in Germany, on the shores of the Adriatic Sea, and attempted to pass through the country in disguise, so as to get into England in that way, not daring to let any one know who he was. He had plenty of money with him, and a man and a boy for his attendants. In order to disguise himself, he put on the dress of a pilgrim, and pretended that he was returning from a pilgrimage he had been making in the Holy Land.

Was he skillful in carrying out his disguise? Relate the story of the ruby.

He did not, however, succeed at all in acting his part. He spent his money very freely, which was not at all like a pilgrim. On one occasion he sent a valuable ruby as a present to the governor of a town, with a message asking the governor for a passport for two strangers, a pilgrim and a merchant, that were traveling through. The governor looked at the ruby, and then at the page who brought it, and said, "Go tell your master that I know who he is. He is King Richard of England; but he may go in peace."

How was he finally discovered, and what became of him?

Richard was greatly alarmed at finding that he was thus known, and he pressed forward with the utmost diligence. He went three days and three nights without entering any house, and he suffered a great deal for want of food and rest. At last he became entirely exhausted, and gave out altogether at a small town in the dominions of the Duke of Austria. Here he was at length discovered by means of his page, whom he was obliged to send to mar-

ket for provision, and the authorities of the town seized and delivered him to the duke. The duke immediately shut him up in a great castle on a hill, called the castle of Tiernsteign.

How was he at length set free?

Richard was kept in prison several months, and was only released at last by the payment of an immense ransom. The money for this ransom was raised in England, and sent over to Germany, and then the captive was set free. His brother John made his escape very precipitately when he heard that Richard was coming.

Relate the sequel of Richard's history.

Richard caused himself to be crowned anew when he arrived again in his kingdom, under the idea that such a captivity as he had endured annulled, as it were, his first coronation. He lived after this four or five years, and then died from a wound which he received in storming a castle.

CHAPTER VIII.

KING JOHN.

For what is the reign of King John chiefly celebrated?

The reign of King John is chiefly celebrated for a great measure of state which was adopted in the course of it, by which the powers of the kings of England were greatly curtailed, and the privileges and rights of the people were defined and established by means of a solemn covenant which King John was compelled to sign. The name of the document in which this covenant was recorded was called Magna Charta.

How did the kings usually exercise their power before the time of John?

Before the time of King John, the kings of England had been accustomed, as we have seen, to lord it over the people in a very

high-handed manner. Indeed, there was scarcely any practical limit to their power.

What had been the general condition of the country?

During all the time while these rude and brutal kings and princes of England had been fighting with one another, and with rival claimants to the crown, the great mass of the people of the country had been going on quietly in their various pursuits, as well as the turbulent and reckless violence of the men who called themselves their rulers would allow. Thus the country had gradually increased in wealth and population, notwithstanding the great numbers that had been enticed to join the Crusades, and had perished miserably in those mad and wicked expeditions.

How was the land held, and what was the arrangement in respect to the tenants?

The farming land was not owned generally by the people who cultivated it. It had been parceled out by the preceding kings, and especially by William the Conqueror, into great estates, which had been conferred on the great nobles. These nobles were called barons. They held the lands as their property, and compelled the common people to pay rent to them for such portions as they severally cultivated. The king sustained them in the exercise of this power, and they, in return, when the king wished to raise an army, would each compel a certain number of his tenants to enlist. The poor tenants were obliged to go and become soldiers, however unwilling they might be.

Had the king and the nobles a right to make such an arrangement as this, or only the power?

If we ask what right one class of men had thus to appropriate to themselves all the land of the country, and compel those who tilled the ground to pay them rent, while they themselves lived in idleness and vice, or kept the country in confusion with their desperate and boisterous quarrels, the answer must be that they had no right at all. They had the power.

In what way did they possess the power?

They had the power, because they had an army. The barons furnished soldiers to make an army for the king, and the king used the power of the army when necessary to sustain the barons. If in any case a tenant refused to pay his rent, or a man called upon refused to enlist as a soldier, there were plenty of other soldiers always at hand to punish him, and compel him to submit. Thus the barons oppressed the people, and the kings, who had grown more and more haughty and tyrannical, oppressed the barons, until, in the reign of King John, things came to a sort of a crisis.

How did it happen that things came to a crisis in John's reign?

Perhaps the reason why this crisis came in John's time was on account of his character. He was an unprincipled, wicked, and hateful man, and a great coward withal, so that he was despised as well as hated. The manner in which he treated the young prince Arthur, at the commencement of his reign, shows very clearly what his character was.

Who was Prince Arthur, and what claims had he to the throne?

Arthur was his nephew. He was now about twelve years old. He was the son of King Richard, who was an older brother of John, and thus, if the crown was hereditary, he, according to the established rules of descent, was the rightful heir. This was King Richard's understanding, and he had repeatedly designated young Arthur as his successor.

What course did John pursue?

John, however, paid no regard to all this. He was a man grown, and he had armies at his command, while Arthur was a mere child, and was entirely helpless. So he caused himself immediately to be proclaimed king. He was in Normandy at the time, but he immediately put himself at the head of a force and went to England.

How was John received by the barons of England?

The barons of the kingdom at once determined to resist him. They raised forces themselves among their several tenants, and

then withdrew every man to his castle, and fortified themselves there. They said that Arthur was the rightful king, and John was a usurper. They were determined not to submit to him.

What was the motive that led King Philip to espouse Arthur's cause?

King Philip of France espoused Arthur's cause very warmly, not from any honest and sincere friendship to him, however, but only because it afforded him a pretext to make war upon John, and to get possession of some portion of Normandy for himself.

Describe the interview which took place between Philip and Arthur.

He invited Arthur to come to his court, and then asked him if he would like to be King of England. Arthur said that he should like to be a king very much indeed. "Well," said he, "I will furnish you with an army, and you shall go and make war upon John. I will go too, with another army. Then, whatever I take away from John in Normandy shall be mine, but all England shall be yours." Philip thought he could easily seize Normandy while John was defending himself against Arthur's friends in England.

What did Arthur decide in respect to these proposals?

Arthur, who was now only about fourteen years old, was of course too young to exercise any judgment in respect to such questions as these, so he readily agreed to any thing that Philip proposed; and very soon he went at the head of a little army, which Philip furnished him, into Normandy, to make war upon his uncle. He was in name the commander of the army, though of course there were officers older and more experienced under him who really directed the operations. The different members of the family took different sides in this dispute, and thus, in a short time, they were all entangled in a most complicated domestic quarrel. At one time, Arthur, a boy of fourteen or fifteen, was besieging his grandmother of eighty, shut up in a castle, while his uncle, with another army, was besieging him.

What was the result of the campaign?

The end of the campaign, however, was, that Arthur's little army was entirely defeated, and the young prince himself was taken prisoner. John and his savage soldiers got possession of the town where Arthur was in the night, and they seized the poor boy in his bed. The soldiers, by John's command, took the prisoner away, and shut him up in a dungeon, in a famous castle called the Castle of Falaise.

Describe the circumstances of King John's visit to Arthur in prison.

King John went to visit Arthur in his prison, after waiting a while, so as to allow time for the captive's spirit to be broken by his confinement and his sufferings, and endeavored to make some arrangement with him. His design probably was to offer him his liberty, and perhaps some rich estate, if he would only give up his claims to the crown and acknowledge John as king. But he found that his prisoner's spirit was entirely unsubdued. All that Arthur would say to him was, Give me back my kingdom. John, finding thus that he could not make any terms with Arthur, went away in a rage, and determined to kill him. If Arthur were dead, there would then, he thought, be no farther difficulty, for all acknowledged that, after Arthur, John was the next heir.

What was the determination that King John finally formed?

There was, however, one other way. There was an idea prevailing in those days that no person who was blind, or deaf and dumb, could inherit a crown, and so John, on second thoughts, concluded, monster as he was, to destroy the prince's right to the succession by putting out his eyes. So he sent two executioners to perform this cruel deed upon the captive in his dungeon.

How was Arthur saved?

The name of the governor of the castle was Rupert. He was a humane man, and pitied his unhappy prisoner; and so, when the executioners came, and Rupert went to the cell to tell Arthur that

they had come, and what they had come for, Arthur begged for mercy, saying, Save me! save me! with so many cries and tears,

SAVE ME! SAVE ME!

that Rupert concluded to put off the dreadful deed till he could see the king again. We see him, in the engraving, kneeling before Rupert in the dungeon, while the executioners are waiting without.

What measure did John adopt when he found that his commands had been disobeyed?

John was very angry when he found that his orders had not been obeyed, and he immediately determined to remove Arthur to another prison, the keeper of which was known to be a stern and merciless man. This was done, and soon after it was given out through all the kingdom of England that Arthur was dead. Every body was convinced that John had caused him to be murdered. There were several different rumors in respect to the way in which the deed was done, all very horrible, but none too horrible to be believed of such a monster as John.

Describe the rebellion that finally broke out against John.

After this, the tyrant reigned for some time unquestioned in respect to his title, but generally abhorred and hated for his cruelties and his crimes, until at length the leading barons of the kingdom combined against him, and took the field with their armies, resolved to avail themselves of the public reprobation which his tyranny awakened to reduce the kingly power of the realm once for all within something like reasonable bounds. King John fought these rebels, as he called them, for some time in various parts of the kingdom, but he was at length overpowered and compelled to come to terms.

How was the quarrel between King John and his nobles brought to an end? In what light is Magna Charta now regarded?

The barons wrote their demands upon a roll of parchment, and compelled the king to sign it. This was the Magna Charta, which means the great charter. It was the first great covenant between the kings and people of England, and is considered as the original basis and foundation of the civil rights which the British people now enjoy.

In what place was Magna Charta signed?

The place of assembly where King John came out to sign the

covenant was a broad and beautiful meadow on the banks of the Thames, not far from Windsor Castle, where John was then quartered. The name of the field was Runny Mead. The word Mead is a contraction for meadow.

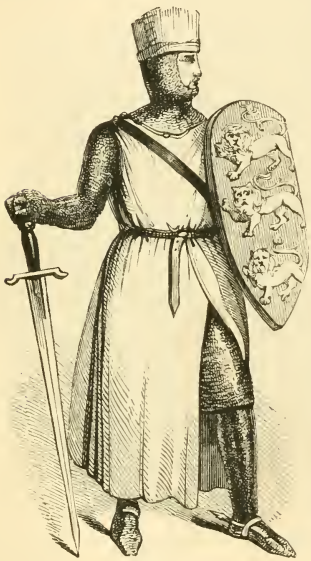
VIEW OF RUNNY MEAD.

How did King John feel in respect to this charter after he had signed it?

While King John was signing the Charta on the field, he pretended to do it very willingly, and to be well pleased with the provisions of it, but as soon as he returned to Windsor Castle he flew into a great rage. He cursed the charter, and the barons who had made him sign it, in the most bitter manner. He gnashed his teeth, rolled his eyes, gnawed sticks and straws, and raved like a perfect madman.

Did the king prove faithful to the engagements that he had made?

The barons had taken care to bind the king, not only by his signature and his oath, but had also exacted certain securities and pledges which they thought might help to keep him to his word. But all was not effectual. As soon as he recovered his liberty, and his barons had in some measure disbanded their forces, he began to break his vows and return to his old ways. So the barons reassembled their forces and the war broke out anew.



KING JOHN.

What was the result of his attempts to violate his engagements?

The barons, finding that no faith would be kept by such an unprincipled and treacherous monster, determined to have another king, and so they sent to France to a prince named Louis, and offered him the English crown if he would come over and take the command. Louis came, and then new civil wars broke out, and the kingdom was again in confusion.

Relate the circumstances of King John's last sickness.

At length, in the midst of these wars and commotions, King John suddenly fell sick and died. He was crossing the mouth of a stream with a train of wagons containing treasures, at a place where the tide rises very rapidly. They were a little too late. While they were still in the midst of the ford, the wheels sinking into the sand and water, the tide came upon them. They had a dreadful time in getting out, and the king was much exhausted by the excitement and the exposure. That night he ate glutton-

ously of some fruit they set before him. Some say that his attendants poisoned this fruit. At any rate, the next day he was very sick. His men carried him on, in a litter, to a castle not far off, and then they found that he could go no farther, and so they put him down on a bed to die.

DEATH OF KING JOHN.

What were his feelings on his death-bed, and what did he do?

When he found that his end was so nigh, he was overwhelmed with remorse. He sent for a priest to come and pardon his sins, but all did no good. The wretched sinner died in despair.

CHAPTER IX.

KING RICHARD THE THIRD.

What was the condition of England after the death of King John?

From the time of John, the affairs of the English kingdom went on in all essential respects much the same for three or four hundred years. There were the same dreadful quarrels among the different branches of the royal family, the same beleaguering of castles and storming of towns, and the same tyranny over all the industrial classes of the kingdom by haughty lords and despotic barons. Indeed, a very large proportion of the people of the country were little better than slaves.

What was the nature of the difficulties that occurred from time to time with the Pope of Rome?

In addition to these internal troubles, there were difficulties from time to time with the Pope. The English people were Catholic at that time, and were consequently under spiritual subjection to the Pope of Rome, and he, whenever there was a quarrel in the kingdom between rival claimants to the crown, would take sides with one party or the other, whichever he supposed, if triumphant, would most promote the power and ascendency of the Church. This often made a great deal of trouble.

What was the nature of the difficulties with France?

Besides this, wars were continually breaking out between England and France; for the kings of England, being descended from William, inherited Normandy and some other French provinces. Now the kings of France, while they admitted that the kings of England were sovereign and independent in respect to their realm of England, always maintained that in respect to their French possessions they were bound to do homage to them as their feudal

superiors. This led to endless disputes, and frequently to open war. The English kings were continually raising armies, by forcing the people of the land to enlist, and then compelling them to cross the Channel into France, to fight there in quarrels with which they had no concern.

How were the people prevented from asserting their rights and protecting themselves from these evils?

The patience of the people was often entirely exhausted under the oppressions and sufferings that they endured, but they were so tied, hand and foot, by the armies which the kings kept always under their command, that they could do nothing but submit. Once or twice partial insurrections occurred, but they were speedily put down.

Give an account of the insurrection of Wat Tyler.

One of these insurrections was headed by a man named Wat. He was a laboring man. His business was to lay tiles upon roofs. He was called Wat the tiler, but in history his name has got changed to Wat Tyler. He was aroused to phrensy by the outrageous injuries which one of the king's officers inflicted upon his daughter, a young girl about fourteen years old, when they came to his house to collect a tax that the king had levied in order to pay the expenses of his wars. He killed the officer on the spot, and then, rushing into the streets, he called upon the people to rise. They did rise, and a great insurrection they made of it. For a time the king's government seemed to be in real danger. But the insurgents were soon put down. Wat was killed in the street, and all the other leaders were hung in chains.

What was the character of King Richard the Third?

One of the worst of the kings in this long and bad succession was King Richard the Third. He was not the rightful inheritor of the crown. He was a usurper.

Who was the true heir to the throne, and what was his situation?

The true heir to the crown was a boy named Edward. He was

the fifth Edward in the royal line, his father being Edward the Fourth. He was in a castle in the country when his father died. He had a brother younger than himself, being about eleven years old, who was with his mother at this time in London.

YOUNG EDWARD.

Who had the care of Edward, and what did she do?

Edward, the oldest brother, was of course king immediately after his father died. He was a very pretty boy, and his mother, being much attached to him, was greatly alarmed when she heard of his father's death, and immediately sent to have him brought to her in London.

Relate what occurred when Richard learned that Edward was coming to London.

The danger which Edward's mother feared was from Richard, his uncle, who was then Duke of Gloucester. Richard was a determined, reckless, and desperate man, and one of the most powerful nobles in England. When he learned that young Edward was coming to London, he set out to come too, so as to meet him on the way. The duke was accompanied by three hundred horsemen. He arrested the lords who had charge of the king, and then

took the king under his own escort, but instead of conveying him to his mother, he conveyed him to the Tower of London, and shut him up there, under pretense that that was the safest place for him.

What attempt did the mother of the king make to visit him in the Tower?

His mother immediately went to the Tower, with some relatives and friends, in order to see her child, but the governor of the Tower would not let them in. The engraving represents a view

THE TOWER OF LONDON.

of this scene. The governor's name was Brakenbury. We shall hereafter hear of him again.

What course did the duke now pursue?

The duke pretended great zeal for the safety of the two boys,

the king and his brother. He styled himself the Protector, and he took charge of the government of the country in that name. He had soldiers enough under his command to enable him to do this, and to overawe all opposition. It was his duty, he said, the king being so young and inexperienced, and being his uncle and guardian, to protect him not only from open force, but from the secret machinations of his enemies. So he kept the king and his brother closely shut up in the Tower.

What is the Tower?

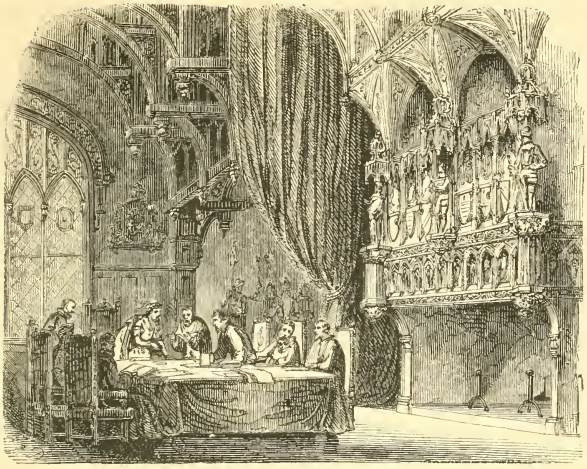
The Tower is an ancient castle situated on the bank of the Thames at the lower part of London. It was used in those days as a prison for offenders against the government. It still remains, though it is not now used as a prison. It is an object of great historical interest at the present day.

In what way did he treat the nobles?

Then he began to cause all such nobles as he suspected of being unfriendly to him, and friendly to the king, to be arrested under one charge or another, and speedily executed. He pretended that he had discovered conspiracies in which they had been engaged. Governments had power to proceed in this prompt and summary manner in those days whenever they deemed it fit so to do. Now they can not do so. All men now who are accused of crime in England must have a regular trial.

Give an account of the violent proceedings of Richard at the council.

In getting these men into his power, and in finding pretexts for having them beheaded, Richard acted in a manner that was at once treacherous, tyrannical, and impudent. He went at one time into a council where a number of the lords were assembled who he knew were likely to take sides against him, and, after talking with them for a time in an easy manner, to throw them off their guard, he struck on the table with his fist to make a signal, and a large number of armed men, that he had in readiness outside for the



RICHARD AT THE COUNCIL.

pose, rushed in, seized the lords that he suspected, and led them away to immediate execution. He said he had found out that they were traitors.

Who was Jane Shore, and what accusation did the duke make against her?

There was a lady of the court named Jane Shore. She had been the friend and favorite of the last king, and she was now the friend of one of the lords whom Gloucester knew to be hostile to him. Richard determined to disgrace her too, so he accused her of being a sorceress. "See!" said he; "see what she has done to me with her incantations and sorcery."

What proof did the duke offer of Jane Shore's sorcery?

So saying, Richard pulled up his sleeve and showed his arm, which was smaller than the other arm, and somewhat shriveled. It had always been so, and every body knew it, but he now pretended that Jane Shore had bewitched it.

What was the punishment that he inflicted upon her?

For punishment he compelled her to walk through the streets

of London with very little clothing on, and her head and feet bare, carrying a lighted taper in her hands. She had to do this on Sunday, when the streets were full of people. Richard also seized all her property, which consisted of a great amount of jewelry and other such treasures, and appropriated them to his own use. He did this, he said, not from covetousness, but to show his virtuous indignation at her crimes.

What was the character of Jane Shore?

It is very true that Jane Shore was not a virtuous woman. The former king had enticed her away from her husband, and she had lived since a wicked life. But she was not a sorceress.

In what manner did Richard cause himself to be proclaimed king?

When these things had been done, Richard secretly arranged it with his partisans and confederates that they were to make a call upon him, in behalf of the people of England, to assume the crown himself, on the pretense that Edward was not the true son of th former king. So these men raised a company and proceeded to Richard's palace, calling out "Long live King Richard!" by the way.

How did Richard receive the men who came to proclaim him, and what was their reply?

When these men came to the palace, Richard at first pretended to be alarmed, and would not receive them. Then he said he could not possibly consent to be king. The love he bore to the young king, and to the little prince his brother, absolutely forbade it. The delegation then told him, as it had been previously agreed upon that they should, that he *must* be king. The people of England demanded it. Edward was not the true heir. The people never would submit to his taking the crown, and if Richard would not take it, they should immediately go and find some one who would.

How did the affair end?

So Richard reluctantly allowed himself to be made king, and

immediately afterward he was proclaimed in all parts of London. Soon after this he was crowned with the greatest pomp and parade. Almost all the peers and peeresses of England were present, and seemed to acquiesce in the usurpation.

What was the first public measure that Richard adopted?

Immediately after the coronation, Richard made a royal progress through his dominions. He was attended by a grand cavalcade, and he entertained the people wherever he went with feasts and celebrations. Of course they all came out to see him and his retinue as he passed, and Richard pretended that this was proof that the country wished him to reign over them.

Were there any plans formed for opposing him?

There were still a great many malcontents, and they secretly, and in conference with one another, resolved on revenge. They began to form plans for raising an army, breaking into the Tower, and rescuing the princes, and then putting young Edward upon the throne. This was to have been expected. Indeed, Richard knew, as soon as he assumed the crown, that he never could be safe while the two princes lived.

What resolution did the king now take in respect to the princes, and how did he attempt to execute it?

He sent to Brakenbury, the keeper of the Tower, directing him to find some way to kill them. Brakenbury replied that he could not do it. Richard then put another man, named Tyrrel, in Brakenbury's place for a day, and he sent two assassins, named Miles Forest and John Dighton, to perform the dreadful deed. These were coarse, rough men, who Tyrrel knew would shrink from nothing.

How was Richard's purpose finally accomplished?

The two assassins crept slowly up stairs to the room in the Tower where the young princes were sleeping. Tyrrel waited at the foot of the stairs. The boys were sleeping quietly in each other's arms, suspecting nothing. The assassins advanced to the

MURDER OF THE PRINCES.

bedside, and then put a pillow over the boys' faces, and held it there till they were suffocated. It was a long struggle, but at length the poor victims were dead. The assassins then carried the bodies down stairs, and buried them in a court-yard of the Tower.

What was the effect of the tidings on the queen-mother?

When the queen-mother learned what had become of her darling sons, and saw the place where they lay, she was almost frantic with grief and horror.

For how long a time did Richard reign?

Such were the means by which Richard, Duke of Gloucester, a desperate man, and a hard-hearted and cruel uncle, usurped the English throne, and became King Richard the Third. He, how-

THE QUEEN-MOTHER MOURNING FOR HER CHILDREN.

ever, enjoyed the fruits of his crime only a very short time. He reigned but two years, and even during this period he enjoyed no peace.

How far did the English people submit to his usurpation?

A large portion of the English people submitted to his rule, it is true, but a great many others never would submit to it, and plots were continually forming to depose him, and to bring some other prince—the nearest relative of the royal family that they could find—to reign in his stead.

Describe the circumstances of his death.

The plots that were formed against him led to several outbreaks of civil war, and at length, in one of the battles which were fought, Richard was overwhelmed by his enemies, struck

down from his horse, and killed. Nobody mourned for him. Nobody pitied him for his untimely fate. The crown which he had worn fell from his head and was trampled in the mud. Even his body lay for a while neglected where it fell. At length some soldiers took it up, and threw it across a horse, behind the saddle, like a sack of corn, and the horsemen rode away with it off the field.

What branch of the royal family was it that now succeeded to the throne?

At the death of Richard a new branch of the royal family, called the Tudors, came to the throne. The branch to which Richard and his predecessors belonged were called the Plantagenets. Of the sovereigns of the house of Tudor, the most distinguished were King Henry the Eighth and Queen Elizabeth.

CHAPTER X.

HENRY THE EIGHTH AND THE REFORMATION.

For what is the reign of King Henry the Eighth chiefly distinguished?

The reign of King Henry the Eighth is chiefly distinguished in history for two things. First, for the abominable personal character and conduct of the sovereign, and, second, for the great event of the separation of the English Church from the Roman Catholic Church, which took place during this reign, and which is usually called the Reformation.

Describe the character of King Henry the Eighth.

As to the character of King Henry, it was extremely bad, and the depravity of it was of a peculiarly detestable type. Some of the bad kings of England that had preceded him had been hated, others even had been abhorred. King Henry the Eighth's was a character to be loathed and despised.

How will his character compare with that of the Richards?

The Richards, in violence and cruelty, were like brutes, it is true, but the brutes they resembled were the lion and the tiger; while it would be necessary to choose some much more degraded animal than these to match the beastliness of Henry. How it was possible for twenty or thirty millions of men to submit for forty years to be under the supreme dominion of such a wretch, to say nothing of their placing him at the head of the Christian Church, is an amazing mystery.

At what age did he succeed to the crown, and under what circumstances?

Henry the Eighth succeeded to the crown when he was eighteen years old. The circumstances under which he entered upon his reign were very promising. His father had been very unpopular, and the people of England were rejoiced at his death. Henry was his sole surviving son, and there was no rival claimant to the crown. Henry was moreover at that time a young man of great personal beauty, and of agreeable manners, so that he was a general favorite. He was just of an age, too, to excite most strongly the interest of the people in his behalf. He and his father had not agreed well together during his father's lifetime, and in consequence of this he had spent his early years in retirement, where he had acquired a taste for literature and the arts. But his depraved character, which was at first concealed, soon developed itself.

How many times was he married?

About the time of his accession he was married to the Princess Catharine of Aragon, and the king and queen were crowned together. After this, King Henry had five other wives, one after the other, making six in all. Indeed, the chief business of his life seemed to be falling in love with ladies not his wife, and then contriving ways and means to get rid of his wife, discarding, divorcing, or beheading her to make room for a successor. In a word, he was a slave to the most brutal and sensual propensities.

Here is a picture of Henry, dressed in all the ostentatious and gaudy paraphernalia with which he loved so well to adorn himself.

KING HENRY THE EIGHTH.

Relate the circumstances of his first marriage.

In respect to the first wife, Catharine of Aragon, there was a difficulty at the outset, which, although it was surmounted at the time, led afterward to serious consequences. Catharine was a widow when Henry married her. She had been the wife of Henry's brother.

What difficulty stood in the way of this marriage, and what was the only way of surmounting it?

The rules of the Catholic Church, to which Henry and Catharine, and all England in fact, at that time belonged, forbade a

marriage between a man and the widow of his brother, and there was no way of surmounting this difficulty except by obtaining what they called a dispensation from the Pope—that is, special permission to disregard the rule in this case. It was believed in those days, as it is now indeed in the Catholic Church, that the Pope could pardon any past wrong, and could also make any future wrong right by his permission.

What were the circumstances that induced the Pope to sanction this marriage?

Now it happened that, a short time before the accession of King Henry, the great reformer, Martin Luther, had commenced preaching against the corruptions of the Catholic Church, and the vices and crimes of the priests and clergy, and he had produced so great an effect on the public mind, that the Pope began to be uneasy in respect to his power. He needed the support of all his friends. King Henry was likely to be one of his strongest friends, and it was very desirable to retain his favor. Under the influence of these and other considerations, the Pope granted the dispensation, and the king and Catharine were married.

What kind of a wife did Catharine prove?

Catharine proved to be a very true and faithful wife, though Henry was entirely unprincipled and faithless as a husband. The union continued twenty years.

Whom did he next desire for a wife, and what was his plan for obtaining her?

At the end of that time Henry fell in love with one of the ladies of his court named Anne Boleyn, who would not return his love because he was already married. Then Henry determined to discard his wife Catharine, so that he might be married to Anne Boleyn, and the easiest way to do this would be to induce the new pope—for the one who had granted the dispensation was dead—to annul that decree, for this, he thought, would annul his marriage, and leave him at liberty again.

Why was the Pope unwilling to comply with the king's wishes?

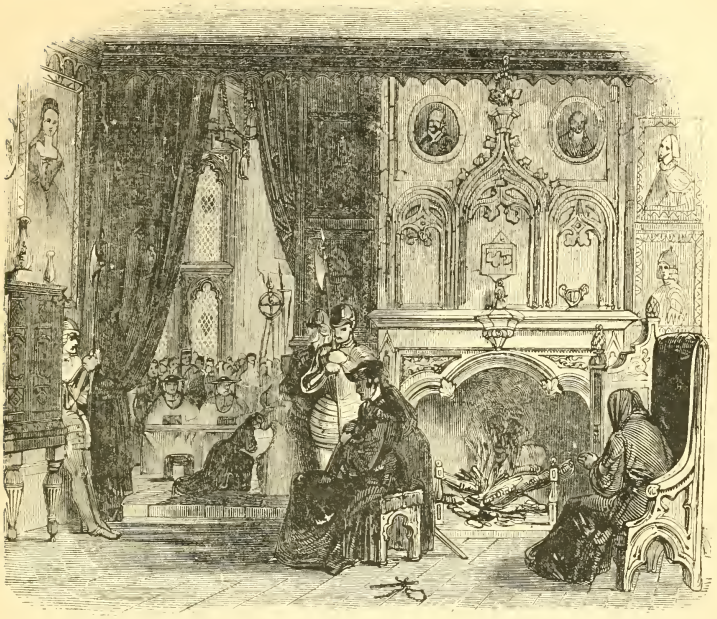
This, however, the Pope was extremely unwilling to do. He was involved at that time in very serious difficulties. All Europe was at war, and his interests were very deeply involved in the contest, and some of the most powerful of the combatants were very strong friends of Catharine. She was the daughter of a king of Spain, and the Spanish influence at that time, in all the affairs of the Continent, was predominant. King Henry sent his most able minister, the Cardinal Wolsey, to Rome to urge the Pope to do what he required, while equally able envoys from the Spanish government and others urged him not to do it.

What plan did the Pope finally adopt?

Finally, the Pope contrived a plan for evading the responsibility of acting at all. He appointed the Cardinal Wolsey and another priest a commission to proceed to England and try the question there.

Relate what occurred before the court.

The court was convened, and Queen Catharine was summoned to appear before it. She came, but she would not answer to her name, nor acknowledge the jurisdiction of the court at all. Instead of this, she fell down upon her knees before her husband, and begged him not to cast her off. She had been his true and faithful wife, she said, for twenty years. All this time she had been dutiful and obedient in all things, and had never given him occasion to be displeased with her by any thing which she had done or failed to do. She called upon him to bear witness for her that this was true, and she begged him not to cast her off now, and, at any rate, she entreated him to grant her time to send to Spain to consult with her friends there in respect to what she ought to do. The opposite engraving represents a view of the hall where the trial was held, with distinguished persons of the court listening to the proceedings in the anteroom. In the hall,



TRIAL OF QUEEN CATHARINE.

of which we have a partial view between the curtains of the entrance, we see the unhappy queen kneeling before the king, imploring him to desist from his cruel design.

What did the queen allege as her chief reason for being unwilling that her marriage should be annulled?

One chief reason, Catharine said, why she was so earnest in imploring the king not to discard her, was for the sake of her daughter. She had a daughter named Mary, the only one of all her children that was now living. Mary, of course, was heir to the crown, and would become one day Queen of England if the marriage of her mother with the king were allowed to stand, whereas if it were annulled she would, of course, at once become a private person.

How did the proceedings before the court end?

As soon as Catharine had concluded her piteous appeal to the king, finding that she made no impression, she rose and walked straight out of court. She was called back, but she would not come. She declared that she would not acknowledge the jurisdiction of the court at all. She appealed to the Pope. Henry was very angry, and urged the court to proceed and pronounce the sentence, but they would not. They said they must wait till they could hear from Rome, and they adjourned the court to a later day.

Describe the controversy that followed, and the means that were taken to settle it.

Then followed a long and tedious controversy. Henry resorted to every possible means that he could devise to induce the Pope to give the decree. He entreated him, he threatened him, he offered to bribe him; but all his efforts were neutralized by the influence of the King of Spain, who warmly espoused the queen's cause. At length, some of the courtiers recommended to him to have the case decided by the authorities in England, without reference to the Pope at all. This plan seemed to Henry excellent, so he dismissed his old counselors, and appointed the others in their place, and they proceeded at once to lay the question before various English tribunals, such as the great universities, the Parliament, and certain ecclesiastical courts. Then followed long and angry discussions.

What were the communications that passed between the Pope and the king?

The Pope, learning what was going on, sent word to the king not to proceed, and threatened him with excommunication if he did not cease his opposition to the papal authority. Henry replied that he was not making any opposition to the Pope, but was only actuated in what he was doing by the scruples of his tender conscience in respect to the validity of his marriage; and in order to prove how devoted he still was to the cause of the Church, he

seized a poor man who had written a pamphlet in favor of the Protestant cause, and burned him for his heresy at the stake, at Smithfield, which was a great public market in London. This unhappy victim was the first of the Smithfield martyrs.

How did the quarrel between the Pope and the king end at last?

The breach grew rapidly wider and wider between the king and the Pope, and in the end, Henry, partly by bribes, partly by threats, and partly by cajolery, induced the English Church to separate itself wholly from the Church of Rome, and make Henry instead of the Pope its ecclesiastical head. The decree of annulment in respect to the marriage was then passed, and soon after it was publicly proclaimed that King Henry *had* married Anne Boleyn.

What was the true character of the English Reformation?

If this were all that constituted the English Reformation, Protestants might well be ashamed of it. But it was not so by any means. There were thousands and hundreds of thousands of Christians among the people of England who before this time had examined the subject, each for himself, in private life, and had become honestly convinced that the claim of the Romish Church to exercise supreme spiritual dominion over all the world was a great usurpation, and that the influence which the papal power exercised on the nations of the earth was to hinder and not promote the cause of true piety. It was by means of this great prevailing sentiment, which had taken so strong a hold of the public mind, that the king was able to effect the outward change. Thus the English Reformation was, in fact and in substance, a great and honest change of opinion among the mass of conscientious Christians throughout the kingdom.

Was King Henry in reality the author of the English Reformation, or did he only make use of it?

King Henry fell in with this general change of sentiment among the people of England, and availed himself of it to accomplish a

corrupt and wicked purpose, it is true, and was the means of carrying the separation into full effect. But it was only the outward and visible form, after all, that he had any thing to do with. The real and inward change took place wholly independent of his agency.

What question in respect to the succession afterward arose from these disputed marriages, and how were the people of England divided in respect to it?

Notwithstanding the annulment of the marriage, a large portion of the people of England still believed that it was valid, and that Mary was heir to the crown. After a time, Anne Boleyn had a daughter named Elizabeth. Of course, those who believed that the annulment of the former marriage was right, considered that this babe Elizabeth was the true heir. The Catholics of the kingdom—for the people were still nearly one half Catholics—believed in Mary's claims. The Protestants, on the other hand, believed in Elizabeth's. And every one expected that, whenever the king should die, the whole quarrel would be opened again, and there would be a great struggle to determine which of these princesses should take the throne.

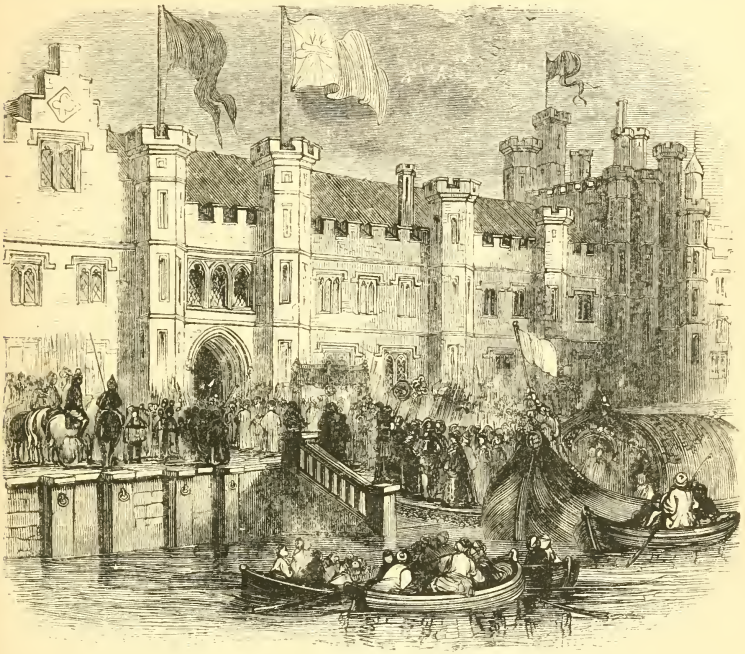
What two interests did these rival princesses respectively represent?

Of course, under the circumstances of the case, Mary became the head and the representative of the Catholic party in England, while Elizabeth represented the Protestants. The education of the two princesses, moreover, corresponded with their relative situations. Mary was brought up in communion with the Catholic Church, while Elizabeth was trained as a Protestant.

Describe the ceremony of Elizabeth's baptism.

Of course, the king did all in his power to elevate Elizabeth in public regard, and cause Mary to be forgotten. He celebrated Elizabeth's baptism with the greatest possible pomp and parade. The baptism took place at the palace of Greenwich, on the banks

of the Thames, a few miles below London. The company went down the river in a long train of barges, and landed at the palace



THE BAPTISM OF ELIZABETH.

stairs, to the sound of trumpets and drums, and with the waving of banners.

All this time what became of Mary?

Poor Mary was sent away, and shut up in solitude and seclusion, and even her mother was not allowed to see her. The unhappy queen died soon after this of a broken heart.

Who was the person that Henry desired for a third wife, and what plan did the king contrive to remove the second out of the way?

The king lived with his new queen a few years, and then he be-

came tired of her, and fell in love with another lady of his court named Jane Seymour. The question was now how he should get rid of Anne Boleyn. After a while he accused her of the crime of being unfaithful to him. There seems to have been no ground for this accusation whatever. It is universally believed that she was entirely innocent. Still, he manœuvred and managed in such a manner as to cause her to be condemned.

What was the fate of Anne Boleyn?

The court that he appointed to try her sentenced her either to be burned or beheaded, at the pleasure of the king. Henry, pretending to be extremely merciful, decided that she should be beheaded. So they took her to the court-yard of the Tower, where she was imprisoned, and, laying her head upon a block, they chopped it off with a broad-axe. The block is to be seen in the Tower now, by all who go there, with the mark of the axe upon it.

What other marriages did Henry contract?

The king was married to Jane Seymour the very next day after Anne Boleyn was beheaded. He soon afterward caused his marriage with Anne to be annulled, in order to cut off her daughter Elizabeth from inheriting the crown. Jane Seymour did not live a great while, and then Henry married again. This was his fourth wife. Her name was Anne of Cleves. He soon became tired of Anne, and caused himself to be divorced from her, and married another lady named Catharine Howard. After a time he accused Catharine of unfaithfulness to him, and she was beheaded too, as Anne Boleyn had been. Then he married his sixth wife. Her name was Catharine Parr.

How did his life end?

Thus he went on, growing worse and worse, and becoming more and more violent and depraved, till at last, in the fifty-sixth year of his age, he fell sick and died miserably.

CHAPTER XI.

QUEEN ELIZABETH.

How many and who were the claimants to the crown after the death of Henry?

King Henry the Eighth, at his death, left three children living, Mary, the daughter of Catharine, Elizabeth, the daughter of Anne Boleyn, and Edward, a young boy, the child of Jane Seymour. It was somewhat doubtful which of these was entitled to the crown. Each of them had a large party of adherents. The party of Edward carried the day, and he reigned, or, rather, he wore the crown, and his friends reigned for him, several years.

Describe the character of Mary.

When Edward died the Catholic party gained the ascendency, and Mary was brought to the throne. She was by nature a stern, austere, and hard-hearted woman, whom nobody loved. Still, she may have been very honest and conscientious in her opinions.

What were her feelings in respect to the Catholic religion and the Reformation?

She, of course, hated the memory of her father, on account of his having persecuted her mother so cruelly, and having done so much to deprive her of her rights as his daughter. She also, of course, liked the Pope and the Romish Church, because they had taken her mother's part in the controversy with her father.

What were the measures that she adopted?

She determined at once to undo all that her father had done for the Reformation. She reorganized the Romish Church in England, and subjected the kingdom again to the spiritual jurisdiction of the Pope; and vast numbers of the people who opposed these changes, and resisted the reintroduction of the Romish religion, she caused to be burned at the stake or beheaded as here-

tics. So numerous and so cruel were these persecutions, that in distinguishing her from some other queens of the same name, she is called in history Bloody Mary. What a strange combination of words is this!

What was the ground of the enmity between Mary and Elizabeth?

Of course, Mary and Elizabeth, though half-sisters, were mortal enemies. The cause of their disagreement, too, was of such a nature that it could not possibly be removed or remedied. It was only the mother of one or the other of them that could have been the true and lawful wife of their father. Elizabeth and her friends maintained that the marriage with Catharine was null and void from the beginning, and that Mary was born in dishonor. On the other hand, Mary and her friends claimed that this marriage was valid, and that the second marriage of the king, that is, the marriage with Elizabeth's mother, was bigamy, which is a great crime, and that consequently *Elizabeth* was born in dishonor.

How did this quarrel end?

Mary suspected that Elizabeth's party were plotting against her and intending to dethrone her, and, finally, becoming more and more uneasy on this point, she caused Elizabeth to be arrested and conveyed to the Tower. Here she kept her shut up a prisoner for several months. Afterward, when she found that treating her sister in this way was likely to excite public odium, and increase Elizabeth's party, she took her from the Tower and sent her away into the country, to a retired palace near Oxford, but confined her still as closely as ever.

What occurred in respect to Elizabeth when Mary died?

Things continued much in this state a few years longer, when at length Mary died. The great officers of state then rode in great haste to Hatfield, where Elizabeth was then residing, proclaimed her queen, and brought her to London in a grand triumphal procession.

Describe the procession by which Elizabeth was conducted to London.

In this procession she was accompanied by a thousand persons of the highest rank and station. She rode in a splendid carriage, open to the public view, and drawn by horses richly caparisoned, while the music of trumpets and drums, and the waving of innumerable flags and banners, gladdened the scene. The people of

ELIZABETH'S PROGRESS TO LONDON.

the country came out in immense crowds, and stood by the wayside while the procession passed by. God save Queen Elizabeth was the cry, and the whole air was filled with their joyous shouts and acclamations. Thus Elizabeth commenced her reign.

What course did Elizabeth pursue in respect to the Reformation?

Elizabeth was, of course, a Protestant, and, as soon as she was established in power, she directed all her efforts to the work of un-

doing what Mary had done, and restoring the kingdom to the condition in which her father had placed it. She dismissed the Catholic lords from her councils, and appointed Protestants in their place. In a word, she re-established the Reformation.

What ground did the Catholics then assume in respect to Elizabeth?

This, of course, greatly excited the anger and enmity of the Catholics throughout the kingdom and throughout Europe. They were the more unwilling, too, to submit to this new revolution, because, as they maintained, Elizabeth was not the true heir to the throne. She had no claim to it whatever, as they thought. They all held that the marriage of the king her father with Catharine of Aragon was valid, having been authorized by the Pope, and that the revocation of it by the English courts was invalid, and, of course, that the king's marriage with Anne Boleyn, and the subsequent birth of Elizabeth, were irregular, and that consequently Elizabeth was a mere private person, and not the heir to the crown at all.

Who did they claim was the rightful heir?

Who then was the heir? Elizabeth was the only child of King Henry remaining alive, and, of course, if she were to be set aside, it would be necessary to go to the nearest relative of the family, reckoning from Henry's father. Now this nearest relative was a young and exceedingly lovely lady named Mary. She was a Scotch princess, and is known in history as the celebrated Mary Queen of Scots.

Explain how it happened that Mary could be considered heir to the throne.

The reader may perhaps wonder how it could happen that a Scotch princess could be heir to the English throne. The explanation is this. Her grandmother was the sister of Henry the Eighth, and she married the King of Scotland. Of course, Mary was Elizabeth's second cousin, and if all the children of Henry the Eighth were set aside—as her grandmother came next to King

Henry in the line, and as it happened that she was now her grandmother's sole heir—she would inherit the crown of Scotland through her grandfather, and that of England through her grandmother. This all the Catholic party in England maintained was the real state of the case, and so they began, very soon after Elizabeth's accession, to devise ways and means of deposing Elizabeth and bringing Mary to the throne. The reason why they were so much interested in espousing Mary's cause, was that Mary was a Catholic, and they thought that by making her queen they should promote the re-establishment of the Catholic religion in England.

Where was Mary at this time, and in what position?

Mary, however, was not in Scotland at this time. She was in France. She had been sent there when very young to be educated, and there, at length, when she was about fifteen years old, it was arranged that she should be married to the Prince of France. One reason for hastening this marriage was that this prince was a Catholic, and they wished to confirm Mary in her Catholic faith, and make it sure, if possible, that she would remain one all her days.

What was, then, the general nature of the quarrel between Mary and Elizabeth?

Thus every thing conspired to make Mary the head and the representative of the Catholic cause in England and Scotland, and Elizabeth of that of the Protestants. This rendered them rivals and enemies of each other, and the history of their lives is little else than a history of the plans, manœuvres, stratagems, and devices which they and their respective counselors and adherents were continually forming against each other. The Protestants of Scotland took Elizabeth's part against Mary, while, to balance this, the Catholics of England took Mary's part against Elizabeth. Elizabeth regarded Mary's friends in her dominions as traitors and rebels, and considered Mary as directly or indirectly responsible for all their machinations; while Mary thought precisely the same

of Elizabeth's friends in Scotland. Thus there was continual jealousy between them, and sometimes open war.

How did the quarrel end?

It ended in Mary's falling into Elizabeth's hands as a prisoner at one time when she was driven from her own kingdom by the dissensions there, and had fled across the border. Elizabeth kept her prisoner for many years, and then finally, having found some reason to suspect that she was still plotting against her in her prison, she caused her to be beheaded.

What is it that has led mankind to take so strong an interest in the history of Mary Queen of Scots?

The story of Mary Queen of Scots, when you read it in full, is an exceedingly interesting and affecting tale. Her beauty, her misfortunes, the romantic adventures and vicissitudes through which she passed, the strange and unnatural crimes of which she was accused, and her mournful and tragical end, conspire to invest the narrative of her life with an inexpressible charm.

How long did Elizabeth continue Queen of England, and what was the general character of her reign?

The reign of Elizabeth was very long. It continued nearly fifty years. During all this time the affairs of the government were managed very successfully by the ministers of state that she employed. She was involved in several foreign wars, gained many victories, and carried on many great operations both by land and sea, in various quarters of the globe. She built and equipped fleets, erected fortresses, established colonies, sent exploring expeditions round the world, and opened new channels of commerce and trade. In a word, she was in all respects a great and powerful sovereign.

What was her personal character?

As a woman, she was exceedingly weak, vain, frivolous, and childish. She was extremely fond of dress and personal decorations, a trait which always denotes a weak and shallow mind. You will see, by the representation of her in the adjoining en-

graving, how she liked to load herself with finery. She was exceedingly plain in her face, and her selfishness and heartlessness

PORTRAIT OF QUEEN ELIZABETH.

made her manners disagreeable, and yet she was very vain and extremely fond of personal flattery. She was never so well pleased as when the gentlemen of her court complimented her on her beauty

and her personal charms, though every body knew that she possessed none whatever.

How did it happen that she was never married?

She had several pretended lovers during her reign. They wished to marry her for the sake of the exalted station they would attain to by being the husband of the Queen of England. Elizabeth was pleased with their attentions, and was often almost inclined to marry some one or other of them; but she was afraid that by so doing she should lose some portion of her power. Ambition was a stronger passion with her than love, and thus, although she was continually thinking of marriage, she continually postponed it, and the result was that she spent her life as a single woman.

Relate the circumstance of her giving the Earl of Essex a ring.

The last of Queen Elizabeth's favorites, one of the most distinguished characters of modern history, was the Earl of Essex. He enjoyed the queen's regard in a remarkable degree, and when he was in the height of his power and influence over her, she one day gave him a ring, saying that if at any future time he would send her that ring, she would pardon him any offense he might have committed. Essex took the ring, and said he should remember it.

What afterward became of Essex?

Years passed away, and at length Essex became involved in very serious political difficulties. There was a rebellion in Ireland, and Essex was sent to quell it. After a time, hearing that his enemies were plotting against him at court, he came home to London without permission. This offended the queen. She reproached him, and he answered her in resentful language. This led to a quarrel, and Essex began to form plans for ingratiating himself with the next heir to the crown, Elizabeth herself being now advanced in years. These schemes were discovered, and Essex was arrested through the influence of his enemies, tried for treason, and condemned to die.

What were the queen's thoughts and feelings in respect to Essex when she found that he was condemned to die?

The queen's anger against him was now appeased, and she wished to save him. "If he sends me the ring," said she to herself, "I will pardon him. If he is too proud and stubborn to do that, he must die." So she watched and waited, expecting every day that Essex would send the ring to her, but it did not come.

Did she allow the sentence to be executed, and why?

"He means to compel me to pardon him of my own accord," said she to herself, "without his sending me the ring, but I will let him know that I am as obstinate as he." So she continued to expect the ring to the very last day, but it did not come. The law was accordingly allowed to take its course, and Essex was beheaded.

How was it that Elizabeth did not receive the ring?

Essex *had* sent the ring. He gave it to a lady of the court, who promised to carry it to Elizabeth, but she did not do it. Her husband would not allow her to do it. Her husband was Essex's enemy, and did not wish that he should be pardoned, so he forbade his wife to deliver the ring.

What were the feelings of the queen when she learned the truth?

As soon as the excitement of the occasion, in respect to the execution of Essex, was over, the queen bitterly repented that she had not pardoned her favorite of her own accord. She thought of all her former love for him, and mourned his unhappy fate with many unavailing tears. The lady who had withheld the ring was made very wretched too by the recollection of her unfaithfulness to the trust which Essex had committed to her, and at length, two years afterward, when she was sick and about to die, she found that she could not leave the world in peace without seeing Elizabeth and making confession. So she sent for Elizabeth to come and see her, and then confessed her fault, gave up the ring, and humbly implored the queen's forgiveness.

Did the queen forgive the lady who withheld the ring?

Elizabeth, instead of being softened by the humility and remorse of the offender, was greatly enraged. She could scarcely control her passion. She shook the dying woman in her bed, saying, "Forgive you! God may forgive you if he pleases, but I never will."

What was the effect of this transaction on Elizabeth's mind?

The effect of this occurrence, added to all the other anxieties, disappointments, mortifications, and sorrows that had been long accumulating, and were now preying upon Elizabeth's mind, soon broke down her health and brought her to the grave. By her death the family of Henry the Eighth became extinct, and James, the son of Mary Queen of Scots, succeeded to the throne.

CHAPTER XII.

OVERTHROW OF THE MONARCHY.

What was the general condition of the people of England during the reigns that have been described?

During the period in which this long line of kings and queens had been ruling over England, the people of the country had been gradually improving in the arts and refinements of life, and the wealth and prosperity of the country had steadily increased. The wars and the civil commotions which the kingdom was plunged into from time to time, in consequence of the mismanagement of the government, or the quarrels of rival claimants to the throne, impeded this progress, but did not wholly prevent it. The country became more and more densely peopled. Towns and cities were built, and increased rapidly in wealth and population. Manufactories of various kinds were established, and considerable progress was made in many of the arts, especially in those relating to the manufacture of arms and armor, and the fabrication of stuffs for dress and of personal decorations.

What was the general condition of the mechanic arts?

The use of machinery and of steam, by means of which so much is accomplished at the present day, was not then known. Almost every thing was done by hand, and the various processes were, of course, effected at comparatively great disadvantage. The engraving represents the coining of money, as it was performed in those days, all the various processes, such as beating out the metal

PROCESS OF COINING.

into plates, cutting it into pieces of the proper size, and stamping it with the impression, being performed by hand. All this is done now by machinery, and is effected in a far more complete, rapid, and effectual manner.

What effects were produced by the religious dissensions that prevailed?

The struggle between the Protestants and the Catholics was protracted through several successive reigns, the government of the

country changing from one side to the other, according to the religion of the sovereign, and this depended altogether upon the influences under which the several princes were educated. Then, whatever was the religion of the government, those who dissented from it were persecuted in the most cruel and relentless manner. Some were imprisoned, some were branded with hot irons or otherwise tortured, and some were burned at the stake in sight of the king's palace, or in some public square of the city.

When at length the Reformation became established, what new class of religionists arose?

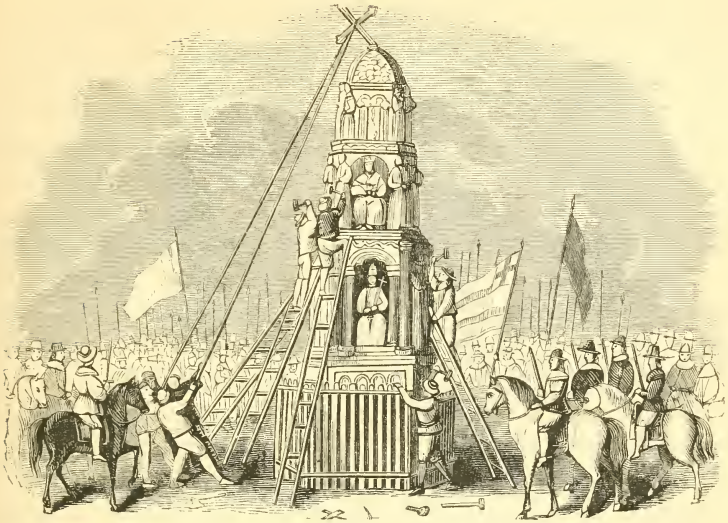
At length, after the Protestant religion had finally gained the ascendency, and the Episcopal Church of England became the established religion of the land, a considerable portion of the people began to dissent from that too. These persons were called Presbyterians, and Puritans, and sometimes Dissenters.

Describe the origin and the meaning of these different names.

They were called Presbyterians in allusion to the form of Church government that they adopted, which was a government of *presbyteries*. A presbytery is a body of pastors associated together. The Church of England, on the other hand, was governed by bishops. The term Puritans was used to denote that they claimed to have *purified* the Church entirely from all the rites and ceremonies of popery, while the Church of England retained a great many of them. Finally, they were called Dissenters because they dissented from the established religion of the country. The last name, *Dissenters*, is still retained, and denotes all in England who do not adhere to the Established Church.

What was the conduct of the Dissenters?

When at any time they gained a little power and ascendency, they resorted to force and violence in accomplishing their ends just as the others had done. They could not endure any thing that was connected in any way with the formalities and ceremonies of popery. In the opposite engraving we see a party of them



PURITANS PULLING DOWN A CROSS IN LONDON.

engaged in pulling down a cross from the top of a monument in the streets of London. They were determined to *purify* the Church from all these things, and it was on this account, as has already been said, that they received the name of Puritans.

Give an account of the controversy in respect to the use of the Scriptures.

In the course of the contest between the Catholics and the Protestants, one great cause of dissension related to the use of the Scriptures by the common people. The Catholics would not allow the people to read the Bible for themselves. It must be read and explained to the people, they said, by the priests. The Protestants, on the other hand, insisted on the people's reading and judging for themselves.

What curious custom was introduced to enable the people to read the Bible for themselves?

The art of printing was then so much in its infancy, that books

were very dear, and the people could not, as now, have copies at their own homes. It was accordingly the custom of the Protestants, when they had the ascendency, to put a copy of the Bible upon a sort of desk or stand in a church, in some place which was conveniently accessible — as newspapers are put up now at hotels and reading-rooms — for all persons to come and read who pleased. In order to prevent the book from being taken away, it was usual to secure it to the desk where it was placed by means of a chain, as is seen in the engraving.

BIBLE CHAINED IN A CHURCH.

Of course, when the Catholics came into power, this usage was at once abolished.

In whose reign did the controversy with the Dissenters reach its highest point?

The Puritans, and the other dissenters from the Established Church of England, became very numerous and strong in the time of Charles the First, who was the son of James the First, and his successor on the throne. Their numbers and their influence were greatly increased by the very measures which the king took to suppress them.

Explain the character and the views of King Charles the First.

King Charles was a very stern man, and he was fully convinced, no doubt, that he had a perfect right to govern his kingdom as he

thought best, and he did govern it, as long as he could keep at the head of it at all, with a very strong hand. The measures that he adopted excited a great deal of discontent, which increased from year to year, and was only aggravated by the king's efforts to suppress it, until it ended at last in open rebellion.

Explain the origin and the nature of Parliaments.

In this great contest, the body which acted in behalf of the people was the Parliament. The kings of England began to call Parliaments—that is, assemblies of men to give them counsel and assist them in framing laws—at a very early period; so early, indeed, that it is not now known when and how the custom originated. If the king was engaged in an important war, or if he wished rules and regulations to be made about any branch of trade, or if he had any large sums of money to raise, he would send orders to all the chief lords and barons, in the various parts of the kingdom, directing them to come to London, and also to all the principal towns and counties, and to the great ancient corporations, such as the universities, requiring them to choose men to send in their behalf.

In what manner did the Parliament transact business?

The persons thus summoned would meet in two separate councils, the lords in one, and the representatives of the towns, counties, and corporations in another, and then the king or his minister would send word to them what laws he wished to have passed or what measures adopted, and they would mature the laws or the measures, and write out the enactments in proper form, and at last, when they were ready, they would send them to the king. If the king approved of the acts as the Parliament had framed them, then he would say so, and the acts became laws. If he did not approve of them, he would say that he would think about it, and then they were dropped, and nothing more was ever heard of them.

What was the chief source of the power of the Parliament in their contests with the king?

In the course of several centuries, it came to be the establish-

ed custom and law of the land that the king could lay no taxes, nor collect any money of the people, in any of the usual ways, without the consent of Parliament, and thus the Parliament had the king in some measure in its power. So, when the contest began in the reign of King Charles between the king and the people, the struggle was carried on by the Parliament refusing to grant the king the money that he wanted to carry on his wars.

Give an account of Strafford and Laud.

The king's leading ministers at this time were Strafford and Laud. Strafford was a great minister of state. Laud was an archbishop, and was at the head of the Church. Strafford aided the king in his efforts to compel the people to submit to his authority in respect to the civil affairs of the kingdom, and Laud in respect to the affairs of the Church. The people and the Parliament resisted them both. The more they resisted, the more the king and his two great counselors were determined to make them submit; and the more severe the measures were that the government adopted, the higher the resentment and anger of the country were aroused.

How was the contest at last brought to a crisis?

At last, the general feeling of resentment and indignation became so overwhelming as to carry all before it, and one day the House of Lords were thunderstruck by the appearing of a messenger from the House of Commons at the door of their hall, saying that they accused the Earl of Strafford of high treason, and demanded his arrest and trial. Soon afterward Laud was arrested too, and thrown into prison.

What became of Strafford?

Strafford was tried and condemned to death. The king did all he could to save him, but the storm which he had awakened had got now entirely beyond his control, and he was compelled to sign the warrant for Strafford's execution to save his own life. On his way to the place of execution, Strafford passed under the win-

dow of the cell where Laud was confined, and he kneeled down on

STRAFFORD ON HIS WAY TO EXECUTION.

the pavement as he went by to receive the captive prelate's blessing and to bid him farewell.

What effect did the execution of Strafford produce in respect to the progress of the quarrel?

The king was now thoroughly alarmed. He began to assemble his troops, not knowing what was going to happen. The Parliament sent him word that they considered this assembling of troops as an act of hostility to the people, and they called upon him immediately to disband them. They also began at once to take measures for raising an armed force themselves. In a word, both sides began vigorously to prepare for war.

Describe the progress and result of the civil war.

It was not long before a great civil war broke out, which continued for several years, producing every where throughout the

kingdom a vast amount of confusion, distress, and sorrow. All the people of the country took sides. The nobles generally, and the Church of England, joined the king, while the common people, the merchants and artisans, and all the Presbyterians and Puritans, espoused the cause of the Parliament. The latter won the day.

What became of the king at the close of the war?

The king was driven from one place to another, his friends and adherents growing fewer and fewer all the time, until at last all hope was gone, and he gave himself up a prisoner. The place where he was finally imprisoned was a castle in the south of England, near the coast, called Carisbrooke Castle. Here the unhappy monarch remained some time, his friends all the while trying to plan some means of effecting his escape and restoring him to his throne.

Explain the circumstances which were connected with the trial of the king.

At last the king himself became somewhat implicated in these plans, and the Parliament, finding it out, caused him to be brought to London and tried, as Strafford had been, for high treason. He was tried in Westminister Hall, with great and solemn ceremony, by an assembly of sixty or seventy judges. The trial lasted several days. At the end of it, the fallen king was found guilty and condemned to die. Of course, the tidings of this result produced the greatest excitement throughout the kingdom.

What was the situation of his family at this time?

The king had a wife and four children. His wife and his two oldest children had escaped to France, but the two youngest were still in the palace. The king's parting with them was very sad and affecting. They could scarcely understand that their father was about to be killed.

Give an account of the preparations made for the execution.

When the day for the execution came, a scaffold was built against the side of the palace of Whitehall, toward the street, and

a passage-way to it was made through a window. There was a block upon the scaffold, which was covered with black cloth, with a very broad axe by the side of it. The executioners were there too, wearing masks upon their faces, in order that they might not be known. The scaffold was surrounded with soldiers, some on horseback and others on foot. Beyond them the streets were filled with crowds of people.

Give an account of the execution itself.

When the proper hour arrived, the king was brought out through the open window, and after a little time spent in prayers and the necessary preparations, the king laid his head upon the block, and one of the executioners severed it from the body at a single blow. The other executioner held it up in view of the people in the street, and cried out, "This is the head of a traitor."

What government was established by Parliament now that the royal power was overthrown?

The English monarchy was thus entirely overthrown, and the people, through the Parliament, were in possession of supreme power. They established a republic, which continued about twelve years. During a part of this time, the chief magistrate of the country was Oliver Cromwell, who governed under the title of Protector.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE RESTORATION.

Who were the Royalists, and what were now their views and intentions?

The party that favored the cause of the king were called Royalists, and this party, though now vanquished, was still very large and powerful. All the nobility were on that side, and thousands of other great families. These all abhorred the act of Parliament

in beheading the king, and considered it the greatest crime that could possibly be committed. They considered, too, that the crown now devolved at once upon the oldest son of the deceased king. His name was Charles too, and his title was accordingly Charles the Second. He was now in France.

What measures did they adopt?

The Royalists immediately began to hold private communications with Charles, and to concert schemes for bringing him into England again, and restoring him to his throne. At their secret meetings they would drink his health, styling him the king over the water. Very soon, too, a rebellion against the government of Parliament broke out in Ireland, and another in Scotland. Indeed, the Scottish people proclaimed Charles the Second king, and they raised an army to defend his rights.

Describe the character and doings of Oliver Cromwell.

Oliver Cromwell, who was the chief commander of the Parliamentary forces, soon put an end to these risings. He was a blunt, rough man, but extremely prompt and energetic in all that he did. The people called him Old Noll; and though they laughed at many things that he did, and especially at his way of doing them, still he was greatly respected for his talents and energy, and soon, as commander of the army, and leader in the execution of all the great measures that Parliament resolved upon, he rose to be more powerful than the Parliament itself.

In what way did he finally proceed to get the government into his own hands?

In the end, after he had managed so as to reduce the power of Parliament and its influence in the country to a very low point, he dissolved it entirely, and took the government into his own hands. He did this by coming into the Parliament House one morning with a company of soldiers, and sending all the members off. When they had all gone he came out himself, locked the door, and put the key in his pocket, and then the next day proclaimed

that the Parliament was dissolved. He afterward called a Parliament of his own, and governed England for many years extremely wisely and well, under the title of Protector. It is said that he wished to be king, but the people would not bear it.

Give an account of the expedition that the prince planned for recovering his kingdom.

About eighteen months after King Charles the First was beheaded, his son, the young prince who was now in France, conceived the design of invading England and endeavoring to recover his throne. So he gathered together a small army, as many as the King of France, whose guest he then was, could conveniently furnish him, and sailed with them for Scotland. He thought it best to land in Scotland first, and then to march down through the country into England. "All the people of the country will join me," said he, "as I pass along, and, therefore, the longer my march is, the greater my army will be."

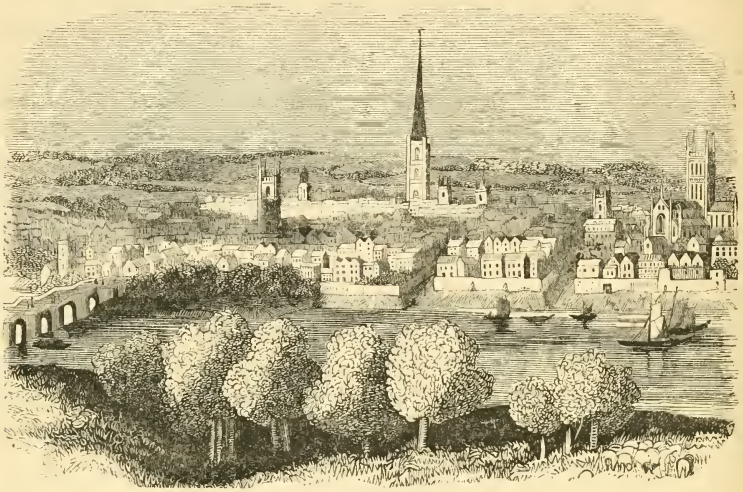
What occurred on the landing of the expedition in Scotland?

The expedition at the outset seemed to promise success. The Scotch received the king, on the whole, very well, though they were a little distrustful of him. They remembered how tyrannical and oppressive the father had been, and they were afraid to put themselves too much into the power of the son. They, however, concluded to receive him. They prescribed certain conditions on which they were willing to make him king of Scotland, and to aid him in recovering the English crown, and he, though very unwilling to make terms in this way with his subjects, finally concluded to accede to them. The people crowned him King of Scotland, and then raised an army for him to march into England with.

How far did Prince Charles afterward advance into England, and who then came out to meet him?

Charles put himself at the head of this army, crossed the frontier, and advanced without any mishap as far as to the town of Worcester. This was about half way from the Scotch frontier to London.

By the time the king had reached Worcester, and had estab-



VIEW OF WORCESTER.

lished himself in that town, Oliver Cromwell had collected his forces together, and was ready to meet him.

What was the result of the battle?

All England, and, indeed, all Europe, anxiously awaited the result. As might have been expected, Cromwell gained the victory. Charles's army had been very little increased during his march through the country. Some few people came to join him, but not many; so that Cromwell had only the troops that the king had brought with him from Scotland to contend with. These troops Cromwell attacked on all the great roads and approaches to the city, and conquered them at all points. Charles watched these battles from a steeple of a church within the town.

What part did the prince take in the battle, and what happened to him in attempting to get back into the town?

Charles at last went out himself, at the head of a troop of Highlanders, to see what he could do. He was beaten, the Highland-

ers were dispersed, and he fled back toward the city; but he could not get in. The gate was choked up by a great ammunition-cart that had got wedged up there, in consequence of one of the oxen having been killed. The troop that was with him were stopped. So he leaped from his horse, and scrambled in through the gate alone, on foot. He found every thing in the city in most dreadful confusion. Every body was giving up his cause, and preparing to fly.

How did he finally make his escape?

He gathered together a small number of attendants, obtained a fresh horse, and that evening, as soon as it began to be dark, he made his escape, and rode off for his life, across the country, by the most retired and solitary roads that he could find.

Describe the principal adventures which he met with during his flight.

He knew that if he should be caught he would be beheaded, as his father had been. So his great desire was to escape from the country altogether and get back to France. He finally succeeded in doing this, though in accomplishing the journey to the sea-coast he met with a series of the most extraordinary and romantic adventures and hair-breadth escapes. At one time he disguised himself as a servant, and dyed his face to make it look sunburnt. At another time he was a woodman, carrying a bill-hook in his hand. Often he traveled all night in the darkness and rain. The country was full of people hunting for him every where, and watching every suspicious-looking person, and several times he came very near being taken by them. He escaped only by the extreme watchfulness and care of his friends, especially those that belonged to the Royalist families that lived along the route that he was taking. These friends passed him along from one house to the other, conveying him in disguise, or by night, and concealing him carefully by day. It was very dangerous for them to do so, but they willingly incurred the hazard.

What kind of sufferings did he endure?

Sometimes his enemies and pursuers were so numerous, and so close upon his track, that he could not safely stay in any house, and then he was obliged to be content with the best shelter he could find in the woods. He suffered, of course, extremely from the hardship and exposure. Indeed, at one time he became so exhausted that it seemed as if he could not possibly go any farther. His feet were blistered and sore. His clothes were drenched with rain. His shoes were full of wet sand and gravel which he had got into them in wading across the streams. In a word, he was in the most forlorn and wayworn condition imaginable, and was reduced almost to despair.

Relate what happened at Boscobel.

He arrived, while in this plight, in a wood near a place called Boscobel, which belonged to one of his friends. His pursuers were in all the country around, and it was known that they would soon come to Boscobel, so that it would not be safe for him to stay in the house. He went in, however, for a little time, to get warmed and dried, and to eat some supper. It was necessary, however, that every thing should be done in the utmost haste, and so, to dry the king's shoes, the good woman of the house poured hot ashes into them from the fire, while the king ate hurriedly the supper which they had provided for him.

How did the people conceal the prince at Boscobel?

The people knew that it would not be safe to keep the king in the house except for a very short time, as a band of soldiers were expected every hour, who would certainly search the house very thoroughly to find the fugitive. So they took him out into a field, and hid him in the top of an oak tree, and there he remained all the next day, peeping out from time to time through the branches and leaves, watching the soldiers who were searching for him. He had one companion with him, an officer of his army, who was assisting him in his flight. While the king remained in the tree,

KING CHARLES AT BOSCOBEL.

he rested on a sort of cushion, which the officer placed for him in the best position he could find among the branches.

What became of the prince at last?

When night came, the king and his companion descended from the tree and went into the house again, and soon afterward continued their flight. They journeyed on in this manner, secretly, from the residence of one faithful adherent to another, encountering many perplexities, and narrowly escaping many dangers, until at last they reached the sea-coast, and here, after a great deal of management and manœuvering, they succeeded in embarking on board a small vessel, and making their escape to France.

What was the character of Cromwell himself, and of his government of the country?

After this, Cromwell continued to govern the country, as a republic or commonwealth, for several years, he himself being the chief ruler of it, under the name and style of Protector. His ad-

ministration was very able and very successful. He was a man of great powers of mind, and of great honesty and integrity of purpose. He was engaged in several foreign wars, but he conducted them all to a speedy and successful termination. In a word, England never had a more honest or capable ruler.

Give an account of the manner in which Charles was finally raised to the throne.

At length Cromwell died, and there was nobody to succeed him strong enough to fill his place. The country was in great confusion. There was a party for the Parliament, a party for the army, and a party for the king. At length, the people of the country, tired of being without any head, sent to Charles the Second in France, inviting him to come to England and reascend the throne of his fathers. The king came at once. He landed at Dover, where he was joyfully received. Thus the monarchy was restored.

LANDING OF CHARLES THE SECOND AT DOVER.

What was the character of Charles the Second, and how did he reign?

It might have been supposed that the king would have been somewhat sobered by his misfortunes and sorrows, and that the dreadful fate which his father had met with would have taught him a useful lesson. But all this experience seems to have been entirely lost upon him. Instead of devoting himself to the government of his kingdom, and the promotion of the welfare of his subjects, he gave himself up, as soon as he got possession of his throne, to every species of reckless dissipation and wickedness, and soon made his palace and his court the mockery of the world, for the open and shameless vices that reigned there.

How did he usually spend his time?

The king himself spent his time in drinking, reveling, and in all sorts of disgraceful carousals with the very worst of company. He filled his palace with shameless women, and insulted his wife with intruding them upon her, and forcing her to receive them, and tormented her in this way to such a degree that her life was a perfect burden to her. All this he did in the most barefaced and impudent way, violating the moral sense of the whole country without any compunction, and glorying in his shame. Many of the people of the country highly disapproved of this conduct, but they dreaded another revolution so much that they did not complain.

What sort of measures did his government adopt in respect to the religion of the country?

At the same time, his government resorted to the most harsh and tyrannical measures to promote what they considered the cause of religion. They enacted the severest laws against all that did not worship according to the usages of the Established Church. It was three months' imprisonment for any person to attend any religious service not according to the Prayer-book, and all the dungeons in the jails were crowded with persons confined under this law.

What was the first of the great calamities that signalized his reign?

The reign of this king was signalized, too, by some of the greatest calamities that ever befell the kingdom of England. The wars with foreign nations were disastrous in their results. At one time a fleet of the enemies' ships came up the River Thames almost to London, burning and destroying every thing in their way. The whole city was thrown into a state of the greatest possible panic and confusion, and narrowly escaped being destroyed. The fleet was, however, at length compelled to retire.

Give an account of the plague of London.

Then there was the great plague of London, which took place in this reign, during which a hundred thousand people died miserably, and scenes of horror were witnessed in all the streets and dwellings of the city utterly indescribable. The infected houses were marked with a red cross, and with the words "Lord have mercy upon us" inscribed upon them. The streets were deserted, except that carts went rumbling round at night, with men ringing bells and calling out, "Bring out your dead." These carts came to get the bodies in order to carry them away and bury them. They buried them by torch-light in great pits, and without any funeral service or ceremony whatever.

Give an account of the great fire.

Then, besides the plague, there was a great fire. This fire was one of the greatest conflagrations ever known. It broke out first in a little shop near the water, and thence it spread in every direction, and all attempts to stop it were unavailing. The houses were all built of wood, and the summer having been very hot and dry, they burned like stubble. The fire raged three days, and a large part of the city was destroyed. There were not houses enough left in the city to contain the people thus expelled from their homes, and so, for a long time after the fire, they were obliged to live in bivouac upon the ruins.

How did the king at last come to his end?

Thus it seemed, during the whole of this reign, as if the wickedness of the king and his court was bringing down the special judgments of Heaven on the country. But all had no effect on the minds of the guilty ones. Indeed, the king grew worse and worse the longer he lived, and at length, after reigning in this miserable manner for twenty-five years, he was suddenly brought to his death in the midst of some of his carousals by a stroke of apoplexy.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE REVOLUTION.

Who was Charles the Second's successor, and what was his character?

It would seem to be impossible that there could be a worse king or more despicable man than Charles the Second, and yet his brother James proved to be worse; or, at all events, he was more despised and hated by the English people. His character, and the measures of his government, awakened so strong and general a feeling of indignation, that the country rose at last by common consent, and drove him out of the kingdom. They then established another prince upon the throne in his stead, excluding him and his posterity forever.

Why were the people unwilling that James should become king?

The people were extremely unwilling that King James should reign at all, on account of his being of the Catholic religion, and also on account of his morose and gloomy character. He had been brought up a Catholic from his childhood, and the people expected that, as soon as he should succeed to the throne, he would attempt to bring the government and the people of the country to

the Catholic religion again, and in doing this, they knew, from his character, that he would persecute those who opposed him with the most relentless cruelty.

What rival claimant was there to the crown, and what were the reasons that led a portion of the people to prefer him?

They very much regretted, therefore, that James was the heir to the crown. But he unquestionably was the heir, for Charles had no children that were entitled to succeed him, and James, being Charles's brother, was of course next in succession. There was a nobleman nearly related to Charles, named the Duke of Monmouth. He was a very agreeable man, and a great favorite with all the people, and he conceived himself better entitled to the throne than James. He was a Protestant too, and so a large portion of the people preferred that he should be king.

Describe the attempt that Monmouth made to gain the crown, and the result of it.

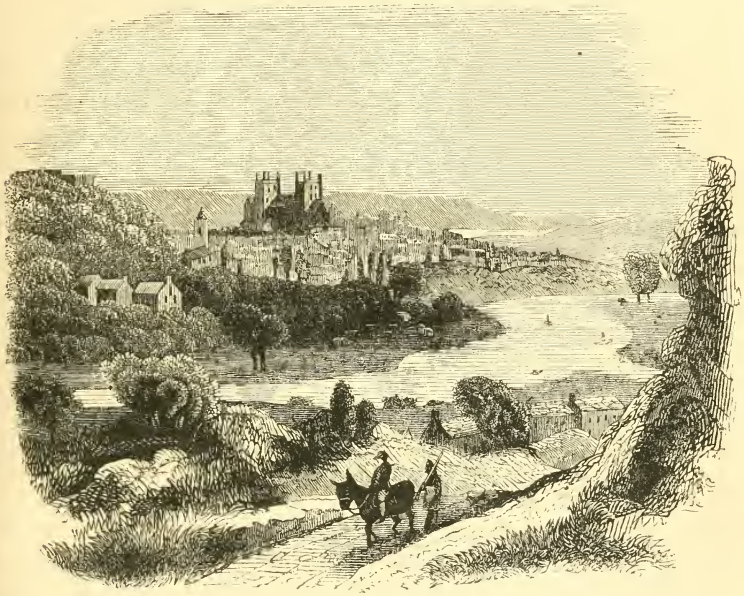
Some time after James began to reign, Monmouth raised a rebellion, and induced a great portion of the people in the southern and western parts of the island to join him. The rebellion, however, was soon suppressed by James's armies, and Monmouth was taken prisoner. He was condemned to death, and was beheaded on a block, just as King Charles the First had been, only in his case the executioner had to strike three or four times before he succeeded in severing the head from the body. It was a horrid spectacle.

Who was Judge Jeffries?

The first great display which James made of the cruelty of his disposition was in the measures which he took to punish the people in that part of the country which had been the scene of the rebellion. He sent an infamous judge named Jeffries there, to try the people who were supposed to have taken part in it, and this judge performed the work with such terrible injustice and cruelty that his very name has been ever since universally abhorred.

Give an account of Jeffries's proceedings at Exeter.

One of the principal scenes of his cruelty was Exeter, a beautiful town situated in a very romantic spot on the River Wye, in



VIEW OF EXETER.

the south of England. There was a list of several hundred prisoners to be tried, and their cases were disposed of in the most brutal and summary manner possible. One man pleaded not guilty, and the judge ordered him to be taken out of court and hanged instantly. This so terrified the rest that they generally pleaded guilty at once. Indeed, to plead guilty afforded almost the only chance to the poor wretches of obtaining any sort of mercy. Great numbers were hung. The bodies of these were cut into pieces, and then dropped into caldrons of boiling pitch or tar, and hung up around the roadsides, in the streets, and at the very doors of the churches, as a terror to the people.

What did James think and say of Jeffries's conduct?

King James was greatly pleased with these atrocities committed by his judge. He called the expedition Jeffries's campaign; and if the slaughter of great multitudes of men is all that is necessary to make an expedition a campaign, this certainly was one. The people of the country, however, called it for many a long year afterward the Bloody Assize, and told the story of it to their children, shuddering.

Describe the measures that James resorted to for restoring the Catholic religion, and the effects of them.

As soon as the rebellion was subdued, and the unhappy people who had taken, or were supposed to have taken, a part in it had been thus terribly punished, King James commenced a series of violent and oppressive measures to force back the kingdom of England into communion with the Catholic Church. The bishops of the Church of England began to oppose these measures. This irritated the king, and he seized six of the bishops, and sent them in barges down the river to the Tower. The people then took sides with the bishops. They assembled in immense numbers on the banks of the rivers, when the barges went by, to express their sympathy with the bishops, and their undiminished confidence in them by asking their blessing. This made the king more angry than ever, and thus there was a great deal of trouble.

How was it that the birth of James's son was a matter of political importance?

About this time the king had a son born. It might be supposed that this would be an event of no importance whatever in respect to these great public disputes and commotions, but it really was of the highest possible importance. Until this son was born the people were contented to wait patiently in their troubles, for the king's other children were daughters, and were both Protestants, and they thought that James, who was now somewhat advanced in life, would not live very long, and that then one of his daugh-

ters would succeed to the throne, and all the difficulty would be over. But now, since a son was born, all this bright prospect was at once clouded. The boy, they knew, would be brought up a Catholic, and, of course, when he came to reign instead of his father, he would walk in his father's steps.

What determination did the nobles form in this crisis?

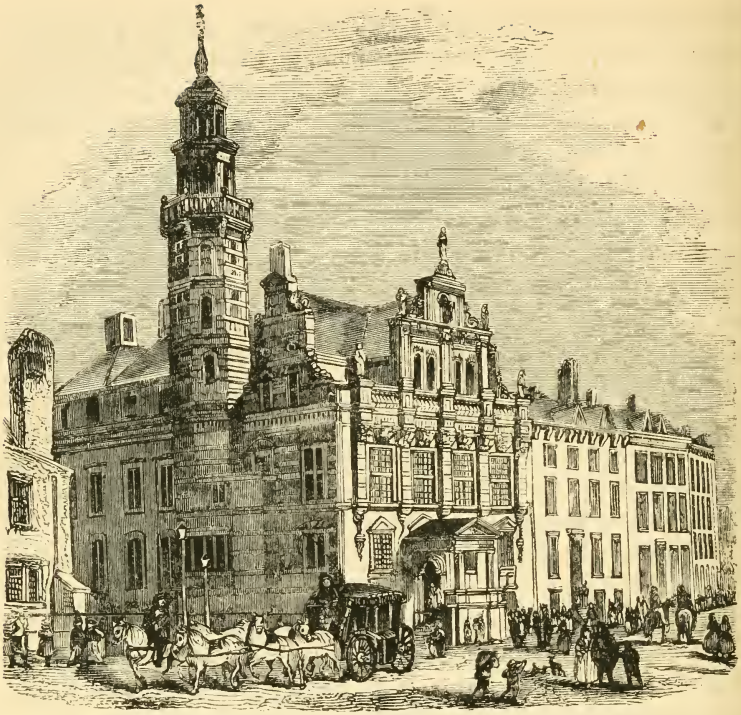
The leading nobles of the country determined to wait no longer, but to bring things to a crisis at once by deposing the king, and putting some Protestant member of the family on the throne in his stead. They did not now undertake, as they had done in King Charles the First's time, to revolutionize the government entirely, by dethroning the king and establishing a republic, but only to change the person of the sovereign by making some Protestant prince the king. This they thought they could easily do, especially if the prince so brought should be a descendant of the English royal line.

Who was the Prince of Orange, and what was his situation at this time?

The most celebrated Protestant ruler in Europe at this time was a prince named William of Orange. He was the stadtholder, as it was called—that is, a sort of king—of the Netherlands. Now it happened very fortunately that this William was closely related to the English royal line. He was himself a grandson of King Charles the First, his mother having been King Charles's daughter. Then, besides this, his wife was the daughter of King James. She was a Protestant, as has already been said.

How did the people of England contrive to open the negotiation with him?

So the people of England determined to confer the crown on William and Mary, and they secretly sent word to William that if he would come to England with a fleet and an army, they would make him king. William was a great and powerful prince before this in his own native country of the Netherlands. The engraving



WILLIAM OF ORANGE IN HIS CARRIAGE AT THE HAGUE.

represents him about to take a ride in his carriage in one of his cities in Holland. The cities of Holland were very wealthy in those days, and the nation was very powerful, both in fleets and armies. Indeed, in the wars that were then raging between the Catholic and Protestant nations of Europe, William of Orange was the great champion of the Protestant cause; and this was one great reason why the people of England desired to have him become their king.

Describe the circumstances of his coming to England, and the manner in which he was received.

He accepted the invitation, and, after fitting out a great fleet and

army, he came to England. The people who were not in the secret of the movement were astonished to see this vast armament coming to their shores. They had supposed that the preparations which they knew that William had been making were intended for some expedition against the French, with whom he was then at war. But when they saw the immense fleet, extending miles over the sea, coming through the straits between Dover and Calais, and then coasting along the southern shores of England, they were at first greatly surprised, and then, as soon as the rumor spread among them what the expedition was, and what was its destination and object, they were filled with joy. The ships sailed so near the shore that the people that assembled on the headlands could see the waving banners, and hear the bands of music playing on the decks in the morning air, and they responded with long and joyful shouts and acclamations.

What became of James and his party?

King James himself was greatly terrified. He sent off his little son, the Prince of Wales, whose birth had hastened this threatened revolution, to the southern coast, with a view of conveying him to France, and then immediately began to take hurried measures to concentrate his forces for the defense of his kingdom. But he found that he could not rely upon any of his men, either officers or soldiers. One division after another forsook him and went over to the enemy. Even those whom he had considered his most intimate and devoted friends went with the rest.

Give an account of the manner in which his daughter and his son-in-law deserted him.

One night, in the midst of his troubles, he had two of his confidants to sup with him. One of them was his son-in-law, the husband of his daughter Anne. They sat late, and discussed with the king all his plans; and then, when the king came to inquire for them in the morning, he learned that, as soon as they had left his table, they had taken horse and ridden off to join the Prince

of Orange. Anne herself, his daughter, soon went away too. She made her escape from the palace in the night. The king, when he heard of it, exclaimed, "God help me! my very children have forsaken me."

Describe the subsequent progress of the Revolution.

Thus things went on. The whole country was in a state of wild excitement. The Roman priests and monks, who had surrounded James in his prosperity, now, foreseeing what was in store for them, fled in all directions. Towns and cities all along the southern coast were issuing proclamations and declarations for the new king; while the more violent of the Protestants broke out into open violence in many parts of the kingdom, and added to the general confusion by pulling down crosses, and burning Roman Catholic convents and chapels with mobs and rioting.

What became of the family of the king?

The king's son—the little Prince of Wales—was first sent to Portsmouth, in order to be carried out of the country, but he was stopped and brought back to London. The king himself now became greatly alarmed for his own personal safety. He gave up all hope of retaining his kingdom, and only hoped to find some means of escaping with his wife and son. So he sent the queen and the infant prince across the Thames in the night to Lambeth palace. The queen was disguised as an Italian lady. At Lambeth the two fugitives were put into a coach, and conveyed as rapidly as possible to Gravesend, near the mouth of the Thames, and there sent in a yacht to Calais. The king himself, after much difficulty, succeeded in following them.

Relate what occurred in the mean time in respect to the Prince of Orange.

In the mean time, the Prince of Orange had landed from his fleet, and was received by distinguished personages of the kingdom, who awaited him on the shore, and hailed him with the utmost joy and satisfaction.

LANDING OF WILLIAM, PRINCE OF ORANGE.

In what manner did James attempt to make his escape from the country, and why did he not succeed?

As for the king, he met with a series of the most remarkable adventures in his attempt to escape to France. His object was to get, as soon as possible, across the Channel. The boat that he first put off in from the English coast did not succeed in making the voyage at all. The captain found, soon after he left the shore, that his vessel was not properly ballasted, so that there was danger of her being upset in case a wind should arise. Accordingly, after going a little way down the mouth of the Thames, he turned

to the land again at an island on the coast called Sheppey Island, in order to get more ballast.

Give an account of what happened at Sheppey Island.

Here a rabble of people, consisting of fishermen, smugglers, and sailors, saw the king on board the boat. They knew that he was some stranger, and they began to pull him about and make fun of him, calling him a hatchet-faced Jesuit and other such names. Then he made himself known to them, saying he was their king, and begged them to let him alone, but this made little difference. Indeed, the king was so terrified and so broken down by his misfortunes and sorrows that he seemed like a complete wreck. One moment he would threaten his persecutors, then he would fall on his knees and implore their mercy. He said the Prince of Orange was seeking his life, and he begged them to save him. Then he would shout out, "A boat! A boat!" like an insane man. Finally, he contrived to get some paper and write a note to the lieutenant of the county. The lieutenant came with a force, and, finding who the stranger was, took him out of the hands of his tormentors and sent him back to London.

How did the king finally make his escape?

The government were sorry to have him back again. They would have much preferred to have had the people of the coast let him go. So they made no effort to confine him, and in a few days he escaped again, and this time he succeeded in getting safe to France.

How was the government settled after the flight of the king?

The English Parliament then decreed that James, since he had abandoned the country, was to be considered as having abdicated the crown, and they proceeded to settle the crown upon William and Mary, the Prince and Princess of Orange, and their successors forever. They also, at the same time, made some considerable changes in the constitution of the kingdom, so as very much to curtail and limit the power of the kings, and secure

greater influence and control to the nobles, and greater liberty to the people.

Give an account of the efforts which James made to recover his kingdom.

James afterward made an effort to recover his kingdom, but he did not succeed. The King of France furnished him with an army, and with it he landed in Ireland, but the people were against him, and his army was defeated. He himself, after the battle, made his escape to France, and there he ended his days in great seclusion. His son James then pretended that he was by right the king of England, and he made an effort too to recover the crown. He was called the Pretender. He made his landing in Scotland, but he was as unsuccessful as his father, and was obliged to return to France and spend his days there a private man.

Who were the principal kings of the Stuart line?

This was the end of what is called in history the Stuart line. Stuart was the family name of the kings of Scotland. It came from the fact that the ancestors of that house were originally hereditary stewards of some ancient royal line. There were four kings of the Stuart line in the English succession, James the First, Charles the First, Charles the Second, and James the Second. The whole history of this line is that of one continued struggle for the possession of despotic power over the people of England.

CHAPTER XV.

THE ENGLISH ARISTOCRACY.

What great change took place in the practical operation of the government after the Revolution?

It was mainly through the power and influence of the great families, the descendants of the principal generals and officers of state who came over with William the Conqueror, that King William

was invited over from Holland, and his branch of the royal line was established on the throne; and it was they that imposed the terms and restrictions under which he should reign. These terms and restrictions were such that the power of the government, in a short time after the Revolution, passed almost entirely from the hands of the kings to that of the nobles. These nobles are called collectively the English aristocracy. They constitute the most wealthy and powerful band of aristocrats in the world.

What position do the aristocracy occupy?

They feel entirely above the mass of the people, and never associate with them, except in some few and rare cases, in the smallest degree. The mass of the people, on the other hand, look up to them with the profoundest veneration and awe.

Describe their mode of life.

They live in great castles and palace-like halls, scattered here and there over the country. Each one owns an immense territory of land, and the farmers and tenants who cultivate the ground have to pay to him a large share of the value of what they raise for rent. This enables them to live in great splendor, without having any thing to do. The only business they *will* do is attending to the care of their estates, and to the government of the country.

In what light do they regard the industrial pursuits of the community?

Indeed, most of them are so proud and haughty that they would almost rather starve than be engaged, even indirectly, in any useful employment of commerce or manufactures. Although the power and prosperity of the country rests entirely on its commerce and manufactures, and it is only through the wealth-producing power of these pursuits that they can get their own rents from their tenants, still they seem to despise every one who is in any way connected with business of this kind, and call them, contemptuously, *tradesmen*. The mass of the people, however, seem to submit to this ill treatment very patiently. Instead of com-

plaining, they seem rather pleased that there is in their country so exalted a class to crown and adorn their system of society.

Explain the system of government by which the aristocracy exercise their control.

The aristocracy govern the country through Parliament. They themselves constitute the House of Lords, and they have power and influence enough to control the House of Commons, so that both houses virtually represent the upper classes alone. They have arranged it so that the king can not carry on the government himself. He must appoint ministers to do it. But the ministers can do nothing without Parliament, for Parliament supplies all the money. Thus, if the ministers do not do what pleases Parliament, they are obliged immediately to resign, and no other minister will take their places except such as are willing to do what Parliament wishes, for they know it would be useless.

What is the position of the sovereign under this system?

Thus the king, as the sovereign, is entirely powerless. It is the same with the queen. She lives in splendid palaces, and is followed by a magnificent retinue, and expends a vast amount of money, and is looked up to by the nation at large as a sort of ideal head—a focus, as it were, for the concentration of the rays of patriotism and loyalty, while the aristocracy alone govern the land.

What is the law of primogeniture, and what is the operation of it?

The aristocracy of England is rendered permanent from generation to generation by the law of primogeniture. Primogeniture means *first birth*, and the law of primogeniture ordains that when a nobleman dies, all his landed estate, the property from which he derives his annual wealth and all his importance, is not divided among his children, but goes entire to the oldest son. Were it not for this, these great estates would soon be divided up, and the families of the aristocracy would descend to the general level of society. The law of primogeniture, however, holds

the property together, and hands it down from one generation to another entire. The law is expressly intended for the purpose of thus maintaining the ascendency of the privileged class, from generation to generation, through all time.

What becomes of the younger sons of the aristocracy?

The younger sons of the aristocracy are not left entirely destitute, for their fathers, though they can not give them any share of the ancient family inheritance, can still, if they please, lay up and save something for them from their annual income. Then there are three employments which they can engage in that are considered genteel, and only three. They may enter the army, or the navy, or the Church.

How are the army, the navy, and the Church managed so as to sustain this system?

It is partly to provide places and income for the younger sons of the nobility that the army, and the navy, and the Church of England have been organized on their present footing. They are all arranged on the grandest scale, and in all the higher ranks of each the pay and emoluments are very great. All these offices are kept closely reserved for the families and relatives of the aristocracy. The industrial class throughout the kingdom are, with very few and rare exceptions, entirely excluded from them.

What has been the general condition of the kingdom under the government of the aristocracy?

The English aristocracy has controlled the government of the country now for about one hundred and fifty years, and during this time the greatness, power, and wealth of the kingdom has risen to a higher elevation, perhaps, than any nation ever attained before.

What is the true foundation of this prosperity?

The secret of this apparent prosperity and success is, not the wise and good management of the governing classes, but the immense power that has been put into their hands through the national wealth created by the producing classes.

How has the government itself been managed?

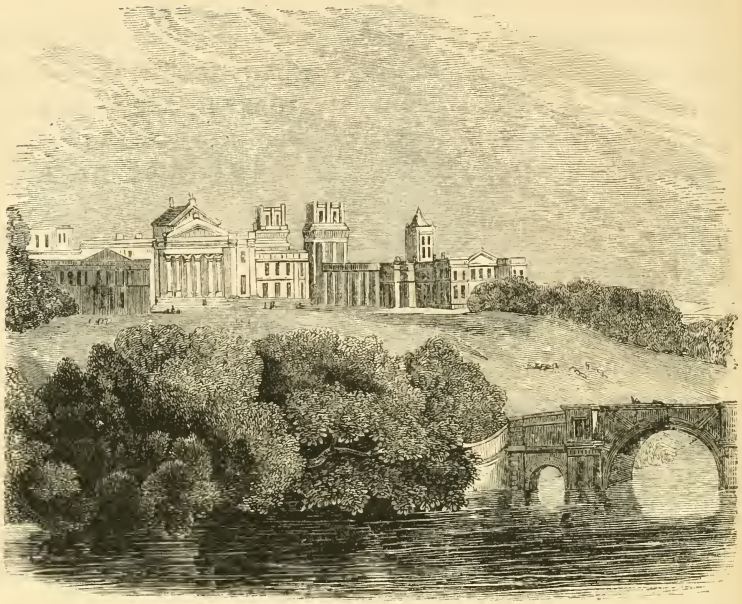
The government itself has still been managed with great ability. The army and navy have usually been victorious in all the wars that England has been engaged in. By means of them the power of the kingdom has been extended all over the world, and immense extents of country have been brought under British sway, and are now held as possessions or colonies.

What is the system of rewards offered to distinguished public servants?

Many very great and distinguished commanders have arisen from time to time, and have acquired a very exalted military fame. The government have encouraged these efforts by rewarding successful generals and statesmen in the most profuse and generous manner. They raise them to the highest rank of the nobility, and grant them immense estates, and render to them, during all the remainder of their lives, the most distinguished honors. On the following page is an engraving representing a palace built at the expense of the government for one of these heroes, the Duke of Marlborough, who flourished in the reign of Queen Anne. The name of the palace is Blenheim House. It was so named in commemoration of one of the duke's greatest battles, which was fought at a place on the Continent called Blenheim.

What are the two great sources of the mechanical and manufacturing power of Great Britain?

While England has been thus, for the last century and a half, extending its power externally all over the world, it has been advancing still more rapidly in internal wealth and prosperity. Indeed, it is undoubtedly to the increase of wealth, and of mechanical and manufacturing power within the country, that its external prosperity is mainly owing. In the northwestern part of the island there lie immense beds of iron and coal, at a distance of a few hundred feet below the surface, and these mines, opened and worked with the skill and energy that characterize the English people,



JOHN CHURCHILL'S PRESENT.

have proved an inexhaustible source of wealth and power. The people have exercised a great deal of inventive genius, too, in turning these resources to good account. They have invented the steam-engine, and the spinning-jenny, and the power-loom, and a multitude of other labor-saving engines, by which a few men, with the help of coal, can do the work of thousands. It is the coal, and not the steam, that is the real source of power. The steam is only the vehicle of it.

Describe the situation and the appearance of the manufacturing district.

In the northwestern part of England there is a large tract of country that is entirely covered with these mining and manufacturing establishments. Every valley is filled with villages of workshops and forges. Tall chimneys, pouring out great volumes of

ENGLISH IRON-WORKS.

dense black smoke day and night, rise every where into the air, and little railways, like a complicated network, with trains of coal-vans, iron-vans, and cars loaded with every other species of merchandise, cover the ground. The sound of the hammer and the puff of steam fill the air by day, while lurid fires, illuminating the whole horizon, glow at night. The spectacle is truly sublime.

Describe the commercial system of England.

Besides her manufacturing arts, England has been greatly enriched, also, by commerce. The merchants have built ships, and sent them all over the world to buy the products of every land, and bring them home to the immense docks and depôts that they have established in Liverpool and London. There the whole world comes to buy, and thus England has made herself the centre, as it were, of the commerce and navigation of the whole human race.

What important checks has the progress of the British empire received?

These are the true elements of the wealth, prosperity, and pow-

er of England, and through their influence the grandeur of the kingdom, and its influence in the world, have been steadily increased ever since the aristocracy came into power. The empire has, however, met with some checks and reverses. The most important, perhaps, of all was the separation of the American colonies from the mother country in 1776.

What was the cause of the separation of the colonies from the mother country?

The cause of this separation was, that these colonies became very strong, and at last they found themselves unwilling to be any longer governed by a company of proud nobles three thousand miles away, in the only way in which the English aristocracy could govern them consistently with their general system—that is, by keeping the power entirely in their own hands, and compelling the colonies to submit. The colonies insisted that if they were taxed to pay the general expenses of the empire, they ought to have a voice in the government. This the aristocracy could not accede to without departing entirely from their principle, which was, that the empire should be ruled by the privileged class, since there were none of that class in the colonies. This dispute ended in a war, and the war ended in separating the colonies from the mother country, and establishing in America a separate and independent government.

PART III.

AMERICAN HISTORY.

THE STORY OF HISTORY.

PART III.

AMERICAN HISTORY.

CHAPTER I.

THE ABORIGINES.

What was the condition of the American continent when it was first discovered?

The word Aborigines means the original inhabitants of any country. The Aborigines of America were Indians. Before the country was discovered by the Europeans it was quite thickly inhabited, through the whole extent of it, by a great many distinct nations or tribes of Indians. They lived, in a great measure, like wild animals.

Describe the general characteristics of the Indians.

The different nations and tribes of these Indians were very distinct from each other, while yet there was a general resemblance among them all. Their faces were of a copper color, and their hair was long, black, and straight. Their cheek-bones were high, and this gave their countenances a peculiar and a singular expression.

What words of their language still remain in use among us?

The different nations spoke different languages, and yet there was a general resemblance among all, as if all had proceeded from one origin. They had names for all the great rivers, lakes, mountains, and other natural features of the country. Some of the names of places in use at the present day are Indian names. Other places have been named anew by the English or French people who discovered and settled the country.

How does it happen that many of the Indian names are so long?

Some of the Indian names are these: Kennebec, Androscoggin, Monadnoc, which is a mountain, Mississippi, Missouri, Cayuga, Michigan, Michilimackinac, Ompompanoosuc. Some of the names are pretty long. The reason is that they are made up of several different words, as the Indians spoke them, while we write them as one word; just as if the Indians were to go to England, where there is a place called The Elephant and Castle, and were to write and call it Elephantandcastle, or were to call The mouth of the River The Mouthoftheriver.

What examples can you give of English names of places substituted for the Indian ones?

Europeans thus retained many of the Indian names of the places in this country, but to other places they gave names of their own. These are some of the names of their own which they gave: the White Mountains, the Green Mountains, Hudson River, New York. The Indian name for the place where New York now stands was Manhattan.

Which are generally to be preferred, the English or the Indian names?

Some persons like the Indian names best, but others think they have an uncouth and barbarous sound. At any rate, by reading them, we form some idea of the sound of the language which the Indians used.

Describe the wigwams that the Indians lived in.

The Indians were accustomed to live in huts which they called wigwams. These were made in various ways, but were always light and easily taken to pieces, in order that they might be removed from place to place, as the Indians rambled about in search of game. On the opposite page is a view of three or four Indian wigwams standing on the bank of a stream. The frames of them are made, as you see, by poles set in the ground, and tied together

WIGWAMS.

at the top, and they are covered with sheets formed of cloth, or of the bark of trees, or mats, or some other suitable material, such as the Indians could make or procure. There is a small opening left on one side to serve as a door. The interior of these wigwams would seem to us to be comfortless enough. And they must have been really comfortless to the Indians sometimes, especially when all the family were driven into them by cold weather or storms.

They could have a fire, it is true, but there was no chimney other than an opening in the roof to allow the smoke to go out.

INTERIOR OF A WIGWAM.

Did they possess any means of navigation?

The Indians liked very much to build their wigwams on the banks of rivers and lakes, and they liked, too, to travel on rivers and lakes in going from place to place in search of new hunting-grounds. For this purpose, they used to make boats in various ways.

What were the different ways they had of making boats?

One way was to cut down a tree with a stone hatchet, and then fashion the trunk of it into the form of a boat. We see such a boat as this in the picture of the wigwams. Another way of making boats which the Indians practiced was to make a frame of slender withes of wood, and then cover it with sheets of birch bark. This birch bark is very thin and flexible. It peels off from the

tree almost like paper. The Indians make very light and tight boats in this way.

Give an account of the way in which they managed in removing from place to place.

When they could find no more animals to hunt in the place where they were, they would take down their wigwams, and roll up the coverings, and put them in their boats, and then take their wives and children, and the few household implements they possessed, and sail away to some new place where there was a probability that game might be more plentiful. The poles of their wigwams they would leave behind.

What were their modes of taking game?

The Indians had two ways of taking the animals they required for food. One way was to catch them in traps, and the other way was to shoot them with bows and arrows, or kill them with spears. The business of hunting, and also of fighting the other tribes in case of war, belonged to the men. All other kinds of work belonged to the women.

What was their idea of dress?

The men, in time of war, felt great pride in adorning themselves with gay dresses, and in fabricating arms of nice workmanship. The engraving below represents a party of Indian warriors ready to

INDIAN WARRIORS.

go forth to battle, as they appear at the present day. Their arms consist of bows and arrows, battle-axes, clubs, and one of them has a gun. The gun, of course, the Indians did not make themselves. They purchase such things as these of white persons now, and before the whites came they had no guns. Observe how they have ornamented their persons with feathers and embroidery. One of them has a scalp in his hand, which he has taken from the head of his enemy.

How do mankind generally seem to regard the work of war?

One would suppose that the work of going forth to kill his fellow-creatures, if man could ever be induced to consider it his duty at all, would seem to him the most painful and distressing duty that he could possibly be called upon to perform; but, instead of this, there is nothing that man seems so to rejoice in. In all nations, savage and civilized, he decks himself, when he is going out to fight and kill, in the most gay and gaudy colors, and provides the most animating music, and takes leave of his friends and his home with songs and dances, and fêtes of rejoicing, as if the dreadful occupation before him filled him with anticipations of delight.

What were the opinions of the Indians in respect to the different pursuits of life?

The Indians were proud and happy when they were engaged in combat with the tribes around them. Next to these wars they were best pleased with hunting, for this was a species of fighting, the wild animals in the forests that they pursued being looked upon somewhat as foes. They, however, despised all labor. They sometimes possessed fields of corn, but they compelled the women to plant and hoe it, and to perform all other domestic labors. They would themselves do nothing when at home except make bows and arrows, or carve ornaments upon their clubs, or fashion other warlike weapons. To hunt and to fight was honorable, but labor in any branch of useful industry they considered beneath them.

Is there any thing analogous to this among civilized nations?

There is a large class of aristocratic personages in many highly civilized countries who entertain the same ideas. They are willing to hunt and fight, and to rule over and govern other men, but they look with scorn on every species of peaceful industry. This is particularly the case in the monarchical countries of Europe. The aristocracy of England have always entertained these ideas, and perhaps never more strongly than at the present day.

What Indian nations attained to some degree of civilization?

In Mexico and in some parts of South America there were several aboriginal nations that had made great advances in civilization before America was discovered by the Europeans. They had built towns, palaces, and temples, and had made great advances in many of the arts of life; but those that lived within the present limits of the United States were mere wandering tribes, that existed almost altogether on the natural productions of the forest, and possessed scarcely any permanent habitations.

What became of the Indians and of their lands when the Europeans came to settle in the country?

When America was discovered and began to be settled by the whites, the Indians were gradually forced to retire from those parts of the country which the white men occupied. Sometimes the white men would *buy* the lands of the Indians, paying them in blankets, knives, axes, guns, gunpowder, and rum, and such other things as the Indians could use in their wild and wandering mode of life.

Describe the quarrels that sometimes arose.

Occasionally quarrels would arise, which would lead to wars between the Indian tribes and the white settlers. In these cases, the Indians would sometimes come rushing into the villages at midnight with dreadful yells and outcries, and massacre the inhabitants and burn the houses. At other times they would lurk in ambush among the trees near the fields where the white men

INDIANS IN AMBUSH.

were at work, and shoot them with the guns and gunpowder which they had bought of them before.

Give an account of the captives which the Indians made, and of their way of treating them.

Not unfrequently it happened that children from the families of some of the settlers were seized and carried off as captives, and kept in the wigwam for many years. Whenever the Indians succeeded in getting a white child in their possession in this way, they usually treated him kindly, and often made him a favorite and pet. They regarded him and treated him much as a boy would treat a young squirrel or young fox that he had succeeded in catching in the woods and bringing home. Still it was a dreadful calamity to the poor child to be taken thus away from his father and mother, and from the comforts and pleasures of his home, and compelled to dwell all his life with these rude and cruel savages. As for the mothers of these unhappy captives, they were almost heart-broken to lose their children thus. They were generally far

more distressed than they would have been in following them to their graves.

What effects did a state of peace with the Europeans produce on the Indians?

Sometimes the Indian tribes and the people of the white settlements that were near them would live for a considerable period at peace with each other; but the Indians were generally as much injured by the peaceful intercourse with the whites as by the wars. The chief articles that they bought of the white men were gunpowder and rum, and the rum exerted an awful influence in demoralizing and destroying them. The effect of it upon them was to make them perfectly insane, and the imagination can scarcely

INDIAN CAROUSALS.

conceive the horrors of the drunken orgies which were sometimes witnessed around their midnight fires.

What is the present state of the Indian tribes?

From these causes the Indians have been gradually melting away and disappearing, until now there are few left on this side of the Mississippi River. Beyond the Mississippi the country is still

filled with them, but their numbers are gradually diminishing, and there is no doubt that in time they will entirely disappear.

What dealings does the government of the United States have with them?

The government of the United States makes treaties with the different tribes from time to time for the purpose of purchasing their lands, as fast as they are wanted for the use of the white settlers. It pays them for these lands in goods of various kinds, such as the Indians require for their use, and sometimes in money. Delegations from these tribes often go to Washington to confer with the President and the government in respect to these treaties, and other such business. In such cases they are always very kindly received, and treated with great courtesy.

Do any remnants of the eastern tribes still remain?

A few remains of the tribes that formerly occupied the country on the Atlantic coast still exist. We sometimes see their encampments on the banks of streams, or near the borders of the lakes, and sometimes we see individuals of the race, dressed in their own peculiar garb, in the streets of cities and towns. They, however, remain completely distinct from the white population, and still live, and dress, and act almost entirely as their ancestors did before the country was discovered.

CHAPTER II.

COLUMBUS.

What was the reason that this continent remained so long unknown to the Europeans?

For a great many centuries the continent of America remained in the possession of those Indian tribes, without being known to the rest of the world at all. The nations of Europe had not the least idea of the existence of any such land or of any such people.

The distance across the Atlantic Ocean from Europe to America is about three thousand miles, and that was farther than any ships had then ever sailed away from the shore. They had made pretty distant voyages in those days along the coast, but they had never gone very far out upon the open sea.

Why had not the navigators of those days made long voyages on the open sea?

The reason why they did not venture far away from the land in those days was because they had then no means of guiding their ships on their course. The mariner's compass was not known, and there was no way by which a ship could be guided, when out of sight of land, except by the sun and the stars, and these, in cloudy weather, could not be seen. Of course, it would be very unsafe, under these circumstances, for a ship to venture far from the shore.

When and by whom was America discovered at last?

At length, between three and four hundred years ago, the existence of America was discovered, and the event, when it occurred, produced among all the nations of Europe a feeling of great astonishment. The first discovery was made by Christopher Columbus. The year was 1492.

What nations were most interested in making discoveries in those days, and what had they done?

It happened that at that period there was a great deal of interest felt by many different nations in making voyages of discovery in various parts of the world. The three nations that were most engaged in these expeditions were the Spanish, the Portuguese, and the Dutch. The governments of these countries fitted out many ships for such purposes. Some they sent to the northern shores of Europe to explore the Arctic Seas, and some they sent to the southward, along the coast of Africa, on the way to India. None, however, had yet attempted to venture very far across the Atlantic, to see what could be found there.

Give an account of Christopher Columbus.

PORTRAIT OF COLUMBUS.

At length, about A.D. 1484, Christopher Columbus made his appearance in Lisbon, at that time a great and celebrated seaport. He came in from sea, but what his previous history had been no one knows. And yet he was then quite advanced in life. He was about forty-eight years old. In his figure and bearing he was tall and commanding, and exceedingly graceful and winning, though very grave and serious, in his manners. The above engraving represents a view of him as he then appeared. His countenance expresses the gravity and solemnity that mark his character.

What were his religious character and impressions?

He was a very devout man, and lived, as it seemed, in daily and constant communion with God. It was inpressed strongly upon his mind that God had destined him to the fulfillment of some high and important duty, in which the welfare of mankind was deeply concerned. Look upon his face, and observe the calm, but serious and solemn expression that marks it.

Relate the circumstances of his marriage.

At the chapel where Columbus was accustomed to worship in

Lisbon, he saw and at length became acquainted with a lady mamed Donna Felipa. He soon formed an attachment for her, and after a time they were married. She was the daughter, as it happened, of a distinguished navigator of those days, and she had a great many charts, journals, and other manuscripts which had belonged to her father. These Columbus read, and they tended to deepen and strengthen the interest he had always felt for the sea.

How did Columbus reason in respect to the route to India?

Columbus knew that the earth was a globe, and that consequently, if a person were to travel toward the east or toward the west until they had gone far enough to encircle it, they would come back again to the place that they set out from. Now various adventurers in those days had gone to the eastward very far. Some had journeyed across the continent by land. Others had gone round through the southern oceans by water. They had finally reached India, and Columbus supposed that if they had only gone on somewhat farther, they would have come home again by the way of the Atlantic Ocean, that is, from the opposite quarter of the compass to that toward which they went away. They went away toward the east, and they would come home, he thought, from the west. "And in the same manner," said he to himself, "if they would sail to the west, they would soon reach India, and so might come home from toward the east."

Describe the illustration introduced to explain how the circumference of the earth may be measured without going round it.

Columbus thought he knew pretty correctly how large the earth was, and how great the distance was which must be sailed to go around it. It may seem strange that this could be known at all when nobody had actually gone round it to measure the distance. It was something like this. Suppose, in walking in the country, you were to come to a large circular field, inclosed with a high fence, so that you could not see what was within. You undertake to walk around it. Now, by noticing the curvature of the bound-

ary as you go along, and comparing the distance that you travel with it, you could form a pretty accurate judgment of the portion of the circumference that you had passed over at any time. You would say, "We must be a quarter round, or we must be half round," as the case might be. A mathematician, who had instruments to measure the curvature and the distance, could, in such a case, tell exactly, at any time, how much of the circle was still left.

What portion of the earth's circumference did Columbus suppose to have been explored?

This is precisely the case in going round the earth. The curvature of the part that any navigator traverses can easily be measured by means of instruments and observations of the stars. It was in this way that Columbus knew what portion of the circumference of the earth remained to be explored. He thought it was about one third of the whole; and that the portion which had been already passed over by travelers, from the shores of the Atlantic to the easternmost known portions of India, was about two thirds.

How far was Columbus right in his calculations?

Columbus was right in the theory of his calculations, but not entirely correct in the results. Instead of there being only one third of the earth's circumference remaining to be explored, there was more than half. Such an error as this is what happens almost invariably to inventors and discoverers. They see very clearly the end which they wish to attain, and are right in respect to the theoretical truth and practicability of it, but they underestimate altogether the length or the difficulties of the way.

What idea did Columbus form of the situation of India?

Columbus had, of course, no means of knowing whether the whole of the distance which yet remained to be explored of the earth's circumference was water or not, but he supposed that a great part of it was land. He thought that India extended much farther round the world toward the east, beyond where any European travelers had been. It might very probably, he thought,

extend so far that only a short distance would remain across the Atlantic Ocean to the European shores. At any rate, he resolved that, if in any way he could obtain ships and sailors, he would set sail to the west from Europe, and go on till he came to land.

What were the motives that induced Columbus to set out on his voyage?

In forming these plans and designs, Columbus was actuated in a very high degree by the spirit of lofty religious devotion that marked his character. Mingled with this, however, there were strong impulses of worldly ambition, and love of wealth and power. He truly thought that, by opening a near way to India by the west, he should promote the glory of God and advance his kingdom; but he also intended, at the same time, to acquire glory for himself and a lofty position in the world.

Describe the efforts which Columbus made to obtain ships and men, and the arguments that he used.

He went to one after another of the princes and kings of the countries in that part of Europe, made known to them his plans, and asked their assistance in executing them. He explained to them the reasons which led him to believe that there was a short way to India across the Atlantic to the west, and that a vast increase of power and boundless wealth would be the reward of the nation that should first discover and open it. He showed them that India must be accessible in that direction from the very form of the earth; and the confines of it, he was convinced, must be near. The most westerly lands that were known in that direction were the Azores and the Cape de Verd Islands; and on these islands great trees, he said, had sometimes drifted in from the west, and pieces of carved wood; and once the bodies of two men, different in color and visage from any of the inhabitants of the then known world, had been washed up on the shores from the sea. These things proved not only that there was land in that direction, but that it could not be at any great distance.

For how long a time were these efforts fruitless?

For ten or twelve long years Columbus persevered in vain and fruitless attempts to induce some of the kings or princes of Europe to adopt his plans. The difficulties and delays which he encountered were exceedingly wearisome and discouraging. Sometimes he wasted months in fruitless attempts to obtain even an opportunity to explain his plans. When at length he succeeded in gaining an audience, the officers appointed to hear him in some instances would condemn the plan before they understood it. At other times they would make promises, and then wear out Columbus's patience by endless delays. Sometimes a government would give him encouragement in order to prevent his making proposals to any other government, while they had really no intention of adopting his views themselves. But, notwithstanding all these difficulties, Columbus still persevered.

Why was he so earnest to act under the authority of some government?

It would not have comported with his views to go out on the expedition under a commission from private persons only. He wished to be clothed with authority from some responsible and powerful government to take possession of and govern the countries that he should discover.

What sovereign at last adopted his plans?

At last he succeeded in inducing the Queen of Spain to listen to his plans. Her name was Isabella. Her husband was Ferdinand. Ferdinand was opposed to the plan, but Isabella became greatly interested in it, so much so that she said at last that if the king would not consent to furnish money from the treasury to procure and equip the ships, she would pawn her jewels for the purpose, and sell her crown of Castile. Castile had been her own kingdom before her marriage with Ferdinand, though by her marriage it was united with his, to form what is the present kingdom of Spain.

In what respect was Isabella not satisfied with Columbus's proposals?

Queen Isabella thought, however, that the demands which Columbus made for himself were somewhat extravagant and unreasonable, and for a long time she refused to accede to them. What he demanded was to be made admiral and viceroy over all the lands he should discover.

QUEEN ISABELLA.

Why was Isabella unwilling to make Columbus a viceroy?

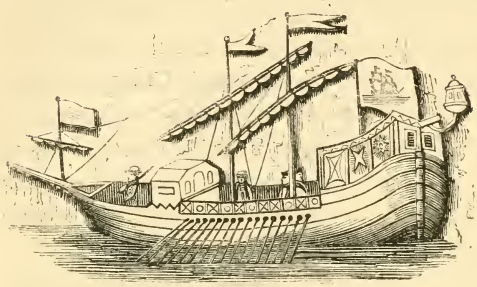
The office of viceroy is an office of the most exalted character, and is seldom conferred upon any except the very highest nobility. Isabella was extremely unwilling to confer it upon Columbus, who, though an intelligent and well educated man, still belonged to the middle classes of society. He was, however, firm in his refusal to engage in the enterprise at all except on that condition, and so Isabella finally consented to it.

Give an account of the sailing of the expedition.

Isabella furnished Columbus with two small vessels, and he himself, with the aid of some friends of his, provided a third. Thus he had a little fleet of three vessels. These vessels were fitted for sea at a small sea-port town in Spain called Palos, and when all was ready Columbus set sail. The time when the little squadron put to sea was about midsummer in the year 1492. He intended to have sailed earlier in the season, but the embarkation was delayed by many unexpected causes.

What was a caravel?

The vessels which Columbus was provided with were very small. They were of the kind called *caravels*, used in those days for voyages along the coast. They had no decks, and were fitted with oars as well as sails. The adjoining engraving represents the form and fashion of one of these vessels.



THE CARAVEL.

It is astonishing that Columbus could have succeeded in crossing the wide Atlantic in them.

Describe the course which Columbus pursued in crossing the ocean.

Columbus sailed first for the Canary Islands, which lay toward the south, off the coast of Africa, about one thousand miles from his place of embarkation. He reached these islands in safety, and stopped there a little time to rest his sailors and refit his ships. It was about a month after he sailed from Spain that he took his final departure from the Canaries, and turned the course of his ships toward the west over the boundless ocean. The crews of his ships were half afraid to go, but his calm and quiet resolution reassured them.

How many miles a day did they go upon an average? What cause of alarm did they experience when they were six hundred miles from land?

They went on without any thing serious occurring for about six hundred miles. It took thirteen days to accomplish this distance. They then found, to their great surprise and alarm, that the compass, which was their only guide when the sky was cloudy,

seemed to fail them. They could see at night, when the north star was shining, that it did not point right. It is true it did not deviate very far, but when it once began to wander, who could tell how far its aberrations might proceed? And how awful they thought would be their condition if, while out on that boundless waste of waters, a thousand miles from any shore, their only safe and sure reliance in finding their way were to desert them!

What took place in respect to this difficulty between Columbus and the sailors?

The sailors were overwhelmed with terror at the danger which threatened them, and insisted on immediately turning toward home. Columbus, however, succeeded in quieting their fears in some measure so as still to continue the voyage. He told them that he understood the nature of the deviation of the compass, and that it could not proceed very far. The needle would always, he said, point near enough toward the north to be a very safe guide for them. This was, in fact, true, though it is somewhat doubtful how far Columbus actually knew it to be true at that time. The men, however, were reassured again by the courage, resolution, and energy of their commander, and they consented to proceed.

How did the voyage go on after this?

After this they went on very pleasantly for many days. The sea was smooth, the air was balmy, and the wind was fair. Sometimes they passed great fields of sea-weed floating in the water. This was a sign of land; for sea-weed grows only on the margin of the shore. They saw birds, too, from time to time, wheeling in the air around the ship, or sweeping down and dipping the tips of their wings in the crests of the waves. Columbus was sure that they were approaching some shore.

Describe the calm, and the effects of it.

But now the breeze gradually died away, and there fell a calm. The calm continued for many days. The ships lay helpless and motionless on the sea. They had oars, it is true, but the progress

which could be made with oars would be too slow to make it worth the effort to attempt to use them. The sailors soon became more impatient than ever. While the ships were going forward on their way, and they themselves were employed in their various duties, their minds were diverted in some measure from their fears, and from their longings for home; but after the calm had continued for some days, they became so home-sick and discontented that they were ready to break out into mutiny. Columbus had great difficulty in subduing this rebellious spirit. He, however, did subdue it; and partly by threats, and partly by persuasions and promises, he induced them to persevere.

Give an account of the first supposed discovery of the land.

Presently a gentle breeze began to blow again, and at length, a few days afterward, just at sunset, a sailor climbed up to a high place on the stern to look out, and immediately shouted, in a very loud and excited manner, "Land! Land!" They all hastened to the place, and there they saw, as they thought, a line of coast like that of an island, extending along the horizon in the southwestern part of the sky. The land proved to be nothing but a cloud. This was a great disappointment. Still Columbus would not despair. He insisted on proceeding, and for a fortnight more the fleet went on.

Describe the mutiny that took place among the sailors, and the way in which Columbus appeased them.

The patience of the sailors was then entirely exhausted. They declared that they would go no farther, and as Columbus would not yield, they mutinied against him, and were about to throw him into the sea, when one evening they caught sight of a coast-fish swimming by, and very soon afterward they saw a small branch of a thorn-tree, with berries on it, floating in the water, and a sort of staff, with figures carved upon it, which must have been cut by the hand of man. Columbus told the sailors that he was confident that they would all see the land the next morning.

Give an account of the final discovery of the land.

He himself sat up all night to watch. The vessels sailed on. Near midnight he thought he caught the sight of lights glimmering, as if on a shore. He went down, in his joy, into the cabin, to call one or two of his officers up to look. They came, and soon they saw a torch moving and waving. Columbus was overjoyed. He remained on the look-out all night, and in the morning, as soon as it was light, the land, in the shape of long and beautifully-wooded shores, came out fully to view.

Describe the appearance of the country.

Of course, the whole company of voyagers on board the several ships were greatly excited at the spectacle. The air was filled with birds of beautiful plumage, and perfumes of tropical plants and trees, wafted from the shores, awakened their senses to an intoxication of delight. The natives, too, were seen gathered in groups at all the prominent points along the shore, gazing with amazement at the ships, wondering apparently what they could be.

In what light did Columbus regard the act of landing?

Columbus looked upon the act of landing, which was now to take place, as a great official ceremony. By the performance of it, he was to take possession of the newly-discovered countries in the name of the King and Queen of Spain. According to the ideas that then prevailed, none but Christian nations could have any true or valid titles to the territories of the earth, and discovering lands occupied only by heathen savages was like discovering property wholly unappropriated. Thus, by the act which he was now about to perform, he was, as he supposed, to establish the right of the King of Spain to the sovereignty over America forever.

In what manner did Columbus land?

Columbus prepared to land. He dressed himself in a splendid military dress of scarlet embroidered with gold. The chief officers of the ships, bearing banners in their hands, and presents for the natives, accompanied him. He went to the shore in a small boat.

LANDING OF COLUMBUS.

He stepped out upon the sand elated with the most exalted feelings of pride and joy, and with a heart full of gratitude to God for having brought his hazardous enterprise thus to a successful termination.

What was the first act performed on the shore?

As soon as all had landed from the boat, they kneeled down and chanted a hymn of thanksgiving and praise to God. Then rising, Columbus formally made proclamation that he took possession of

the land in the name of the King and Queen of Spain. And thus was the existence of America first discovered by the European nations.

What mistake did Columbus make in respect to the land which he had discovered?

The shore on which Columbus first landed proved to be one of the West India islands. He named the country West India because he then supposed that it was a part of the same India that had been known before to Europeans, and had been reached by travelers to the east. It was afterward found that there was a very wide ocean intervening between the land that Columbus discovered and the Indies of ancient times; but the new discoveries still retained the name of West Indies which Columbus had given them.

CHAPTER III.

SETTLEMENT OF VIRGINIA.

What was the object of most of the expeditions that were fitted out for America after it was discovered?

After Columbus had thus found the way to American shores, a great many other expeditions were fitted out by different adventurers, and so, at length, in the course of a hundred years, the whole eastern part of the continent was explored. The chief object of most of these expeditions was to procure gold and silver, and other such treasures, which were obtained in various ways from the natives in the West India islands and Mexico. It was not till a great many years had passed away that any permanent settlements were made on that part of the coast which now belongs to the United States.

Where was the first settlement made, and what difficulty did the settlers first experience?

The first of these permanent settlements was made in Virginia,

in 1609, more than a hundred years after America was discovered. There were attempts made to establish colonies about twenty years before, but they had been defeated in consequence of a foolish and wicked quarrel which the settlers fell into with the Indians. They thought that it was their wisest policy to treat the Indians with great severity, in order to intimidate them; but they made a woeful mistake. The Indians were only exasperated. The consequence was, that the colonists were entirely destroyed, and the work of settling the country by Europeans was put off for twenty years.

Give an account of the origin of the difficulty which took place with the Indians.

The circumstances of the case were these: When the colonists first landed from their ships, they were received by the Indians very kindly. They were allowed to sail up the river without any molestation, and to land and explore the country in all directions. They had constant intercourse with the Indians by signs, and all things went on very harmoniously, until at length, one day, a silver cup was missed from the camp. They thought that some of the Indians must have stolen it. A difficulty arose on this account, and, in the end, the English, wishing to strike terror into the minds of the savages, attacked and destroyed one of their villages of wigwams, and burned their fields of corn, as a punishment for stealing the cup, and failing to discover and give up the thief. The poor Indians fled in dismay. They could not openly resist, for they had no weapons with which they could meet a foe provided with fire-arms. They, however, secretly resolved on revenge.

What was the stratagem which the Indians devised in order to revenge themselves?

When the vessels which had brought the company of colonists over had gone back to England, and the colonists themselves were left alone, one of the Indians came to the settlement, and told the white men wonderful stories of a place that he could show them,

up one of the rivers, where they could find plenty of gold. The colonists sent a party of men, with the Indian for a guide, to see the place; but the Indian, instead of showing them a gold mine, led them into an ambuscade, where, to their surprise and consternation, they were suddenly attacked by a shower of arrows issuing from a thicket.

How did the colonists retaliate?

The colonists foolishly resolved to punish this treachery by worse treachery of their own. They sent for one of the principal Indian chiefs to come and visit them at their camp. He came with a few followers. As soon as he was in their power, the whites fell upon and massacred the chief himself and all who were with him. Their object in this retaliation was to terrify and overawe the Indians, and make them afraid to perpetrate any future acts of hostility against the whites. But the effect was the reverse of this. Instead of exciting the fears of the Indians, it aroused their anger, and awakened in them a deep spirit of revenge.

What were the consequences of this quarrel?

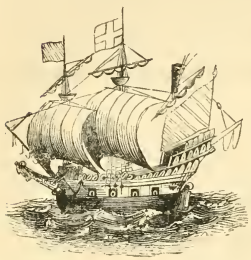
The Indians, being thus incensed beyond measure, began to take every means in their power to harass the colonists, and, if possible, destroy them. They finally succeeded, and, some time afterward, when more ships came from England to bring stores and supplies for the colonists, they found nothing on the spot where they had been left but bones bleaching in the sun.

Who was the principal leader in the attempts to colonize Virginia?

These attempts to colonize Virginia were made through the influence and under the general direction of a distinguished Englishman of wealth and high rank, named Sir Walter Raleigh. He lived in the reign of Queen Elizabeth. Queen Elizabeth was an unmarried lady, and it was in honor of her that the part of America which Raleigh attempted to settle was called Virginia. She was often called the virgin queen.

Give an account of Raleigh's plans and efforts.

Raleigh made several different attempts to establish colonies in the country, and sent at different times many ships, with fresh supplies of men and stores. The people who went met with a great variety of adventures, and endured indescribable hardships and sufferings. Raleigh himself finally became entirely discouraged, and determined to give up the attempt.



ONE OF RALEIGH'S SHIPS.

When and in what manner was the London Company formed?

In the mean time, notwithstanding Raleigh's failures, a great many people in England had become interested in the plan of settling America, and, after several years had passed away, and the difficulties and hardships of Raleigh's expeditions had been in some measure forgotten, two companies of merchants were formed with the design of attempting the experiment again. Queen Elizabeth, in the mean time, had died, and King James the First succeeded her. The companies that were formed were organized under powers given them by the king, and they were to be under the general control of the king's government. The name of the company that intended to make a settlement in Virginia was the London Company. It was so named because London merchants chiefly were engaged in it.

What was the history of the first expedition sent out by the London Company?

The London Company sent their first expedition to Virginia in 1606. It consisted of three small vessels, containing a colony of one hundred and five men. They did not know, when they sailed, who were to be the rulers of the colony. That was for the king to decide. He had written, he said, the names of the persons who were to rule on a paper, which he had put in a box and sealed up.

He gave the box to the captain of one of the ships, forbidding him to open it until the expedition should arrive in America. What reason the king could have had for such a foolish restriction as this, one can not imagine, unless it was the pleasure of exercising arbitrary power, and showing the colonists how completely subject they were to his control.

Give an account of the adventures of John Smith before he came to America.

Among the other members of this company was one man who afterward became greatly celebrated in Virginian history on account of his daring and desperate spirit, and the romantic adventures that he met with in the colony. His name was John Smith. He was born in Willougby, in the eastern part of England. From his earliest youth he was very wild and reckless. He attempted to run away when he was a boy in order to go to sea, and he sold his school-books in order to raise money. He was stopped, however, before he got away, and was bound apprentice to a merchant. He yielded to this arrangement at first, in expectation that the merchant would send him to sea; but, as soon as he found that this was out of the question, he forsook the merchant, and went off to the Continent. He was, at this time, about fifteen years old. He roamed about the world after this for ten years, during which time

PORTRAIT OF SMITH.

he met with a series of the most remarkable adventures, and had a great many hair-breadth escapes.

What position did the king intend to give him in the colony?

At last he came back to England, and when this company was formed for going to Virginia, he concluded to join them. His name was on the list that the king had nominated for the council, though none of the colonists knew this until they arrived in America.

What occurred during the voyage?

On the voyage the colonists quarreled among themselves and had a great deal of difficulty. They all took a strong dislike to Smith. They accused him of forming a plot to murder the council when their names should be revealed, in order to make himself king of the colony. It is not at all improbable, considering his character, that he may have given them some reason for entertaining such suspicions of him. At any rate, they seized him and put him in irons, and kept him confined during all the rest of the voyage. When they landed, they seemed, from some cause or other, to relent, and they accordingly released him from his confinement, but they would not allow him to retain his office as councilor.

What difficulties did the colonists incur on their landing?

As soon as the company landed, and began to choose a place for their settlement, and to commence their preliminary labors, they found themselves involved in many difficulties. These difficulties were increased by continual disputes and disagreements with each other, and the courage and the energy that Smith displayed in these circumstances were so great that he soon made himself the real leader of the enterprise. In fact, he was one of those men who will lead wherever they are, and whose resolution and energy rise higher and higher in proportion to the dangers and difficulties that surround them.

How soon were the colonists able to obtain fresh supplies of provisions?

The ships that had brought the colonists went back to England,

but they returned again the next year with fresh supplies and more men. The colonists had suffered dreadfully during the interval while the ships were gone, but now they were relieved, and the settlement was considered as permanently established.

Describe the plan which Captain Smith now formed, and the arrangements that he made for accomplishing it.

Captain Smith, as he was called, now conceived the design of making an exploring tour into the interior of the country. He was never content unless he was engaged in some daring or dangerous enterprise, and so, as soon as he and his companions were safe from the danger of immediate starvation, he formed this plan, which promised enough of difficulty and hazard to suit his adventurous spirit. He took an open boat, and a few companions like himself, and set out. He had two friendly Indians with him to serve as guides.

Give an account of the progress of the expedition and of the attack of the savages.

He went on up the river for about fifty miles. Then the water became so shallow that he could not go any farther in the boat: so he left the boat, with some men to guard it, and set off himself, with his guides and two companions, to continue his journey on foot. He went on for some distance safely, but at last his party was attacked by a troop of savages that burst upon them suddenly out of a thicket. The savages had seen the boat, killed the men who had been left to guard it, and now had tracked Smith and his party to this place.

Describe the combat of Smith with the Indians.

At the time when they came up, Smith's two companions were asleep by their camp-fire. The Indians killed these men instantly, and then pursued Smith, and when they came up with him, they surrounded him and wounded him with an arrow. Smith immediately fastened one of his guides to his left arm, and held him there as a shield to keep off the arrows of the Indians, and

then, with his gun, he killed three of the foremost of his assailants one after another, retreating all the time as he fired, in hopes of making his way back to his canoe. Presently, however, he came to a swampy place in the ground, and there sank in the mire so that he became entirely helpless, and then the Indians came up and made him prisoner.

How did the savages treat Captain Smith?

The savages took their prisoner to their wigwams, and began to treat him at once with the greatest kindness and consideration. They gave him an abundance to eat and drink, and showed him all other possible favors. Smith was at first frightened at this. He thought that they were going to fat him up and eat him. He found out, at last, that their plan was to induce him to become their ally and leader, and to aid them in an attempt that they were going to make to surprise and destroy the English settlement. But Smith gave them to understand that it was useless for them to think of such a thing. The settlement was strongly fortified, he said, and provided with dreadful engines of destruction, the nature of which he contrived to explain to them in some degree by the help of his musket, so that all attempts on their part to destroy it would be vain.

Give an account of Powhatan, and of the circumstances under which Smith was brought before him.

Smith was carried to one of the villages of a great Indian chief named Powhatan, the most powerful ruler in all that part of the country. Powhatan was seated under a great spreading pine-tree when Smith was brought before him. Two of his daughters, young Indian girls, were seated by his side. One of them, Pocahontas, was a child about twelve years old. The other chieftains gathered around, and a consultation was held to determine what should be done with the prisoner. Powhatan, after hearing the case, condemned him to die, and the preparations were made to carry the sentence at once into effect.

How did the case end?

POCAHONTAS.

They pinioned his arms, and laid him down upon the ground with his head upon a stone, while the executioner stood by, holding a war-club in his hands, with which, at a signal from the king, he was to beat out his brains. But just at this moment Pocahontas left her seat, and rushed down to the place where the poor prisoner was lying, and, throwing herself upon him, she declared that he should not be killed. Her father was moved by her entreaties, and finally consented to spare the prisoner's life, and in the end he let him go free.

What afterward became of Smith?

Smith afterward met with a great many other strange and romantic adventures, and performed a great many services of inestimable value to the colony. At last he was blown up by the accidental explosion of a bag of gunpowder in a boat in which he was coming down the river, and was injured so much that he was obliged to return to England.

What became of Pocahontas?

Pocahontas continued a good friend to the English as long as she lived. Indeed, when she grew up, she married one of the colonists, and became, in the end, quite a distinguished character in history.

What were finally the results of the colony at Jamestown?

The colony of Jamestown gradually increased after this time, and other settlements were made near it. In process of time,

more colonies, independent of the one in Virginia, were established, both to the north and to the south of it, until at last the whole southern coast of the United States was occupied with settlements from England, and thus the foundations were laid of the present Southern States of the American Union.

CHAPTER IV.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK.

By what nation was New York first settled?

New York was first settled by the Dutch, although the place where the city stands was first discovered and explored by an English captain. The way in which it happened that the Dutch were the first to settle here was this.

Give an account of the origin of Hudson's expedition.

There was in those days, in Holland, a very wealthy and powerful company of merchants, called the Dutch East India Company. This company employed a certain English sea-captain, named Hendrick Hudson, to endeavor to find, if possible, an open way by sea somewhere through North America to the East Indies. Hudson had made two voyages to North America before, and this was the reason why they employed him. They thought he would be more experienced in those seas. Besides, he himself wished to go again, and he applied to the Dutch company to fit out an expedition and to give him the command of it.

What sort of a ship and crew did he have?

So they fitted him out a small ship, and gave him a crew of strong and fearless sailors, and he set sail. His vessel was very small: it was of only ninety tons burden. The ships that navigate the ocean now are often of two or three thousand tons, and sometimes more. It is considered very remarkable that Hudson should have ventured on such a voyage in so small a ship.

Give an account of the manner in which the Hudson River was discovered.

Hudson explored the whole coast of North America from Newfoundland to South Carolina, but he could not find any passage through. When he came to the mouth of the Hudson River, he thought at first that that might be a strait leading from sea to sea, but after he had sailed up a little way he found that it was a river. So he called it the Hudson River, after his own name.

What was the report that Hudson carried back to Holland, and what proposal did he make?

Soon after this he went back to Holland, and told the company that he could not find any passage through the land leading to the East Indies, but that he had found a very large and noble river, with a very favorable situation for a town near the mouth of it, and he advised them to establish a colony there. He said that the country was full of Indian tribes, who were great hunters and trappers, and that they were accustomed to catch an immense number of wild animals in the woods, the skins of which would make excellent furs; and that, if they would make a settlement at the mouth of this river, they could buy almost any quantity of these furs from the Indians in exchange for beads, iron nails, knives, glass ornaments, and other cheap things.

What resulted from this proposal?

This plan was adopted. The Dutch company sent out several ships, and they established quite a profitable trade for furs with the Indians. They made a small settlement where New York is now. They built some log cabins. They soon had quite a town. It was not very long before they undertook to build a vessel there, and this was probably the beginning of ship-building in America.

Give an account of the building of the first vessel.

The reason why the settlers built this vessel was that the one which they had at that time was accidentally burned; so they felled some trees in the forest near, and dragged the timbers and

planks to the shore, and then built a new vessel to take the place of the one that was lost. In the engraving below you see them busily engaged in this work. The skeleton of the vessel that was burned is seen, too, at a distance, lying on the beach, and half imbedded in the sand.

BEGINNING OF SHIP-BUILDING IN NEW YORK.

Give an account of the intercourse between the colony and the Indians, and of the treaty made with them.

The great business of the Dutch colony of New York for a long time was trading with the Indians for furs. They accordingly did all they could to live on friendly terms with the Indians, and by thus securing their good-will, they were enabled to make long excursions into the interior of the country without being molested by them. There was at this time a very great and powerful confederacy of Indian tribes in what is now the interior of the State of New York. The Dutch colonists finally concluded to strengthen the bonds of friendship between them and the Indians by making a formal treaty with them; so they sent a delegation of their number up the river, to the place where Albany now stands, and invited the Indian chiefs to come there and meet them. The Indians came. The Dutch received them under a great spreading beech-tree in the woods, and there they made a treaty with them. The engraving on the following page gives a representation of the scene.

What was the Dutch colony originally called?

The Dutch colony was first settled in New York in the year 1614. The place was, however, not called New York by the Dutch, but New Amsterdam; Amsterdam being the name of one of their own chief cities. The Indian name of the place was Manhattan.

In what manner did this colony first become known to the English colonies?

The English themselves, who had settled in Virginia and in other places toward the south, do not seem to have known much about this Dutch colony for several years. At last an English vessel from Virginia came sailing one day into Long Island Sound, and, passing down through the channel called East River, it came suddenly upon the Dutch town. The commander of the vessel did not stop to communicate with the town, but made all haste to get out of the harbor and go back to Virginia.

NEGOTIATING WITH THE INDIANS.

What followed from this discovery?

The commander of the vessel reported in Virginia what he had discovered, and then the authorities there immediately sent a vessel to New Amsterdam to warn the Dutch settlers away. All that land, they said, belonged to the King of England, and they

had no right to settle there. To this the Dutch replied that they found no English there when they came, and therefore they had a right to land and take possession; and now they had no intention of being driven away.

On what ground did the English claim a right to the country which the Dutch had settled?

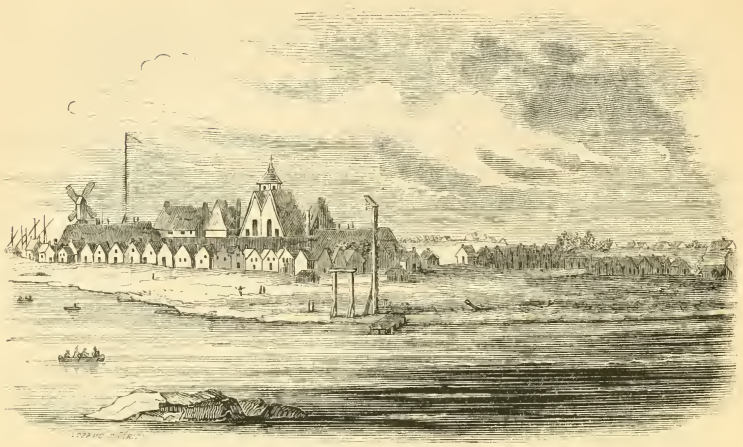
The ground of the English claim was that they considered themselves as the rightful proprietors of the whole country, on account of the discoveries and settlements that they had made in Massachusetts and in Virginia. They considered the country as one, and the Dutch, in coming in and planting themselves on an intermediate spot, they regarded as intruders. In all these cases the rights of the aboriginal inhabitants were never taken into the account at all.

Describe the farther history of the colony.

The Virginians not being strong enough to drive them away, the Dutch colony remained unmolested. It gradually increased in wealth and population, and other settlements were formed at various points along the shores of the river and in the interior of the country. This state of things continued for about fifty years. During all this time the Dutch colony held frequent intercourse with the English colonies to the northward and the southward of them. Sometimes disputes arose in respect to boundaries, or to subjects connected with the traffic with the Indians. These disputes were, however, generally settled by negotiation in an amicable manner.

What expedition was sent out against the colony in 1664?

At last, in the year 1664, which was just about fifty years after the colony was first founded, war broke out between England and Holland, and the English government sent a small squadron of ships and a band of armed men to take possession of New Amsterdam. The expedition sailed up the harbor and landed on the shore of Long Island, near what is now the southern part of Brooklyn. The engraving on the following page represents the



NEW YORK IN 1664.

town as it appeared to the English, viewing it from the Brooklyn shore. We see the fort with the tall flag-staff surmounting it, and the church with its lofty roofs, and the wind-mill where the people ground their corn, and a long row of Dutch-built houses. Near, on the shore, are the gallows and the whipping-post, where criminals were punished for their crimes, according to the usages of those days.

Describe what took place when the English squadron arrived.

The English commander sent a summons to the governor of the fort and town, calling upon him to surrender. The people were disposed to yield, for they knew that they had not sufficient force to resist the guns of the squadron. The governor, however, declared that he never would yield. He tore up the summons and threw the pieces on the ground. The people of the town, however, were determined not to resist, and they finally compelled the governor to surrender. Indeed, if they had not done so, the place would have been entirely destroyed by the cannonade from the English squadron.

What was the result of this conquest?

The English, when they took possession, pulled down the Dutch flag from the flag-staff, and put up the English flag in its place. They changed the name of the town, too, from New Amsterdam to New York. Thus the colonies on the Hudson River, like all the other colonies of the country, came under the English power.

CHAPTER V.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.

In what way did the northern and southern colonies differ from each other in respect to their origin?

The northern part of the American coast—that is, the part which forms the shores of New England, was settled by a very different class of men from those that planted the colonies in New York and Virginia. These Southern colonists were generally wild adventurers, who came in hopes of finding gold, or of growing rich by trading with the Indians. Some of them, indeed, seemed to have no other motive than a love of excitement and change. The New England settlers, on the other hand, were sober, sedate, and serious-minded men, who came across the ocean to escape from their persecutors, and to find a home for themselves where they and their children could be free.

What were the political opinions of the settlers that came to New England?

They were generally Republicans in politics and Puritans in religion. They did not believe in being governed by priests and kings. There were great dissensions and differences in England in those days in respect to these subjects. The kings, though they were the very vilest and most ignoble of men, insisted that their kingdoms were their own, and that all the people who lived in them were their subjects, and were bound to obey them, and to

submit to their authority in every thing. The Republicans, on the other hand, believed that the people of any country had the right to make their own laws, and establish and maintain such a government as they pleased.

What were their religious opinions?

The opinions of the Puritans were very decided in respect to religion. The Church of England consisted of a close and consolidated confederation, with the king at the head, and a great body of archbishops, bishops, and priests united together under him; and a complicated system of religious rites and ceremonies had been ordained, to which the government attempted to compel every one to conform. They honestly thought, no doubt, that every one ought to conform to this system. The Puritans were opposed to it altogether, and all who refused to submit to it the churchmen considered as heretics and infidels.

What was the result of this quarrel between the government and the Puritans in England?

These differences of opinion led, in England, to dreadful quarrels. The people formed themselves into parties, some taking one side and some the other. At last the party in favor of the Church and of the king gained the day, and the party of Republicans and Puritans were discomfited and subdued. They were called Puritans in derision, because they said they sought a pure and spiritual religion—one entirely free from what they considered the contaminations of popery.

Give an account of the attempt made by the Puritans to settle in Holland.

At last it happened that about the time that Virginia first began to be settled, a company of these men determined to go away from England and find a home in some other part of the world, where they might hope to live in peace. They thought first of Holland, for Holland was at that time itself a republic. They accordingly made arrangements for procuring land there, and then

all went over together. They remained in Holland for more than ten years, but they were not very contented there. They did not understand the language, nor were they accustomed to the habits and usages of the country.

What plan did they form at last in respect to going to America?

At last they conceived the idea of breaking up their settlement in Holland and removing in a body to America. "In America," said they to themselves, "we can do as we please, and live in peace. Besides, if we go there first and make a settlement, others who think as we do will come from England and join us, and, in process of time, we shall become a great and thriving colony."

What arrangements did they make for coming to America?

So they applied to one of the companies that had been formed for settling America, and obtained leave to go. They received what is called a *patent*,* which was a paper authorizing them to land and settle on a certain portion of the coast. They also made an agreement with some merchants of London, by which the merchants were to furnish them with goods and money to trade with the Indians if they should have an opportunity, and they were to divide the profits.

How did it happen that only one vessel came over?

They came over in only one vessel—the May-Flower—so celebrated in history on account of its having brought the first settlers to New England. The company intended to have had two vessels, for one was not large enough to bring them all. They, in fact, provided another vessel, and a part of their number embarked on board of it; but it sprang a leak, and was obliged to return, and so the May-Flower came on alone.

Give an account of the voyage of the May-Flower.

It happened, somehow or other, that the captain of the May-Flower strayed from his way, and instead of landing his company

* Patent means *open*. Letters patent are letters open—that is, not sealed. This is the origin of the term patent as applied to public documents.

on the part of the coast where they had intended to go, he came much farther north, and entered Massachusetts Bay. But it was now very late in the season—the last of December—so that the winter was coming on, and it was beginning to be cold and stormy. The expedition, therefore, concluded to land where they were.

What plan of government did they form before they landed?

As they were beyond the limits within which they had been authorized to settle by their patent, they perceived that if they were to land there they would be entirely without any government, unless they formed one anew themselves. So they drew up a paper, and formed themselves into a "body politic," as they termed it—that is, a government and nation, and all the company signed it. They did this before they landed.

What is there remarkable in respect to this compact?

This act is considered as marking an era in the political history of the world. It is the first instance that ever occurred in which the foundations of a government were formally laid by a written compact entered into by the people themselves who were to compose the nation to be governed. The number of men who signed this compact was forty-one. The number of persons in the vessel, men, women, and children, was one hundred and one.

What did the company now do in respect to going ashore?

The party met with a great deal of difficulty and delay, as they came in sight of the land, before they could finally go on shore. So large a number of women and children, of course, could not leave the ship until proper provision had been made for them on land; and as none of those who were on board the ship knew any thing of the coast, a slow and careful exploration of it was necessary before any thing could be done. This exploration could not be made in the ship itself, for fear of running her upon rocks or shoals. They were obliged, therefore, to take a boat for this purpose, with a small party of brave, strong, and prudent men to manage it. There was a kind of boat on board the vessel called

a shallop, but it had been damaged on the voyage, and needed repairs. It was a fortnight before it was ready.

Give an account of the voyage of the shallop.

When, at last, the shallop was ready, a small company of men took it, and went on a voyage of discovery. The weather was cold and stormy, and the party endured a great deal of exposure and suffering. They went up into every bay and inlet they could find, and landed in several places in search of a good situation to build their town. It was necessary that the place should be near a harbor, in order to accommodate the ships that would come, from time to time, from England, to visit the colony and bring supplies. So they looked every where for a harbor, but could not find any. At some of the places where they landed they found traces of Indians. There were deserted wigwams here and there, and once they saw an Indian burying-ground; but they could not find any good place for a town, and at length they gave up the search and went back to the ship.

What effect was produced on board the ship by the report which they brought back?

The company on board, though they were very tired of the ship, and longed to land, were not discouraged. They prayed daily to Almighty God to take care of them and guide them, and they felt full trust and confidence in his goodness and power. It was this trust in God which sustained them in their heaviest trials.

Give an account of the second voyage of the shallop.

The next day another party was formed to renew the search. It was a cold and windy day; and when they launched the shallop in the surf, and got down into it over the side of the vessel, the spray dashed upon them, and froze upon their clothing. They, however, persevered. They followed the coast that day for many miles. It was the coast of Cape Cod, on the western side. When night came, they went on shore and encamped. The ground was covered with snow, but they contrived to build a hut to shelter

them, and, after praying to God to preserve them through the night, they lay down and went to sleep.

How were they attacked by the Indians, and why?

The next morning, while they were kneeling down on the cold and snowy ground at prayers, they suddenly heard a whoop and yell from a band of Indians, and a number of arrows came flying about them from the woods. It seems that, some time ago, a ship had touched on this part of the coast, and had enticed some Indians on board, and had then sailed away, taking the Indians with them. This exasperated the tribe so much that they resolved that, if any English ever came again and landed on their shores, they would kill them. After shooting their arrows at the party, however, and endeavoring to frighten them with their dreadful yelling, they did no more, but went away. The boat party then embarked on board the shallop, and continued their voyage. They sailed along the coast for forty miles, but could find no harbor.

Describe the effects of the storm which they experienced at the close of the second day.

At length, near the close of the day, when they were beginning to think of turning the boat in toward the shore to encamp for the night, a sudden storm of wind, rain, and snow came on. The air became so obscured that they could not see. The waves rose and dashed against the boat, and finally broke the rudder. They then had to steer by the oars alone. They kept all the sails spread, so as to go as fast as possible, in order to get to the land before the sea should rise so high as to overwhelm them. This was too much for the mast in such a high wind, and at length it suddenly snapped in three pieces, and all went overboard. The boat was now near the shore, and there were roaring breakers ahead and all around them. In a word, they were apparently in a situation of the most imminent danger.

How did they escape?

But they were, in fact, just entering upon the hour of their de-

liverance. It is very often so in the dealings of God with his people. He leads them through danger and terror to happiness and rest. The boatmen saw before them an opening into an inlet, and they contrived to guide the shallop in. They found themselves at the entrance of a harbor. They were so worn out and exhausted with the labors and dangers of the day, that, as soon as they got the boat into sheltered water, they turned and went ashore on the nearest land. The land was an island which lay just within the mouth of the harbor. The name of the first man that stepped on shore was Clark, so they named the island Clark's Island. You will see the situation of it on the map upon the next page, as well as that of the harbor in which it lay, and the opening from the sea where the shallop was driven in.

What was their situation when they found themselves on the land?

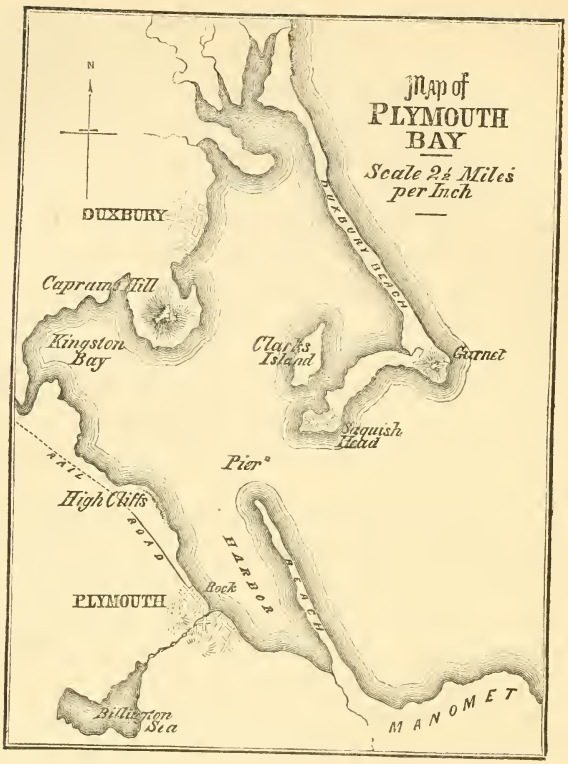
As soon as the men landed they built a fire. The storm cleared away, but the snow was very deep on the ground, and it was difficult for them to provide for themselves any tolerable shelter. They remained on this island all the next day, employed in mending their boat, drying their clothes, cleaning their arms, and in other ways repairing the damages of the storm.

How long did they remain on the island?

It was Saturday when they landed. They remained on the island during the following day too, for they would not, even in such an emergency as this, go on with the ordinary duties of life on the Sabbath day. They spent the day in rest, in services of public worship, and in silent meditation and prayer.

Give an account of their visit to the main land on Monday morning.

Early on Monday morning the party launched the shallop again, and sailed across the harbor to the main land. They stepped out from their boat upon a small flat rock which lay on the beach. The situation of the island where the party encamped over the



Sabbath, and of the rock where they landed on Monday morning, is shown on the map. This rock has since become very famous in history as the Plymouth Rock, the place where the pilgrim fathers of New England first set their foot upon the main land.

What followed when the party returned to the ship?

In the mean while, the people on board the ship were waiting patiently at their anchorage, fifty miles away, not knowing what had become of the shallop and the party of explorers. In due time, however, the boat went back, and, to the great joy of the company on board the ship, informed them that they had found an excellent

harbor. The ship accordingly set sail, and soon entered the port. The men landed near the rock, and very soon began to build houses for the women and children on the shore. Thus was begun the first permanent New England colony.

In what way were the colonies in New England afterward multiplied?

In process of time, new settlers came out in great numbers, and new colonies were established all along the New England shores, and in some places the settlements extended far into the interior of the country. These settlers came in various expeditions and at various times, but nearly all of them were animated with the same spirit and the same desires in leaving their native land, and coming to make for themselves new homes on the cold and stormy shores of America. They wished to be *free;* and, more than all, they wished to found a civil state in which their children might be free. They wished to be free not only from political, but also from religious domination.

Give an account of the Walloons.

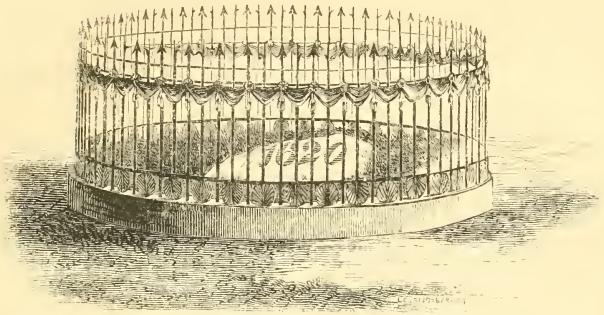
Most of these Pilgrim emigrants came from England and settled in the Northern States, but some went to places farther south. There was one company of Protestants that had been driven from Flanders into Holland just as the Puritans had gone there from England; and this party, too, after remaining for some time in Amsterdam, determined to emigrate to America, though they went to the Hudson, and joined the Dutch colony of New Amsterdam. They were called Walloons. They were almost the first party of emigrants from Holland that came with their wives and children to New Amsterdam with the design to live and die there. Indeed, the pilgrims generally were the first who came to America with the design of making the new country their permanent home. Those who had come before had only intended to remain for a time in the New World, till they had made their fortunes by buying furs of the Indians, or by the gold and silver which they hoped to find.

LANDING OF THE WALLOONS.

It is supposed that the Walloons took their name from their living originally in a low country near the sea, where the water was kept out by the dike or wall.

What is the present condition of the Plymouth Rock, and how is it regarded?

The Plymouth Rock, where the May-Flower company landed, has been since greatly venerated by all the people of New England. It lay, of course, originally in a low position, and very near the water, and, in process of time, wharves were built out opposite to it, and the land was filled in, so that now it lies in the middle of a street at some distance from the water. A large fragment of it has, however, been taken off, and carried up to a public place in the town of Plymouth, where it is inclosed within an iron railing



FRAGMENT OF THE PLYMOUTH ROCK.

to protect it from injury. It is inscribed with the date of the year 1620, which was the year when the Pilgrims landed upon it. The rest of the stone remains in its original place, though that is now one of the streets of the town. The engraving represents a view

THE PLYMOUTH ROCK.

of the street, with the surface of the stone just showing itself above the ground. Great numbers of people go every year to visit the

spot, and to look upon this venerable memento of the hardships and sufferings of their forefathers.

What became of the Indian population as the settlements extended?

The settlers of New England had difficulties from time to time with the Indians, and in the earlier years of the several settlements the colonists suffered a great deal from exposure and cold, and sometimes from pestilence and famine. The settlements still, however, increased and multiplied, and in the course of one hundred years the original Indian population was almost entirely displaced, and the whole country all along the seaboard, and for hundreds of miles into the interior, was occupied almost entirely with the farms and villages of white men.

CHAPTER VI.

THE COLONIAL GOVERNMENT.

How long did the American colonies remain under the English government?

The settlements in America remained under the government and control of England, from the time when they were first formed to that in which they established an independent government of their own, about one hundred and fifty years. This is called the colonial period of American history.

What was the general system of the colonial government?

There were several different kinds of colonial governments, but in all cases the power was exercised in England. Some of the settlements were considered as belonging to the king, others to companies of merchants, and others to individual proprietors. Whoever it was that owned the colonies, he or they, and not the people, appointed the governor and regulated the making of the laws. At first, indeed, the people of New England were some-

what independent, and chose their own governors; but as soon as they began to be populous and powerful, the English government contrived to get the power into their own hands, and governors for these colonies were appointed and sent out from Great Britain, as well as for the rest.

What sort of men were the governors thus sent out?

These governors and the people of the colonies did not agree very well together. The governors were usually men who entertained high ideas of their own powers and importance, and as they only came to America with a view of making a fortune and then going home again, they felt no real sympathy or community of interest with the permanent residents. They were constantly endeavoring to increase their own power and importance. They lived in handsome houses, built expressly for them by the government. They maintained a great deal of state, as if they were kings on a small scale.

Describe the Province House in Boston.

The house in Boston which was built and occupied by the governors of Massachusetts in colony times yet remains, and is still known as the Province House. It was originally quite out of town, but it is now entirely surrounded and hemmed in by other buildings. There is a row of brick stores between it and the street, so that the visitor is obliged to go in through an archway to see it. A view of it is given in the above engraving. For the times when it was built, it was a large and very splendid mansion, and was placed in a retired and rural situation.

THE GOVERNOR'S HOUSE.

What were the means that the governors possessed for sustaining their influence and power?

In the contests that often arose between the governors and the people of the colonies, the governors were by no means left alone. Great numbers of persons adhered to their cause. Some did this from hope of receiving offices; others because they probably thought it was better for the colonies that they should be under a strong control from the government in England. Then, besides the parties in America that adhered to them, they had soldiers under their command. Some of these soldiers were stationed in forts at the mouths of rivers or harbors, and others lived in barracks in the towns; but they were all under the command of the governors of the several provinces, and it was partly by means of them that the people of the colonies were held in subjection.

Give an account of the origin and commencement of the war with Canada.

In process of time, a war broke out between France and England, and as Canada had been settled by the French, and was now a French colony, the English government concluded to organize an army in their colonies in America to attack it. This was accordingly done. Armies were raised, the several colonies contributing their portions of troops, and the English generals, taking command of them, led them against the French possessions.

Why were English generals appointed to take command of these colonial troops?

It was always the usage of the English government to put all their colonial troops as much as possible under the command of officers sent out from England. One motive for this was to keep the troops more completely under subjection to the government, and another was that they desired the offices as places for the younger sons of the nobility, and the other genteel classes of society at home. These young men would have considered themselves demeaned by being engaged in any useful industrial occupation.

What were the difficulties that the troops encountered in these campaigns?

In these campaigns the troops were obliged to make long and dreary marches in storms and rain, and through the most wild

COLONIAL TROOPS ON A MARCH.

and unfrequented regions, in which they encountered almost every conceivable hardship and difficulty. The chief command in these expeditions was always conferred upon officers sent out from England, while the colonists were only allowed to fill very subordinate places. The English officers were, of course, not acquainted with the country, or with the peculiar difficulties and dangers of marching through forests filled with Indians; and as they were generally too proud to take advice from those who were beneath them in rank, they often met with very serious disasters.

What part did the Indians take in this war?

The French contrived to engage the Indians, in many cases, to fight on their side; and the Indians, being very skillful in stratagems of all kinds, would lay in ambush till some detachment of the army came along, and then would break out upon them so suddenly as to put them all to flight. The soldiers would retreat

THE TROOPS SURPRISED.

from the ground as they best could, while the wagoners would cut the traces of their harness, and then mount the horses and ride away, abandoning every thing to the enemy.

What was the result of the war?

Notwithstanding these occasional disasters, the English still persevered. They fitted out three grand expeditions to march through the woods into Canada, and in the end succeeded in conquering the country. Ever since that time, all the old French colonies that lie to the north of the United States have been subject to British power.

What effect did the war have on the disposition of the English government in respect to the colonies, and on the disposition of the colonies?

One might, perhaps, have supposed that being engaged together in such a war as this, and bringing it to a successful end by their joint and common exertions, would have tended to promote an excellent understanding between the English government and the people of the colonies; but, instead of this, quite the contrary effect was really produced. The government at home, finding

how great and powerful the colonies were becoming, were more desirous than ever to have them completely in subjection to their own power. The people in America, on the other hand, for precisely the same reason, wished to become more and more independent.

How were the Legislatures chosen, and what were their duties?

There was in each colony a Legislature chosen by the people. These various Legislatures were accustomed to meet in the principal towns, and enact laws for the internal management of the colonies, and for raising money by taxes to pay the necessary public expenses. The members, being chosen by the people, of course acted for them and in their behalf. The governors and the councils, on the other hand, being appointed by the King of England or by his ministry at home, represented the English government and acted for them.

How did the Legislatures and governors agree together?

The Legislatures were all the time endeavoring to increase and strengthen their own power, which was the power of the people. The governors, in the same way, manœuvred incessantly to increase *their* power, which was that of the king and his government at home. This antagonism was continually breaking out into the most serious disputes.

What measure did the several colonies at last propose as a means of increasing their strength, and what prevented its being carried into effect?

The colonies at one time proposed to form a confederation, by the Legislatures, with a view of banding the people of the whole country together. This the governors opposed. They thought any union of that kind would greatly increase the strength of the people, and proportionably weaken their own. They proposed instead that there should be a combination formed by the *governors*, and that the people themselves should remain distinct. This the people would not consent to, and the question gave rise to new

difficulties and disputes, and the result was that no extended or general union of the colonies was effected in either form.

Give an account of the post-office system, and of Doctor Franklin's tour.

There was one object which the colonies combined to accomplish, and that was the establishment of a post-office system for the whole country. The celebrated Benjamin Franklin was one of the first post-masters-general. At one time he made an extended tour through nearly all the colonies to mature and perfect the system. He traveled in a chaise, which he drove himself. His daughter Sally accompanied him. He had a spare horse with him.

THE POST-MASTER-GENERAL.

His daughter rode sometimes upon the horse, and sometimes in the chaise by the side of her father. Traveling in this way, Franklin was five months in making this tour. Such a tour would be accomplished now, by rail-roads and steam-boats, in five days.

How did the English at last attempt to tax the colonies by means of duties?

As the colonies increased, the disputes between the people and the home government in regard to the question how far they were

to be allowed to govern themselves, and how far they must submit to be governed by the English ministry and the Parliament, grew more and more serious. The English government had had the power from the beginning of making all laws in respect to commerce, and they were accustomed to tax the colonies indirectly by requiring them to pay duties on the merchandise imported from England. In order to compel them to buy this merchandise, they made laws forbidding them to establish any manufactories in America. The Americans complained of this, but still they submitted. They could not resist the payment of duties very well, for the governors had command of the soldiers in the forts by the harbors, and they would not allow the ships to come in unless the merchant to whom the goods belonged would first pay the duty. Then he would add the duty to the price of the goods, and his customers were obliged to pay all together.

Did they wish also to assess direct taxes?

After a time the English government, not satisfied with what was obtained from these duties on the external commerce of the country, determined to commence the system of laying internal taxes directly upon the people. They knew that the people would be strongly disposed to resist this attempt, and that they must therefore begin in a very cautious manner. So they devised an exceedingly ingenious plan for the commencement.

What ingenious plan did they contrive for this purpose?

They made a law that no documents used in business in America, such as deeds, notes, receipts, and the like, should be of any binding force in law unless they were written on papers for which a tax had been paid in England. In order to carry the law into effect, the government had paper prepared suitable for writing such documents upon, and a stamp put upon every sheet. These stamps were of different kinds, according to the kind of document they were intended for. There was so much to be paid for a paper to write a deed upon, so much for a receipt, and so with all

the other different kinds. These were to be sent out to America and offered for sale. Of course, whoever bought them must pay the tax as well as the price of the paper; and if people did not buy them, but wrote their notes, for example, on common paper, the notes would be of no force. The men who signed them might pay them or not, as they pleased. The judges in the courts could not compel them to pay unless the note was written on stamped paper.

Why were the Americans not willing to pay this tax?

The amount of the tax was not very great. It would be, perhaps, only a few cents for a receipt for fifty dollars. The English government thought that the merchants would prefer to pay this small sum rather than put to risk so large a one. But the Americans were determined to do no such thing. They were resolved that the government should not be allowed to *begin* to tax them, for, if they were once permitted to begin, no one could tell when and where they would end.

What measures did they adopt to resist the payment of them?

They had meetings, and passed resolutions binding themselves not to use the stamped paper when it came, no matter how much trouble and inconvenience it might occasion them. These resolves they carried fully into effect. The stamped papers came, but nobody would buy them.

What was the result of the contest?

The affair led to a great deal of difficulty, and produced an intense excitement throughout the country; but, finally, the government, finding that the Americans were fully determined not to yield, repealed the law. They, however, when they repealed it, passed a vote asserting that they had a perfect right to tax the colonies in any way they thought fit, and they intended to tax them on some future occasion.

Describe the second attempt that the English government made to tax the colonies, and how they reasoned on the subject.

It was not long before the occasion came. The English gov-

ernment resolved to try the experiment again. They made a law laying duties on several articles which it was customary to import from England into America in those days. They chose the articles which they supposed it would be most difficult for the Americans to do without. The articles were glass, paper, colors to be used in paint, and tea. "They managed to get along without using the stamped paper," thought the government, "but they will have to pay these taxes, or else go without any glass or paint for their houses, or any paper to write or print upon, and the women can have no tea."

What measures did they adopt to enforce the law, and what was the effect of them?

When the law was passed, in order to intimidate the Americans and make sure of enforcing it, they sent some ships of war to Boston, where the spirit of resistance seemed to be the strongest. They landed a large number of troops from these ships and garrisoned the forts with them. These measures, however, instead of intimidating the Bostonians, only exasperated them, and made them still more determined that they would not submit.

What measures did the people of the colonies adopt to oppose them?

The Massachusetts Legislature sent remonstrances to England, expressing in the strongest terms their opposition to these laws, and public meetings were held in all parts of the country, in which resolutions were passed taking the same ground. In these meetings the people resolved that they would not use any of the articles that were taxed in this way, and denounced every merchant who should import them, and offer them for sale, as an enemy to his country.

What was done in respect to the merchants who would import the taxed goods?

Still, some merchants would persist in importing them, and the people were greatly incensed against them for so doing. The very

boys caught the general spirit, and they used to make effigies of these merchants, and after carrying them about the town, and holding them up to the scorn and derision of the crowd, would burn them in the streets.

Give an account of the shooting of the boy in Boston.

At one time the boys became involved in an affray with one of the men who was thus obnoxious to them, and followed him to his house. The man went in, and thus escaped out of their hands. The boys then began to throw snowballs and pieces of ice at the house. The man became exasperated with them, and, thinking that he had a right to protect his dwelling from such an attack, brought a gun to the window and fired, and killed one of the boys.

What effect did this occurrence produce?

This occurrence produced an intense excitement throughout the town. The funeral of the boy was attended by an immense concourse of people. For some days nothing else was talked of, and every where were heard the most violent denunciations and threats of vengeance.

Give an account of the soldiers shooting into the crowd in State Street, Boston.

After this, disputes and collisions between the people on the one hand, and the soldiers, and the government officers, and all who were supposed to favor the British side, on the other, grew more and more frequent and alarming. When blood begins to be shed in such contentions, the effect is always to exasperate the parties more and more against each other, instead of intimidating them. At length, on one occasion, a very serious collision took place in Boston between the troops and the citizens, which increased the general excitement to a higher degree than ever. One night—it was in the evening of the fifth of March, 1770—some young men threw snowballs at a sentinel who was on guard at the Custom-house. He probably repelled the assault somewhat rudely, and this led to a disturbance. Soon a crowd collected, and there were

indications of a riot. The captain of the guard, hearing of this difficulty, sent a sergeant and six men to the spot. He thought the appearance of the soldiers would intimidate the crowd and drive them away, but it seemed only to increase their excitement and exasperation. At last the command was given to fire. The soldiers obeyed. Three of the crowd were killed on the spot, and two more were mortally wounded. This occurrence produced a prodigious sensation, and aroused the people almost to phrensy. They called it a massacre.

THE BOSTON MASSACRE.

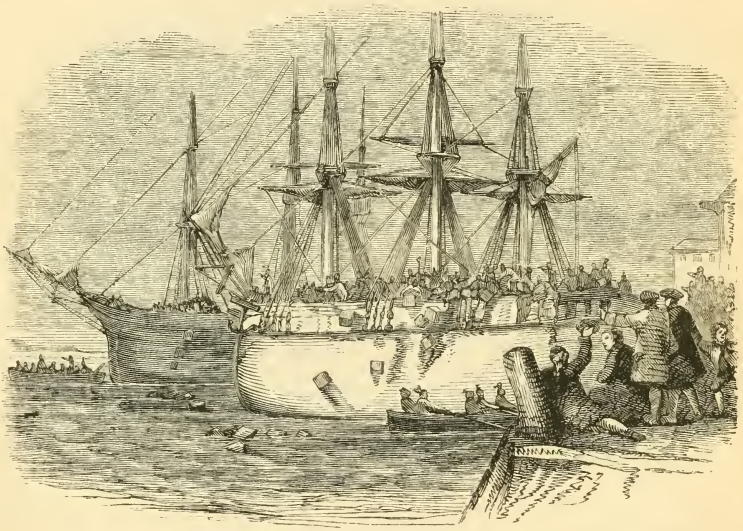
What course did the governors at last recommend to the English ministers, and what did the ministers decide to do?

At length, the governors of the provinces, seeing how great the excitement was becoming, wrote to the ministers in England that if they persisted in enforcing the law which they had passed, the colonists would soon come to open rebellion, and recommended to them to give way a little, if it was only for a time. The government, after taking the case into full consideration, finally decided

that they would take off all the taxes except the one on tea. That, they insisted, must stand.

Give an account of the controversy about the tea in Boston.

The Bostonians were determined that it should not stand. They all resolved that they would not buy any of the tea when it should come. More than this, as soon as the ship which brought the first cargo of tea arrived, a company of men went on board late in the evening, and took possession of the ship, hoisted up the tea-chests out of the hold, and threw it all over into the water. There were



THROWING THE TEA OVERBOARD.

two hundred and forty chests and one hundred half-chests that were thus destroyed. There were about thirty men in the party. They were disguised as Indians. We see some of them in the boat alongside the ship. They disguised themselves in this way in order that it might not be known who they were by the people on board the ship.

What measures did the English government now adopt to punish the Bostonians?

The English government were greatly enraged at this transaction. They immediately passed a law to shut up the port of Boston, so that no ships could pass either in or out. This destroyed, for a time, the commerce of the town, and produced great distress and suffering.

What effect did this severity produce on the Bostonians, and on the people of the other colonies?

This measure only strengthened the determination of the Bostonians not to submit to these encroachments of a distant government, which, not contented with the large share of power which it had always hitherto enjoyed over the colonies, now grasped at the whole. Indeed, many of the leaders among the Americans began to ask seriously whether the time had not come when they ought to throw off the foreign dominion entirely, and thenceforth manage their own affairs in their own way, as an independent nation. All the other colonies sympathized strongly with the Massachusetts colony and the Bostonians, and were prepared to join them in taking any stand which they might finally decide upon.

CHAPTER VII.

THE AMERICAN CONGRESS.

What means did the colonies contrive to enable them to keep up a communication with each other?

Although the Legislatures of the different colonies had been prevented from organizing any thing like a regular confederation, still they kept up a constant communication with each other by means of committees of correspondence. Through these committees the people of Boston and of Massachusetts received assurances of sympathy and promises of aid from almost all the other colonies.

What was done by the Legislature of Virginia?

Virginia came nobly to her aid. The Legislature appointed a day of fasting and prayer in consideration of "the hostile invasion," as they expressed it, "of the city of Boston, in our sister colony of Massachusetts," thus showing that they intended to make common cause with her. They called upon the people to pray devoutly to God to make them all of one heart and one mind, firmly to oppose by all just and proper means every invasion of American rights.

What was the effect of this action of Virginia on the other colonies and on the British government?

This decided stand by the Virginia Legislature had great influence throughout the country. Virginia was altogether the leading colony south of New England. The other Southern colonies took substantially the same ground. The British government saw that the whole country was likely to be united against them, and they began in earnest to prepare for war. They ordered more ships of war to Boston, and strengthened the forts there, and sent out re-enforcements of soldiers. The Legislatures of the colonies, on the other hand, began to pass acts for raising and equipping troops in America.

What measures were adopted for forming a confederation?

They also began to take measures for having a confederation of some kind formed to unite the several colonies together. They appointed delegates, a certain number from each colony, who were to meet at Philadelphia, which was a convenient place, being in a central situation between the Northern and Southern colonies.

How was the Congress constituted, and what could it do?

These delegates, at their meeting in Philadelphia, were to form a body called a Congress. This Congress would have, it is true, no absolute power, but they could consult in respect to the measures best for the colonies to pursue, and recommend them for adoption, and thus enable the colonies to act in concert.

How did the governor of Massachusetts attempt to prevent the election of delegates to the Congress?

The governors of the colonies did all they could to prevent the Legislatures from adopting these measures. When the governor of Massachusetts heard that the Legislature of that colony were going to choose delegates to the Congress, he sent in great haste to dissolve the assembly. This he had a legal right to do, for it had been provided in the Constitution of the colony that the governor, though he could not control the action of the Legislature while it was in session, might adjourn or dissolve it at his pleasure, and thus put an end to its action at any time.

How did his plan succeed?

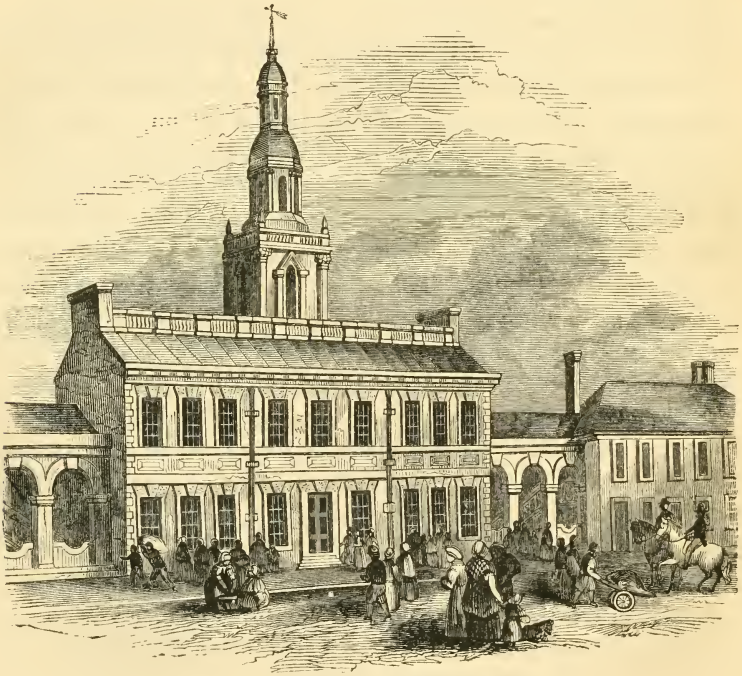
The Legislature learned in some way that the governor's messenger was coming to dissolve the body just as they were proceeding to choose delegates to the Congress; so they locked the doors, and would not let any body in, and then went on choosing the delegates. The messenger knocked long at the door, but nobody opened it; so he read the proclamation dissolving the assembly on the stairs, and then went away. When the assembly had finished the business of choosing the delegates to Congress, they opened the doors, and then they heard that the proclamation had been read to dissolve them; so they closed the session, and the members went to their several homes, having accomplished all that they desired.

Why could not the Legislature be punished for this?

In this proceeding they did nothing for which any of them could be legally punished; for although there was a law requiring them to leave off doing business and separate as soon as they should receive a message from the governor dissolving the meeting, still they were not obliged to separate before they actually received the message, and in the mean time there was no law against their locking their doors whenever they pleased. Thus they accomplished their object of choosing the delegates without any violation of law.

What was the character and influence of the Congress when it was convened?

Soon after this the delegates met at Philadelphia, and organized themselves into a permanent body, which was called the American Congress. The establishment of this Congress was a very important event. It very soon acquired great influence, and, in the end, took the general direction of affairs, and with the co-operation and help of the people of the colonies, carried the revolution through to a successful end. The building in Philadelphia in which the Congress held its meetings is represented in the engraving. It is still standing, and is an object of great veneration. It is known



INDEPENDENCE HALL.

by the name of Independence Hall, for it was in that building that the Declaration of Independence was made.

What course did affairs take after the Congress assembled?

After the Congress assembled there was no longer any reasonable hope of settling the difficulty amicably, and so both sides began to prepare vigorously for war. The people of the different colonies began to make collections of arms and ammunition, and to enroll soldiers. In some places they built forts, or seized those that had before been in the hands of the governors. The Congress, too, in their sessions at Philadelphia, adopted a great many important measures.

What were some of the measures that Congress adopted?

They drew up a declaration of the rights of the people of America, and published it to the world. They recommended to the people of the colonies to resolve not to purchase any English goods whatever till the oppressive laws which were made against them should be repealed. They expressed their determination to resist these laws to the last extremity. They sent memorials, too, to the West India Islands and to Canada, to invite the people of those colonies to join the confederacy. After adopting this and other preliminary measures, they adjourned, with the intention of meeting again when the results of this action should be known.

CHAPTER VIII.

COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR.

When did the war break out?

The transactions described in the last chapter occurred in the fall of 1774, and, during the whole of the winter following, the excitement of the country increased, and the preparations on both sides for the coming contest went on. At length, in the month of April, 1775, the crisis arrived.

Who was General Gage, and what was the object of the expedition which was sent to Concord?

The first battle was fought at Lexington, a town about twenty miles from Boston, on the way to Concord. Concord was quite a considerable town even in those early days, and the people had collected there a large supply of arms and ammunition, which they intended to use against the British in case war should break out. General Gage was the commander of the government troops in Boston at that time, and he determined to go out to Concord and seize these stores.

Give an account of the plan of the expedition, and the progress of it as far as to Lexington.

He organized a secret expedition of eight hundred men, and in the night sent them in boats across the water which separates the peninsula of Boston from the main land. There are many bridges there now, but there were none then. The troops marched all night. The officers had taken every possible precaution to keep the expedition profoundly secret, in order that they might surprise the keepers of the stores at Concord, and so seize and destroy the ammunition without any conflict. They supposed that they had succeeded in this, and confidently expected to accomplish the object of their enterprise in the morning without any serious resistance; when all at once, on entering the town of Lexington, they found a band of armed men drawn up across the road, evidently prepared to resist them.

How did it happen that there was a force ready at Lexington to oppose the expedition?

The explanation of this was, that some Americans, who had seen the troops soon after they landed from the boats and had commenced their march, took measures immediately for spreading the alarm. They sent horsemen from town to town, to ring the bells and call out the people. The people rose from their beds, dressed and armed themselves in haste, and went off in small bands, as

they chanced to come together, toward the road which they supposed the troops would take in going to Concord. The force which the British detachment encountered at Lexington was the first of these bands that they met.

What took place at Lexington?

There were about seventy of the Americans; but seventy men, of course, could not hope successfully to resist eight hundred. They fought a short time, until quite a number of them were killed, and then retreated.

How did the expedition end?

The British detachment then went on. They found another band of Americans at Concord, and another brief contest took place there. They succeeded, however, in taking and destroying the stores, and then they made good their retreat to Boston, though they were pursued and harassed all the way, and nearly two hundred of them were killed or wounded.

What was the effect which this battle produced on the country?

The news of this encounter spread like wildfire throughout the country, and aroused the people to the highest pitch of excitement. Every body was at once ready for war.

Describe what took place in respect to Boston.

Great numbers of men enlisted as volunteers, and marched toward Boston. In a short time, so large a force was thus assembled that the town was hemmed in on every side, and the British troops were shut up in it as if they were besieged. There were then no bridges leading from Boston to the main land. The only access, except by boats, was over the Neck. The British took possession of the Neck and fortified it, so as to prevent the Americans from coming in. Of course, almost all communication between the town and the country was cut off, and the town itself was filled with excitement and terror, the soldiery taking complete possession of it, and treating the inhabitants, as usual in such cases, with great severity.

Who was the British commander in Boston, and what plans did he now form?

The name of the officer who commanded the British troops, it has already been stated, was General Gage. His plan was to fortify himself in Boston until more ships and more troops should arrive from England, and then to march out into the country, and attack and disperse the American armies that had assembled there. The plan of the Americans, on the other hand, was to increase and concentrate their troops, and, as soon as they were strong enough, attack the British in Boston and drive them away.

What was the result in the end?

The Americans succeeded, though not immediately. The British remained in Boston nearly a year before they could be expelled. The first attempt that the Americans made to expel them failed, and quite a long time elapsed afterward before they were ready to make another.

Give an account of the situation of the hills about Boston.

The attempt that failed happened thus: Boston is situated on a peninsula that lies in the middle of a bay. There are, however, on the north, and also on the south, pretty high hills that overlook this bay. The hills on the north are in Charlestown. The principal one is Bunker Hill. Those on the south are in Dorchester, and are called Dorchester Heights.

What was the first plan formed by the Americans for expelling the British troops from Boston?

The first plan of the Americans to drive the British out of Boston was to go secretly in the night to Bunker Hill, and build what is called a redoubt there. A redoubt is a broad and high bank of earth, with openings in it here and there for the mouths of cannon. The Americans thought that if they could get the redoubt so far finished in one night that it would shelter the men behind it, the next day, from the cannons on board the ships in the harbor and in the forts of the town, they could then bring their own cannons

to it, and fire upon the town or the ships themselves, and so drive the British troops away.

Give an account of the proceedings of the Americans in building the redoubt.

The party that were sent to make the redoubt assembled in Cambridge in the evening. There were quite a number of troops, and two hundred workmen from Concord. The workmen carried pickaxes and shovels with them, and provisions to last them twenty-four hours. They set out as soon as it was dark. Two men led the way with dark lanterns. It was a very warm summer's night. The men were charged to march along as silently as possible, and not to speak a word. As soon as they reached the ground, the officers marked out the lines for the redoubt, while the men laid down their packs, and stacked their arms, and got their tools ready. As soon as the lines were drawn they began to dig. They could see the lights in Boston, at a short distance from them, and also on board the men-of-war in the harbor. They were afraid to make the least noise at their work, for fear of alarming the sentinels on board the ships, in which case they would soon have seen the flashes of the guns from the sides of them lighting up the night, each one followed by a heavy shot or shell, which would come tearing its way into their intrenchments.

How were they discovered, and what followed?

They succeeded in keeping secret what they were doing until the morning, and then, as soon as it was light, they were of course discovered. The ships in the harbor and the forts in the town immediately opened fire upon them; but the embankment was now completed, and it protected them so well, that the shots did no harm.

Describe the state of things among the people of Boston the next morning.

All the people of Boston were thrown into the greatest state of excitement on hearing this cannonading. They were waked up by it in the morning. They knew by the sound of the guns that

they were shotted, and they were sure, therefore, that something very serious had occurred. They went up to the tops of the houses to look. There they could see the new redoubt that had sprung up so mysteriously in the night on Bunker Hill, and they could see the balls flying toward it through the air from the cannon of the ships and forts. Some were terrified at the spectacle; others were pleased to find that their countrymen had gained so strong a position. The whole town was filled with the wildest excitement. All this time the men on Bunker Hill went on steadily with their work, notwithstanding the firing, and about noon they finished it.

What measures did General Gage adopt for dispossessing the Americans, and what was the result?

General Gage determined immediately that he must dislodge the Americans from their redoubt at once, at all hazards. "If we do not drive them away from that hill," said he to himself, "they will very soon drive us away from Boston." So he ordered out a detachment of soldiers, and made ready to cross the water to Charlestown. The detachment consisted of over two thousand men. There were twenty-eight barges and boats prepared to take them over. They landed on the shore at some distance from the hill, and waited there a short time for another body of troops from the ships. When all were ready, they marched up the hill and attacked the redoubt. There was a long and obstinate conflict, but at last the Americans were beaten and compelled to retreat.

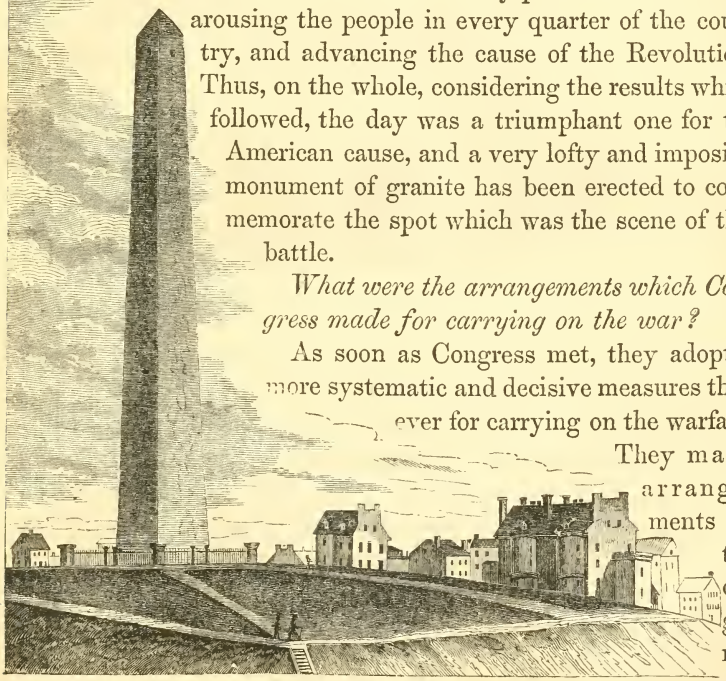
What is there specially remarkable in respect to the battle of Bunker Hill?

Notwithstanding that the British really, in the end, gained the day, this battle of Bunker Hill has always been regarded in history as an American triumph, and the people of this country have gloried in it as one of the greatest achievements of the Revolution. There were only one thousand five hundred Americans engaged, while of the English there were four thousand. The Americans

were aided by their redoubt, but then the British, on the other hand, were supported by the firing from a fort in Boston, and by shot and shells from the ships of war; and yet twice did the Americans drive back the assailants down the hill. It was not till the third attack that they succeeded, and then because the American supplies of ammunition gave out, so that they could no longer continue their fire.

What was the effect of the battle on the country?

This, it is true, was only a limited and partial success, but it animated the soldiers in all the American camps in a wonderful manner. The news of the battle spread rapidly all over the land, and it exerted a very powerful influence in arousing the people in every quarter of the country, and advancing the cause of the Revolution. Thus, on the whole, considering the results which followed, the day was a triumphant one for the American cause, and a very lofty and imposing monument of granite has been erected to commemorate the spot which was the scene of this battle.



MONUMENT ON BUNKER HILL.

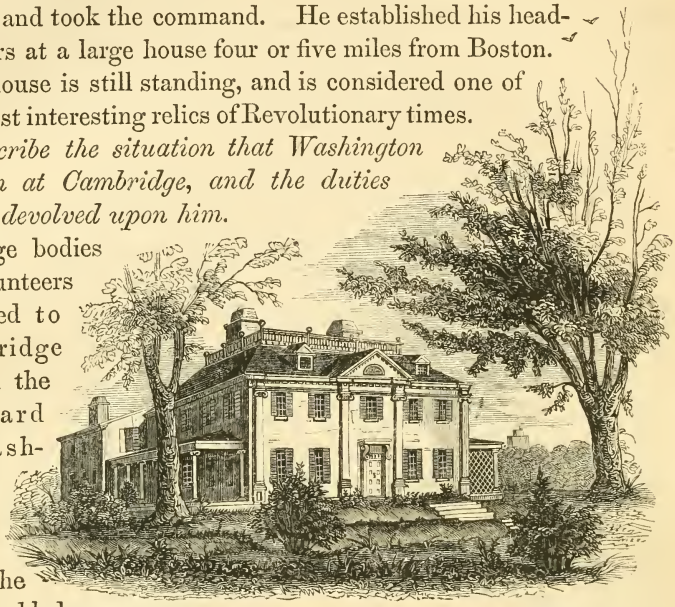
What were the arrangements which Congress made for carrying on the war?

As soon as Congress met, they adopted more systematic and decisive measures than ever for carrying on the warfare. They made arrangements for the organiza-

tion of a large army. They appointed General Washington commander-in-chief of it. He proceeded to Cambridge and took the command. He established his head-quarters at a large house four or five miles from Boston. This house is still standing, and is considered one of the most interesting relics of Revolutionary times.

Describe the situation that Washington was in at Cambridge, and the duties which devolved upon him.

Large bodies of volunteers hastened to Cambridge to join the standard of Washington, and by their means he was enabled to occupy all the country around Boston, so that the British forces were completely shut in, as if they were besieged. Washington was constantly engaged all summer in organizing his army, providing them with food, clothing, and ammunition, and in teaching the soldiers their duty. They were, of course, very destitute in respect to all the usual requisites for war, as they were generally young farmers or mechanics, just from the work-shop or the field, and were armed with such chance weapons as came most readily to hand.



WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT CAMBRIDGE.

Why could not Washington at once attack the British?

With the means at his command he could not attack the British in Boston with any hope of success. He had very little artillery;

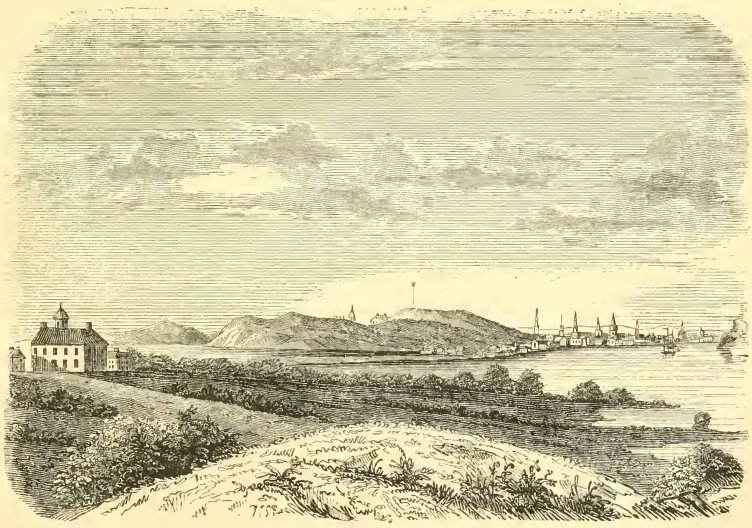
he had no boats in which to convey his troops to the town across the water, and the only approach by land was fortified in such a manner as to make it impossible to force the lines without cannon.

How was it that at last a way seemed to be opened to him?

The summer passed away and the winter came. The frost bridged the waters of the bay, and seemed to open a passage for the troops, and Washington seriously contemplated making an attack upon the town over the ice. On mature deliberation, this plan was found too doubtful of success, and it was abandoned.

Give an account of the second serious plan formed for dislodging the British, and of the work of the men in executing it.

Early in the spring, however, the second great effort was made by the Americans to dislodge the British from Boston, and it succeeded triumphantly. It was a repetition of the attempted manœuvre of Bunker Hill. One night in March, a body of troops were sent up to the heights of Dorchester and set to work, throw-



VIEW OF BOSTON FROM DORCHESTER HEIGHTS.

ing up intrenchments there just as they had done on Bunker Hill. But this undertaking was managed on a much more extensive scale than the other. Six times as many workmen were employed in digging the trench and throwing up the embankment as were sent to Bunker Hill, and there was a large body of troops detached to accompany and protect them. The hill was higher too, and so was much more safe from an attack. The men worked hard all night, and by morning the work was wellnigh completed.

Describe what took place the next morning in Boston.

As soon as it was light, the sentinels on board the men-of-war were amazed at seeing a strong fortress, that had grown up in the night, frowning upon them from a hill so near as to place them in imminent danger. The commander of the ships sent word to Lord Howe, who was now the general-in-chief on shore, that unless he dislodged those men from their post on the Heights, he should be obliged to leave the harbor immediately with all his ships, "for the Americans could fire," he said, "directly down upon him as soon as they should get their guns in position." Lord Howe immediately fitted out an expedition to go in boats and storm the redoubts, as the troops had done before at Bunker Hill.

What was the result of the expedition sent to dislodge the Americans?

The men embarked and set sail, and every body expected a terrible battle; but a storm came on suddenly, and threw them all into confusion. Some were upset, some driven on the shore, and the whole fleet was so scattered and broken up, that before they could be collected again, and repaired, and made ready for another attempt, the Americans had completed their works, and made them so strong that the British were afraid to attack them.

What proposal did General Howe now make to General Washington?

General Howe sent word to General Washington that if he would allow them to embark on board their ships in peace, they

would all go away. "But if you fire upon us from your intrenchments on the Heights," said he, "while we are going on board, then we will burn the town."

What was the result?

General Washington wished to save the town, and so he made an agreement with Lord Howe, that if he would go away and leave every thing as it was, they would allow him to go in peace. The British, accordingly, embarked in the ships and sailed out of the harbor. For some time nobody knew where they were going.

CHAPTER IX.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

What were the designs and intentions of the colonists at the commencement of the war?

The Declaration of Independence was made on the 4th of July, 1776. This was not until more than a year after the war broke out. During all this time, the people of the colonies, though determined that they would not submit to being taxed by a government three thousand miles away, had yet not resolved to separate entirely from the mother country. They professed to be loyal and obedient in spirit still, as subjects of the English king, but they insisted on enjoying the same rights and privileges that were claimed and enjoyed by all other British subjects.

What was really the claim of the colonists in respect to taxation?

It must be distinctly borne in mind, in order to understand the merits of this dispute, that the colonists did not by any means claim that they ought not to be taxed at all, but only that, like the people of England themselves, they should have the control of the subject of taxation in their own Legislatures. They were not willing to be taxed by the English Legislature.

How did they reason on the subject?

The Parliament was the Legislature of the people of England. Without the act of Parliament, neither the king nor the government could lay any tax whatever on the people at home. Now the colonies had their Legislatures too, and the people of the colonies maintained that it was those Legislatures, and not the Legislature of the people at home, that should control the subject of taxation in America. There was no justice or right whatever that the Legislature of one portion of the king's dominions should regulate the taxes for the people of another portion. It would be almost as reasonable, they maintained, to expect that the Legislatures of America should regulate the taxation of the people of England, as that the Legislature of England should do it for the people of America. Thus all that the Americans claimed was that, while they were willing to remain loyal and faithful subjects of the British king, they should be protected in the enjoyment of the same rights and privileges in their own country that the people of England enjoyed in theirs.

What change took place in the views of the colonists as the war went on?

As the war went on, however, during the year after it first broke out, the Americans became gradually more and more alienated from the mother country, and thus the breach grew wider and wider. All attempts to compromise and settle the dispute failed. The English government would make no terms with the Americans short of exacting from them a complete and absolute surrender to their authority.

To what conclusion did the leaders finally come?

At length many leading Americans began to think that the time was come when it would be best for the colonists to renounce their allegiance to England altogether. "Let us proclaim our independence," said they, "and take our stand boldly among the nations of the earth."

What were at first the views of the mass of the people on this subject?

This proposal was received at first, by many persons, with great alarm. There was still remaining, too, in the minds of a large portion of the people, a lingering attachment to the mother country. "Besides," said they, "we can not hope to contend successfully against so great a power. So long as our resistance is confined to opposing a single unjust and oppressive law, England will not make any very great efforts to subdue us, and will finally give up the contest and grant us our rights; but if we go to so great an extreme as wholly to renounce the authority of the mother country, and attempt to make ourselves independent altogether, then the spirit of the government will be thoroughly aroused, and they will come upon us with all the strength and all the resources of the empire, rather than yield."

How did the leaders reply to these arguments?

To this, those who were in favor of independence replied, that doubtless the English government would make every possible effort to reconquer the colonies and bring them back, if they should attempt to break entirely away from the mother country; and they admitted that the contest would be very unequal between the mighty British empire, with its great and powerful ships of war, and its immense armies of well-equipped and well-trained troops on the one hand, and, on the other, the thinly-peopled and scattered population of the colonies, with no troops but hastily-collected volunteers, coming, half armed, and destitute of any knowledge of war, from the work-shops and fields.

From what quarter did they hope that they might receive aid?

"But then," said they, "we shall not be alone in the contest. England has enemies in Europe who will be glad to join us when they find that we have fully committed ourselves to the struggle. There are France, and Spain, and Holland. They are the natural enemies of England. They have been at war with England

half of the time for centuries. They are always ready to take advantage of any favorable opportunity to make war upon her. And though they will not help us now, while we only rebel against a tax, and are ready to submit to the English dominion again as soon as the tax is repealed, they would willingly, and even gladly, join us if we would separate from her entirely, and declare ourselves a free and independent nation."

What general change of opinion on the subject of government took place at this time among the people?

In the mean time, while discussions like these were going on among the statesmen and the members of Congress, a strong love of liberty and independence was rapidly extending among all classes of the people. They began to believe that in government, as in every thing else, men were competent to manage their own affairs, and they were right in this opinion.

How have kings and nobles usually reasoned on this subject?

It has been a great point with despots and aristocrats, in all ages and in all countries, to try to convince the world that men are not capable of managing their own affairs, but that somebody must be exalted over them to govern them. "The wise and the good," they say, "must rule over the masses, who are ignorant and bad."

In what way does this reasoning fail?

Under pretense of conforming to this necessity, they themselves take the command, and keep the people under subjection to them, though, instead of being the wise and the good, they are only cunning and wicked. It is not possible for the imagination to conceive of characters more selfish, profligate, and vile, than the line of English kings, with two or three doubtful exceptions, have uniformly exhibited from the earliest periods to the present day.

What is generally the character of hereditary legislators?

It is the same with the kings of France and of all other countries. Nobles, where a class of nobles exist, are no better. The

class of aristocrats that have governed England for the last century are proverbial all over the world for their idleness, their contempt for every thing good and useful, their heartlessness, and the vile, lawless, and profligate character which they maintain in private life. There are some distinguished exceptions, it is true, but this is the general rule. Nor are the English aristocracy peculiar in this. It is so, and always has been so, with every aristocracy that the world has produced. It always must be so.

How has the plan of putting government into the hands of the wise and good always resulted?

The plan of putting the government of a people into the hands of a few, in the hope that they will be the wise and the good, always has resulted, and probably always will result, in exalting to power the cunning and the bad, that they may monopolize the enjoyments and honors of wealth, while they keep down the masses who produce it in abject and perpetual poverty.

To what decision did the colonies finally come, and how was this decision expressed?

The people of the different colonies pondered on these things. They talked about them during the long and dismal winter. At the meeting of the Legislatures of the several colonies the question was discussed. Some of these Legislatures passed resolves recommending independence. At length, when the members of the Congress thought that the people of the country had come to the conclusion that it would be best for them to separate from England, they prepared to take measures for carrying the determination into effect. Accordingly, about the middle of June, a resolution on the subject was introduced.

What was the resolution that was proposed in Congress?

Resolved, That these United States are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; and that all political connection between us and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved.

What were the thoughts of the members of Congress when the resolution came before them?

This resolution was moved by a member from Virginia, and seconded by a member from Massachusetts. It was listened to with profound and solemn attention. To pass it would subject every man who should vote for it, or sustain it in any way, to the penalty of death, in case the attempt to establish the resolution should fail. To be called upon to act, therefore, on such a question, imposed a very heavy responsibility upon the assembly. It was a question of salvation or ruin for the country, and of life and death for every man in the Congress who should dare to vote upon it.

What were the proceedings of Congress in regard to the resolution?

The Congress voted to postpone the consideration of the question for three days. At the end of the three days they postponed the final decision for a fortnight longer; and, in the mean time, as it was becoming more and more clear every day that the resolution would then be adopted, a committee was appointed to draw up the form of a declaration to announce to the world the decision which the colonies had formed, and to explain the reasons for it.

Give some account of the committee that was appointed to draw up the Declaration of Independence.

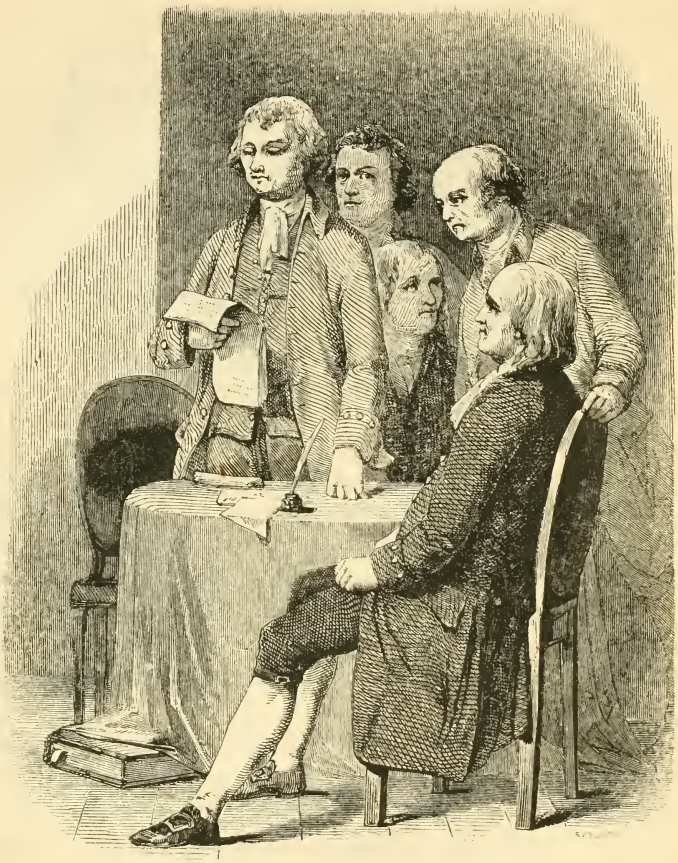
This committee consisted of five persons: their names were Adams, Sherman, Livingston, Jefferson, and Franklin. In the engraving you see excellent portraits of these men. They all immortalized themselves by the courage they displayed in daring to draw up the Declaration of Independence, which they knew would bring upon them the most inveterate and implacable hostility of the English government. Adams and Jefferson afterward became presidents of the United States. Franklin was sent as an embassador to France, as we shall see by-and-by. Sherman and Liv-

ADAMS, SHERMAN, LIVINGSTON, JEFFERSON, FRANKLIN

ingston also subsequently attained to great distinction. The centre figure, standing more conspicuously to view than the rest, is Jefferson. The artist has given him the most prominent place, because he was appointed by the committee to write the declaration. The one on the extreme left is John Adams. Franklin is on the extreme right. He has his spectacles in his hand. Sherman stands a little behind, next to Adams, and Livingston still farther beyond.

How did the committee proceed in drawing up and considering the Declaration?

In the next engraving you will see another view of the committee, representing them in the act of listening to the declaration which Jefferson had written. By comparing the faces in the two engravings, the reader will easily identify the several members in the latter. The members of the committee heard the declaration which Jefferson had drawn up, and approved it. Observe the serious but satisfied expression of their countenances as they listen. They made some slight alterations in it, and then reported it to Congress. After a very careful and solemn consideration of the



JEFFERSON READING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

subject, Congress finally decided to adopt it by a unanimous vote, and it was immediately proclaimed to the world.

How was the Declaration received by the country?

The whole country was filled with the highest animation and joy. Bells were rung, cannons were fired, and illuminations and bonfires were kindled all over the land. The whole country was

filled with rejoicing at the thought that in name, at least, the people were independent and free. But alas! between assuming the name of independence and freedom and establishing the reality, a long and weary road of privation, danger, and suffering was to be traveled, and Congress and the country now had to set themselves at work in earnest to prepare for the terrible journey.

CHAPTER X.

PROGRESS OF THE WAR.

What was the general state of the country at this time?

During the time while the contest had been going on in and around Boston, a great many other collisions had taken place between the colonies and the British authorities in all parts of the country. The people had risen against the government in a great many different cities and towns. Various military expeditions had been organized. Governors had been driven away from their provinces, and forts had been taken. In a word, the British rule had been entirely overthrown almost from one extreme of the country to another, and the ministry in England saw that a very systematic, extended, and costly plan of operations would be required to recover it again.

What measures were adopted by the British government?

The government determined that they would recover it again, let the cost be what it might. So they induced the Parliament to make large grants of money to pay the expense, and then raised a numerous army and equipped a powerful fleet, and sent them to America, with orders to prosecute the war on the most extended scale and in the most vigorous manner, unless they found that the Americans, when they saw how formidable the preparations were which had been made against them, would give up the hopeless contest and submit.

What was the alternative that they determined to offer to the Americans?

"Make them first a fair offer," said the ministers to the commanders of the army and of the fleet, "that if they will give up the rebellion and submit, they shall be pardoned—all except the leaders. If they will not accept this offer, then force your way into the country at all points, and march through it in every direction with fire and sword."

Who was the commander-in-chief of the British armies, and where was he at the present time?

The general command of the army was given to Lord Howe, who had been expelled from Boston as related in a preceding chapter. He came to Staten Island, near New York. He brought with him there the forces that he had withdrawn from Boston, and also the large re-enforcements that had been sent from England. These, united, formed a large army.

What were his three plans? Did you find all the routes referred to on the map?

His plan was first to offer the rebels pardon if they would submit and give up the leaders to punishment, and then, if they refused to do so, to invade the country by three distinct and independent expeditions. One was to land at New York, and conquer the cities of New York and Philadelphia, and overrun the Middle States. The second was to come down from Canada by the way of Lake Champlain and the River Hudson, so as to take possession of a broad belt of territory extending from north to south through the very heart of the country, and thus cut off New England from all communication with the middle and southern colonies. The third plan was to invade the southern colonies, and, after taking possession of Charleston, overrun and conquer all the region around it.*

* The pupil should by all means look out these proposed routes on a map of North America.

Give an account of the offers of pardon that Howe made, and of the replies made by the Americans.

The plan of bringing the Americans to submission by offering them pardon did not succeed at all. As soon as General Howe landed on Staten Island, he sent a letter to General Washington, and afterward the Congress at Philadelphia sent a committee to him to learn what were the proposals he had to make. But these negotiations led to no result. All the power that Lord Howe had been invested with was to pardon the Americans if they would admit that they were rebellious subjects of the King of England, and return to their allegiance. The Americans, in reply, said that they were not the subjects of the King of England at all. They said, moreover, that they had been guilty of no crime, and would accept of no pardon. They were a free and independent people, and if Lord Howe was prepared to treat with them as such, they were ready to listen to what he had to say, but they would not receive any communication whatever that was addressed to them as subjects of the King of England in a state of rebellion. So Lord Howe found that the plan of pardoning the revolutionary armies would not succeed, and he began to prepare vigorously for war.

What was the idea of the Americans in respect to the conduct of the war?

Of course the Americans knew very well that no force which they could bring into the field would be strong enough to conquer the English armies. They knew that they must at first retreat before them, but they hoped in the end to wear them out by the stubbornness and pertinacity of their resistance.

Give an account of the commander-in-chief of the army, and of his situation when chosen to the command.

General Washington was a calm and quiet, but very determined man. He was about forty-five years old at the time when he was chosen commander of the American armies. He was a gentleman

of Virginia, living in quiet retirement at the time with his wife and family. In the opposite engraving is a portrait of him as he appeared a short time before his appointment. His fortune was large, and he was surrounded with every means of comfort and enjoyment. But, though he had thus so much to lose, and, personally, so little to gain by undertaking the very dangerous service required of him, he accepted the appointment without any hesitation, and immediately proceeded to Cambridge, as we have already seen, to take the command. He said, moreover, that he would not receive any compensation for his services. He would keep an exact account of his expenses, and that account Congress might pay, but nothing more.

Describe the difficulties that Washington had to encounter.

Washington had immense difficulties to encounter in managing his armies. The soldiers were almost altogether what are called raw recruits—that is, they were young men from work-shops and farms, who came to the camp as volunteers, bringing with them any sort of swords or guns that they could obtain. They knew nothing about war, and, though at first they were full of zeal, they soon became wearied and discouraged when things went against them. In the winters they suffered extremely from cold, and sometimes from hunger. Congress was unable to furnish them with suitable supplies. The English soldiers, on the other hand, were provided with the very best of arms and accoutrements, and with abundance of comfortable clothing.

Describe the comparative condition of the British and American armies in respect to shelter.

The English armies, in the course of the war, being generally strongest wherever they went, took possession of the cities and large towns, where, especially in the cold and stormy seasons of the year, they lived sumptuously in elegant mansions, and even the soldiers were well and comfortably housed, while the Americans were suffering cold, and hunger, and nakedness in such miserable

WASHINGTON BEFORE HE WAS APPOINTED TO THE COMMAND.

huts as they could build in the woods, or under worn-out and leaky tents, which were wholly insufficient to exclude either the snow, the wind, or the rain.

What aid did the American soldiers receive from their friends at home?

Their friends at home did all in their power to supply their wants and relieve their sufferings. Mothers and sisters worked late in the winter nights to make warm clothing for them; and

boys, too young and tender to be exposed to such dangers, were sent to carry them to the camp. People made contributions to procure arms, and ammunition, and supplies of food, and the Legislatures of the different colonies devised the best measures they could to provide for the wants of the army, and assist them to keep the field against the invaders.

What was the course of the war in the neighborhood of New York?

Still, in spite of all that could be done, the American army was for a long time too weak to resist its enemies. They were first driven out of New York. Then the forts which they had built on the Hudson River above New York were taken, and Washington was forced to retire farther and farther into the interior. Sometimes he found some small country house which he could make his

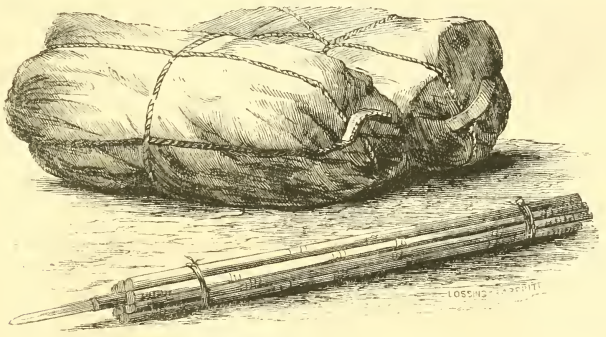
WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT TAPPAN.

head-quarters for a time, and thus, for a brief period, be under the shelter of a roof. All the houses which he thus occupied are now greatly honored, and are visited every year by many strangers, who regard them with feelings of the deepest interest, and love to linger near them, thinking of the days when the Father of his Coun-

try bore within those humble walls his heavy burden of anxiety and care.

Describe Washington's tent, and why did he have occasion for it?

It was not always that Washington could have a roof of any kind to shelter him. He lived often in a tent, in the midst of his soldiers, and exposed to continual alarms. The tent that he used has been preserved to the present day. It is packed in two great leather coverings, the same in which it used to be packed when it was in service in the war. The poles by which it was supported lie in a bundle by the side of it.



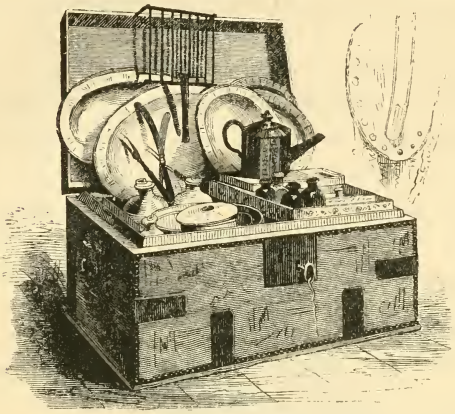
WASHINGTON'S TENT.

How was such a tent set up?

The central part of the tent was supported by the poles, which were set in the ground, and framed or lashed together above. Then the tent-cloth was spread over these poles, and the sides were drawn out by means of strong cords, and fastened to stakes driven into the ground. It was necessary to make these cords and stakes very strong, and to secure all the fastenings very carefully, or there would be danger, in case of a wind suddenly arising in the night, that the tent might be blown away, in which case the inmates would be left wholly exposed to the wind and rain. Indeed, this is an accident that not unfrequently occurs in military encampments.

How was he provided with cooking utensils?

The cooking utensils which were used in the camp are still preserved, together with the chest in which they were carried from one place to another in the course of the campaigns.



THE CAMP-CHEST.

Describe the campaign in New Jersey.

One of the worst periods of privation and suffering that the American army endured was while the British soldiers were driving them through New Jersey in the fall and early in the winter after they took possession of New York. General Washington was obliged to retreat, for his army was so inferior to that of his enemies that to fight them would have been certain destruction. He was driven, therefore, from river to river, and from town to town, his army growing more and more destitute and wretched every day, until they were all reduced to the extremity of suffering and despair. The English came on, following them every where triumphant. The inhabitants of that part of the country became entirely discouraged. It was useless, they said, to contend against so powerful a foe, and many of them signified to General Howe their willingness to submit.

What occurred when Washington reached the Delaware?

At last Washington reached the banks of the Delaware at Trenton.* He made all haste to get across the river. So narrow was his escape that the van of the English army began to enter

* Let the pupil not fail to look out all these localities on a map of the United States

the town before the rear of Washington's army had entirely left it. The English, being satisfied for the present with this success, took possession of Trenton, and quartered themselves comfortably in the houses, to rest for a time, while Washington, with his half-frozen and half-famished followers, were driven into the woods and fields across the river, to seek such shelter from the cold December storms as tents and huts could afford them.

What effect did the news of these events produce in Congress?

Congress was greatly alarmed. They expected that the British would now cross the Delaware themselves, and come down upon them at Philadelphia. There was nobody that could protect them. But these fears proved groundless, for the aspect of things was all at once changed by a most unexpected and extraordinary feat performed by Washington and his army, which has since been greatly distinguished in history as one of the most remarkable events of the Revolution.

Why did not the British immediately pursue the Americans across the Delaware?

It was in the month of December when the Americans were driven across the Delaware, and the British concluded, as has already been said, that they would wait a little while before they pursued them. The ice was beginning to form in the river, and it was dangerous to attempt to cross it with a large body of men. They concluded to wait, therefore, until the river should be frozen entirely, and then they thought they could march over on the ice. In the mean time, they thought that the American army would be gradually wasting away by hunger, cold, and exposure, while they themselves were all resting from their fatigues in the warm and comfortable houses of Trenton, and of other towns not far distant.

How long did Washington wait, and what design did he then form?

Washington waited a fortnight, and then he conceived the daring design of secretly crossing the river in the night with all his army,

and surprising that part of the British army that had remained in Trenton. This plan he carried most successfully into effect.

Give an account of his exploit of recrossing the Delaware.

He chose the night of Christmas for the time, thinking that the British officers and soldiers would be engaged that night in festivities and carousals, and that they would be, therefore, the more easily and completely surprised. Accordingly, on Christmas day, he took all the men that he could muster, and twenty pieces of cannon, and marched up the river about eight miles to a place where he thought he could cross without being observed by any of the British sentinels or scouts. It was a cold and gloomy night, the river was full of floating ice, and they anticipated great difficulty in making the passage.

Why could they not cross where they were, without taking so long a march up the river?

They could not cross where they were, because they knew that. if they attempted it, the British troops would take the alarm, and come out in great force on the bank of the river to stop them. They would have brought cannons down to the bank, and would have fired such heavy shot across the water that the boats would all have been sunk and the men drowned.

Were the British watching at all, at this time, for the coming of the Americans?

The British had sentinels all along on the bank of the river opposite to Trenton, and these sentinels were commanded to watch closely, and if they observed any signs that the Americans were coming, to give the alarm. They also sent men called *scouts* up and down the river, as far as they thought there was any probability that the Americans would go; but they did not suppose that they would go so far as eight miles, and so the Americans crossed in safety, and then marched down to Trenton. The engraving on the opposite page represents the scene, showing principally the boat which conveyed the officers.

WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

Give an account of the battle at Trenton.

They arrived at Trenton very early in the morning, and took the British entirely by surprise. A terrible combat ensued in the streets and in the outskirts of the town. The Americans gained

BATTLE OF TRENTON.

a complete victory. The officer who had been left in command at Trenton was killed, and almost all his men were taken prisoners. That evening Washington went back again across the river, carrying all his prisoners with him, and thus reached a place of safety before the British had time to bring up the rest of their troops, which had been quartered at different towns in the vicinity.

What other operations did Washington undertake?

Almost immediately afterward, too, the British were attacked by Washington in a similar manner in several other unexpected

quarters; and so successful were these bold operations, that the tide of victory was entirely turned against them, and in the end they were driven back again to New York, and their plan of reaching and taking possession of Philadelphia in this way was entirely defeated.

What effect did these events produce throughout the country?

The British officers were thunderstruck at this sudden change in the aspect of affairs. The news of these successes spread every where throughout the country, and produced the greatest excitement. Bells were rung, cannons were fired, and all the towns and villages of the land were enlivened with bonfires and illuminations. The people were awakened to new enthusiasm in the cause of the Revolution. It was possible to conquer, after all, they found; and great multitudes of new men came to join the army.

Did these victories lead to the immediate and final success of the Americans?

The American army, however, passed through many periods of great discouragement and suffering after this, and many long and weary years passed before they gained the final victory.

CHAPTER XI.

THE EXPEDITION OF BURGOYNE.

What was the plan of the British ministry that was intrusted to Burgoyne?

It was related in the last chapter that one of the plans of the English ministry for overrunning and completely subjugating the territory of the American colonies was to send an army from Canada, to come down through the heart of the country, by the way of Lake Champlain and the Hudson River, to New York, thus cutting the country, as it were, in two. The officer who was appointed to take charge of this expedition was General Burgoyne. He

attempted to execute the plan, but he did not succeed. Instead of conquering and taking possession of the country as he advanced, he found himself getting deeper and deeper into difficulty the farther he came, until at last his whole army was surrounded and hemmed in, and, in the end, he himself and all his troops were seized and made prisoners.

Give an account of the setting out of the expedition, and of the general plan of it.

At the commencement, the prospects of the campaign were very bright and cheering. Burgoyne set out from Canada with an army of about seven thousand men. This was a very large force for such an expedition, and they all felt entirely confident of success. The plan was for Burgoyne to come down from Canada by the north, while, at the same time, General Howe was to go up the Hudson River from New York and meet him at Albany.

What course of procedure did Burgoyne adopt in respect to the Indians, and what were his own views on the subject?

One of the first measures which Burgoyne adopted after he commenced his march was to gather together the chieftains of the principal Indian tribes that lived in that part of the country, and engage them to join him with their warriors and become his allies in the war. He himself was averse to this plan, but he was ordered to adopt it by the British government, and he did not dare to disobey. He thought it wrong for a civilized nation to employ such cruel and bloodthirsty savages against men of their own race and kindred; but the government insisted that he should do it.

How did the government reason on the subject?

"If we do not employ the Indians to fight on our side," said they, "the Americans will engage them on theirs, and we may as well have the benefit of their assistance as they."

What arrangement did Burgoyne make with the Indians, and what instructions did he give them?

So Burgoyne convened the Indian chieftains, and by means of

BURGOYNE AND THE INDIAN CHIEFS.

various promises, induced them to agree that they would send a horde of their savage followers to accompany his army in their march down the country, and fight with them against the Americans. He, however, charged them very strictly to give up their cruel mode of warfare, and especially forbade them ever to kill any women or children, or even any man except when he was actually fighting against them. The Indians promised to obey these injunctions, but any one might have known that they would never keep their promises.

Describe the proclamation that he issued.

Although Burgoyne thus charged the Indians to be merciful in the war, still he thought there would be no harm in availing himself of their alliance for the purpose of frightening the people a little

in advance. He accordingly issued a terrible proclamation, saying that he was coming down through the country with a large army of his own, and with troops of Indians as allies; and that, if the inhabitants would at once submit to his authority, he would protect them; if not, he led them to expect that he should not only resort to the most severe measures against them with his own troops, but that he would let loose the savages upon them, and that they would devastate the country with fire and sword, and inflict the most horrid cruelties upon the inhabitants.

What was the effect of the proclamation?

General Burgoyne was greatly censured for issuing such a proclamation as this, even by the English themselves. He said, however, that all he intended by it was to frighten the Americans, and thus induce them to submit without bloodshed. But it did not frighten them, nor induce them to submit. On the contrary, it had exactly the opposite tendency. It aroused the whole country to a state of extreme exasperation, and the people came in great numbers to join the army that was sent to meet and resist the invaders. General Gates had the command of this army.

Did Burgoyne meet with any effectual opposition at the commencement of his march?

Burgoyne, however, came on for some weeks without meeting any serious opposition. He came to some forts on the shores of Lake Champlain, but the garrisons were not strong enough to defend them, and so they retreated. Burgoyne sent detachments of his army to pursue these troops, while he himself pressed on with the great body of his army.

What were his anticipations in respect to the result?

He was filled with exultation at this success, and was confident that he should have no difficulty in fully accomplishing the object of the expedition. "Indeed," said he, "we shall soon have the American army between two fires; for the force which General Howe is sending up from New York is coming on from the south

as I am advancing from the north, and we shall soon get General Gates between us, and so have him entirely in our power."

At what point did the difficulties of the expedition begin, and what were the difficulties?

Burgoyne said this and thought this about the time that he had arrived at the southern end of Lake Champlain.* Up to that time every thing had gone prosperously and well with him. But now his difficulties began. He was obliged, here, to leave the water, and advance wholly by a march on the land. But he found the road all broken up. The Americans had been upon the road, and had made it utterly impassable. They had broken down the bridges, and felled great trees across the way, and rolled monstrous stones down, wherever there were stones to be found on the heights above, and piled in brush and tree-tops, in great heaps, here and there, to such an extent that Burgoyne's army could not move at all until they had cleared all these obstructions away. This took so much time that the troops could not advance more than a mile in a day.

How was he situated in respect to provisions?

Another difficulty which Burgoyne soon experienced was the want of provisions for his men and his horses. It requires an immense quantity of provisions, of course, every day to supply the wants of seven thousand men, and a vast amount of hay and grain besides, for the long train of horses that are always required to draw the baggage and the artillery of such an army. It is not possible to carry provisions for such a multitude sufficient for more than a very few days. The generals always depend upon obtaining a large portion of their supplies from the country itself as they march along.

What had been his expectations in respect to provisions?

General Burgoyne had depended upon doing this. He supposed that the inhabitants of the country generally were not much

* Do not fail to look out the route of the expedition on a map of the United States.

interested in the Revolution, and that when they saw that the rebel army, as he called it, was defeated and driven away, and that he was advancing with so overwhelming a force, they would all come over to his side, and would supply him abundantly with all that his army would need.

How were these expectations fulfilled?

The event plainly proved that he was entirely mistaken in these calculations. He found the inhabitants, wherever he came, immovably fixed and determined to resist and oppose his progress by every means in their power. Instead of aiding him to procure supplies of food, they threw every possible obstacle in his way. They drove off their cattle, and moved away their grain and flour, and left the country every where empty and destitute. The army soon began to be seriously in danger of suffering for want of food.

Give an account of the expedition of General Baum, and of the result of it.

The frontiers of the State of Vermont were not very far to the eastward of the part of the country where the British army now were, and Burgoyne was about this time informed that the people of that colony were not hostile to him, and that if he would send a detachment of his troops there, the inhabitants would no doubt meet them in a friendly spirit, and furnish them with, or at least allow them to procure, a supply of food. Accordingly, Burgoyne sent out a strong detachment, under the command of an officer named General Baum. Baum had not, however, gone far into Vermont before he found, instead of a welcome, a large body of Vermonters drawn up in battle array, ready to fight him. He found that they were stronger than he was, and so he took post on a hill, intrenched himself there, and sent back to Burgoyne for help. Burgoyne sent forward a strong re-enforcement; but, before the re-enforcement came up, the Americans had conquered Baum's army, and made them nearly all prisoners, and when the other troops arrived they attacked them too, defeated them, and

compelled them to retreat in confusion and dismay back to Burgoyne's camp, leaving all their cannon behind them. The British army lost by this expedition about seven hundred men.

What evil results for the expedition came from the defeat of Baum?

This was a terrible blow to the expedition. The army not only failed in obtaining supplies of food, but it was greatly weakened in force by the loss of the men. Besides, the moral effect of the disaster was very injurious upon the portion of the army that remained. The soldiers began to despair. The Indians, too, finding that the expedition was not likely to succeed, and that Burgoyne would not, or could not give them enough to eat, when he had promised them the greatest plenty of every thing, grew tired of the service, and parties of them were continually leaving the camp and going home. In a word, the expedition was gradually getting into very serious difficulty.

Give an account of the plan formed for bringing Jane M'Crea to the British camp.

The disposition of the Indians to abandon the enterprise was greatly increased by a very tragical and dreadful occurrence that took place about this time. It seems that one of the officers of the British army, whose name was Captain Jones, was engaged to a young girl named Jane M'Crea, who was then living with her aunt near a fort not very far from the place where Burgoyne's army was now encamped. Captain Jones conceived a desire to bring her to the camp, where he could take her under his protection. He did not venture to go for her himself, but he sent a party of Indians for her. He told the Indians that if they would make their way to her aunt's, see her, and propose to her to come, and then bring her safely to the camp to him, he would give them a reward. The reward that he offered them was a barrel of rum!

What was the result of this undertaking?

The Indians went. They traveled across the country in a

stealthy manner, and when they arrived at the house, they watched their opportunity when the rest of the family were gone out, and seizing Jane and her aunt, they hurried them away. They were immediately pursued, but it was impossible to overtake them. The Indians, however, separated on the way. One party arrived at the camp with the aunt, but the others, when they came in, instead of Jane herself, alive and well, brought only her *scalp*. Her aunt knew it by the long black and glossy hair.

What effect did this occurrence produce on the army?

The whole army was horror-struck at this atrocity. The Indians said that Jane was shot by a bullet fired by white men who were pursuing them, but it was generally believed that they killed her themselves. The story went all over the land, and the greatest indignation was excited every where against the British for employing such brutal monsters to fight against their brethren. Indeed, the British themselves began to be thoroughly ashamed of, and to abhor their confederates, and they instinctively evinced this feeling so plainly that the Indians became alienated from them, and went off more and more.

Who was the American commander opposed to Burgoyne, and what was now his condition?

In the mean time, the forces of General Gates were constantly increasing, and he went on concentrating them every day, so that soon Burgoyne was entirely surrounded. He had now no hope except in the arrival of General Howe's army from the south. But it did not come.

What was the situation of Burgoyne at his encampment on Hudson River?

The opposite engraving represents the situation of Burgoyne's camp on the banks of the Hudson River at one time while he was thus hemmed in on all sides. The camp is on the western bank, so that in the view we are looking down the river. The American army is a short distance below. We can see the line of Bur-

BURGOYNE'S ENCAMPMENT ON THE HUDSON.

goyne's intrenchments for defense against the Americans running from the bank of the river up the hill-side, and at some distance beyond a row of American tents on the brow of the declivity. Being thus established south of him, the Americans cut off his progress down the river, and by taking possession of all the roads, and bridges, and narrow passes among the hills, they prevented his retreat in any other direction. He finally was so closely hemmed in that he could not even send away or receive a messenger, and thus not only could procure no supplies, but he could not even communicate with General Howe, to learn when he might expect help. Thus he was placed in a situation which was exceedingly critical, and which filled him with the deepest anxiety.

How did the expedition end?

At length, when his provisions were entirely exhausted, and no hope of relief from any quarter appeared, he concluded to give up the contest and surrender. So he sent word to General Gates, and articles of surrender were drawn up and agreed to. Burgoyne himself gave up his sword, and his soldiers marched out of their camp to a place by the river side, and there laid down their arms in piles, where the Americans could take them. It was agreed that they themselves should not be kept prisoners, but should be allowed to go back again to England on condition that they would not come again to fight against the Americans during the war.

What were the fruits of this victory on the part of the Americans?

The number of men that thus gave themselves up was between five and six thousand; and besides the muskets, there were thirty-five brass field-pieces taken, and a great quantity of ammunition. The tidings that this formidable expedition was thus brought to an end spread rapidly through the country, and awakened universal and unbounded exultation, and gave a new and very powerful impulse to the American cause.

CHAPTER XII.

THE FRENCH ALLIANCE.

In what way had the Americans hoped to receive help in gaining their independence?

It has already been stated that when the American Congress declared the independence of the country, they hoped to have help from some European nation, and especially from France, in carrying on the war, and they had sent out commissioners some time before this period to propose to the French government that they should form a treaty of alliance with them.

How did the French government receive the commissioners that were sent out, and what did they at first decide to do?

The celebrated Benjamin Franklin was one of these commissioners. The French government received them privately in a very friendly manner, but for a time would not publicly recognize them as the agents of an independent nation. They had first to consider whether it would be prudent to acknowledge the independence of the American colonies or not. If they were to do so, and if, by their assistance, the colonies were to establish their independence, and separate themselves finally from the British empire, their old enemies, the English, would be humbled and weakened by it very much, and this was, of course, greatly desired; but then, if they were to take sides with the Americans in the contest, and the Americans should not succeed after all, then they would have only brought upon themselves the terrible anger of the English, without accomplishing any purpose at all; so that they thought it prudent to wait a little, and see how the Americans were likely to succeed, before they ventured to join them.

What effect did Washington's victory on the Delaware have on the negotiations at Paris?

When the news came of Washington's driving the British armies back from the Delaware to New York, they were encouraged. Still they were not yet sure that the Americans would be able, even with their aid, to succeed in the end. They, however, treated the commissioners with more attention, and even furnished them secretly with considerable help. They did, indeed, all that they could do without exciting the suspicions of the English. They would not, however, openly treat with the commissioners, or receive them at court, or acknowledge them in any way as the agents of an independent nation. They were obliged to be extremely cautious, for there was an English embassador in Paris, as usual at this time, and he was watching all their doings with the closest scrutiny.

What attempt at communication with the English embassador did the American commissioners make, and what was the result of it?

The American commissioners sent a note at one time to this embassador on some subject relating to an exchange of prisoners, but he would not receive it. They sent it a second time. He then sent back a note to them, saying that "his majesty's embassador receives no communications from rebels unless they come to implore his majesty's mercy." The commissioners sent back the note, saying that, "having received that indecent paper from him, they returned it to him for his more mature consideration."

What effect did the capture of Burgoyne produce in Paris?

At length, when the news of the capture of Burgoyne arrived in France, the government was decided. They acknowledged the independence of the United States, and formed a treaty of commerce with them, and immediately afterward Franklin and the other commissioners were publicly presented at court. The scene is represented in the engraving on the opposite page.

What effect did it produce in England?

The effect of the capture of Burgoyne was as marked in England as it had been in America and in France. When the government learned the news, and especially when they heard that the French government had acknowledged the independence of the United States, they were seriously alarmed. They began to regret that they had ever undertaken the war.

How did the English government now reason in respect to the war, and what conclusion did they come to?

It would have been better, they were now convinced, to have allowed the Americans the privilege they claimed—the same privilege which all other British subjects enjoyed—namely, that of having all questions of taxes passed upon by Legislatures chosen by the people themselves who would have the taxes to pay. This was all that the Americans at first asked. If the English govern-

FRANKLIN AT THE FRENCH COURT.

ment had allowed these claims at the beginning, there would have been no war. And now, seeing that they had carried on the war for some years without making any progress whatever, and observing what a serious turn affairs were taking, they came to the conclusion to yield.

What measures did they adopt for making peace?

They appointed commissioners, and sent them out to America, to say to Congress that they were willing to make peace, and grant them what they had demanded. They sent these commissioners out with all haste, in order that they might get to America and make peace with the colonies before the news should reach them that France had acknowledged their independence.

How were the proposals received?

The commissioners arrived, and laid their offers before Congress, but the proposals were immediately rejected. It was too late. "That was," said Congress, "what we demanded at first, and if you had acknowledged our right at the outset all this trouble would have been saved; but you refused, and compelled us to combine together, and establish an independent national government, in order that we might defend ourselves, and now we can not go back. We are willing to treat with you for peace when you are ready to acknowledge our independence, and withdraw your fleets and armies from the country, but not before."

How did the commissioners then attempt to induce Congress to accede to their proposals?

The commissioners, when they found that these open and public proposals were rejected, made secret attempts to bribe Congress. They made communications privately to some of the leading members, offering them large sums of money and high offices under the king if they would give their votes in Congress, and use their influence to induce the country to return again under the dominion of the king. The members, however, rejected these offers with scorn, and published an account of the attempts made to bribe them in the newspapers.

What induced the British army now to leave Philadelphia?

Very soon after this the British withdrew from Philadelphia, which they had taken some time before, and retreated through New Jersey to New York. They left Philadelphia for fear that,

if the French were to send out a fleet to assist the Americans, it would go up the Delaware River, and shut their army in. Thus the Middle States came again into the power of the Americans.

What effect did the arrival of the French fleet produce?

In a short time a French fleet did appear, and the hearts of the Americans were at once greatly encouraged, and their cause strengthened by the presence and assistance of their powerful allies. The French continued to assist them after this, both by land and sea, to the end of the war.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE TREASON OF BENEDICT ARNOLD.

Who was Benedict Arnold, and for what is he celebrated?

One of the most extraordinary events that occurred during the history of the Revolution was the attempt of one of the American generals to betray a fort on the Hudson River into the hands of the British. The name of the general who was guilty of this treason was Benedict Arnold. His plot was discovered just in season to prevent him from carrying it into effect, but not soon enough to prevent his securing his own safety by making his escape. If he had been taken he would have been hung.

What was the nature of the crime of which Arnold was guilty?

The crime was treason. He accepted a trust from the American government under the pretense that he was a friend to the American cause, and the trust which was thus committed to him he betrayed to the enemy. The crime of thus betraying one's own country is treason, and the man who is guilty of it is called a traitor.

What was Arnold's character and position?

Arnold was an intriguing and unprincipled man, but he was possessed of talents and of a certain kind of influence, and he had been employed in various ways by the American Congress, both

BENEDICT ARNOLD

in civil and military services. In the course of these employments he quarreled with the government, and also with the other officers of the army, and in the end, partly from revenge, and partly from a hope of making his own fortune by the rewards which he expected to gain, he resolved to betray the American cause in some way to the British. He had lived very extravagantly, and was greatly in debt, and he hoped, by the money which he should obtain for his treason, to extricate himself from all his difficulties.

Describe the situation of the Highlands and of West Point.

The Americans were in possession at this time of a strongly fortified post about fifty miles up the Hudson River, in the midst of the Highlands at West Point, where the celebrated military academy of the United States now stands. The river at this part of its course flows through a very narrow channel, winding its way, with many sudden curves and turnings, among the wildest scenery, with lofty mountains close to its banks, whose precipitous sides descend to the very margin of the water. In a word, the situation of West Point was such that it commanded what might be considered a mountain pass, and was, in some sense, the key to the whole interior of the country. Thus it was an exceedingly important position.

VIEW IN THE HIGHLANDS.

What was the plan that Arnold formed?

Arnold, after having formed a secret understanding with the British general-in-chief at New York that he was to be the means of procuring for him some great advantage over the Americans, for which he was afterward to be properly rewarded, contrived, by a great deal of manœuvring, to get himself appointed to the command of this post. His command included West Point, and several other posts connected with it and depending upon it. His plan was to betray the whole into the hands of the British general.

Why did he suppose that the British would be particularly pleased to have that post betrayed to them?

It would, of course, be a great prize to them, for it would give them possession of the whole river. Besides, there was a very large amount of stores and ammunition deposited at West Point, and these would, of course, fall into the hands of the British when the fort was surrendered to them. The possession of these forts, and the consequent command of the river, would enable the British to divide the New England states from the rest of the country.

Describe the relative position of the British and American armies at this time, and the arrangements on the frontier.

The name of the British general who commanded at New York was Sir Henry Clinton. He not only had possession of New York itself at this time, but he also held a considerable portion of the country up the river on both sides. Along the northern boundary of the land which the British forces thus held they had guards stationed to prevent people from passing to and fro, and to give notice in case the Americans were approaching. This frontier was called the British lines. In the same manner, the southern border of the land which the Americans held was protected by a guard, and was called the American lines. Between the American and British lines was a tract of country, not very wide, which belonged to neither side. This was called the Neutral Ground.

What was the difficulty in the way of Arnold's communicating with the British general?

Of course, in carrying on his correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton in New York, Arnold was obliged to get his letters conveyed in some way or other across both the American and British lines, and also over the Neutral Ground, or else send them down the river.

Who was Beverly Robinson, and where did he originally live?

The way in which he managed to pass these letters without suspicion was through a man named Colonel Beverly Robinson. Robinson had lived before this time in a pleasant country house nearly opposite to West Point, on the eastern side of the river; but when the Revolution broke out he had joined the British, and had gone to New York, and his house had been confiscated. The engraving below represents a view of this residence. Arnold

ROBINSON'S HOUSE.

made this place his head-quarters. It was just across the river from West Point, and it was, moreover, very central and convenient of access to the other places that were under Arnold's command.

How did Robinson contrive to convey the letters back and forth?

One way in which Arnold contrived to pass his letters to and

fro between himself and Robinson was under pretense that he was negotiating with him in respect to the restoration of his property, which Robinson contended had been unjustly confiscated.

What other way was there of conveying the letters?

Another way by which the letters were sometimes passed was by means of a sloop-of-war, which Clinton sent up the river as high as she dared to go, for this very purpose. The name of this sloop was the Vulture. The Vulture ascended until she came to a narrow place not very far from the entrance to the Highlands, opposite to a point on the eastern bank of the river called Teller's Point. She remained there some days, and many of the negotiations were carried on through her aid.

Describe the relative situation of these places.

The relative situation of all these places may be plainly seen by referring to the map over the leaf. West Point is near the upper margin of the map, on the western bank of the river. The fort there was on an eminence above the river. It was called Fort Putnam. The ruins of it still remain. The situation of Robinson's house is shown too, on the opposite bank of the river, a little below West Point.

Where did the Vulture lay when she was sent up the river? What did the Americans do when they saw her?

About fifteen miles farther down is seen the place where the Vulture lay at anchor when she was sent up the river. It was in the narrows opposite Teller's Point. The Americans wondered what she came up there for, and they began to make preparations to bring a cannon to Teller's Point, and drive her away.

How was the correspondence managed?

The correspondence which Arnold carried on with Sir Henry Clinton through the Vulture and through Robinson was, of course, very brief indeed, and very vague and indefinite in its terms. It would have been exceedingly dangerous to have written a full account of his plan, for all attempts to communicate across the lines

were watched very closely, and Arnold knew perfectly well that if he were detected in these plots there would not be any mercy shown him, but that he would immediately be hung.

What arrangement was made between Arnold and the British general for a full and final communication with each other?

Arnold would not, therefore, enter at all into details in respect to his plan in his letters, but said that Sir Henry Clinton must send one of his officers up the river to confer with him in person. He would appoint a secret place of meeting, he said, and so communicate verbally the precise proposals he had to make. The British general acceded to this plan, and appointed a young officer named Major André to go up the river to the Vulture, in expectation that Arnold would meet him there.

MAJOR ANDRÉ.

Why could not the meeting take place on land?

It would be an extremely hazardous thing for André to land, since, by the laws of war, any officer of an army who goes within

MAP OF THE SCENE OF ARNOLD'S TREASON.

the enemy's lines under any pretext whatever, unless he obtains permission beforehand, and is protected by a flag of truce, is considered a spy, and is always hung.

What were André's ideas and expectations in going up the river?

Major André, who was a very ardent and enthusiastic young man, was very ready to go into any danger that it might be necessary to incur in order to accomplish the object. So he set out

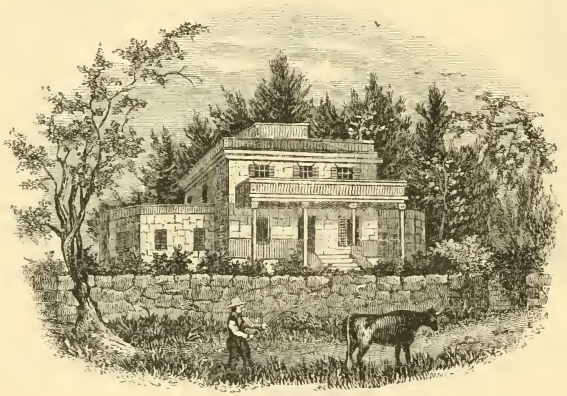
for the Vulture. He went by land up to Dobbs's Ferry, which may be seen represented on the map, and then proceeded by a boat to the sloop-of-war. Arnold had obscurely promised that a boat should come down from him to the Vulture that night, and André supposed that Arnold himself would come in her, and thus that the interview would take place on board the Vulture.

What was really the plan that Arnold had formed?

But this was not Arnold's plan. Instead of hazarding his own life by going on board the Vulture, he preferred that André should incur the danger by coming to meet him on the land.

Describe the situation of Smith's house.

Arnold left West Point in the evening, and went down the river to the house of a certain Joshua Smith, who was an accomplice of his, or else his *dupe*, it is not certainly known which. The engraving below represents a view of Smith's house, and the situation



SMITH'S HOUSE.

of it, on the banks of the river, will be seen by reference to the map. It is on the west side of the river, a little below a place called Stony Point, where there is a ferry across to Verplanck's Point. Smith's house, too, you will see, is not a great way above the place where the Vulture was lying. It would seem, from the

scale laid down in the corner of the map, that it might be about five miles.

What took place at Smith's house? Where was Smith to bring André?

According to the plan which he had formed for bringing André to the shore, Arnold, at the appointed time, came down to Smith's house, and made an agreement with Smith to go down in the night to the Vulture, and "bring a gentleman, whom he wished to see, ashore from the sloop." The place where he was to bring him was agreed upon. It was at the bank of the river, nearly opposite to where the Vulture lay, but yet a mile or two distant. The place is marked on the map. There was a little inlet from the river there, where the boat could put in and be concealed. Indeed, the place was in all respects as retired and solitary a spot as could be desired. Arnold was himself to go down there by land in the night, at the same time that Smith went in his boat on the water.

Give an account of Smith's progress down the river.

The plan succeeded perfectly well. Smith had some trouble to find oarsmen for his boat that he could rely upon, who were willing to go down the river with him in the night on so mysterious and possibly dangerous an expedition; but at last he succeeded, and as soon as night came on and the moon went down, he set out. It was a starlight night, and very still. Smith muffled the oars, and glided as noiselessly as possible out of the bay where his boat had been lying, and then turned down the river.

What did Arnold do?

Arnold went down along the bank of the river by land. He rode on horseback, and took a spare horse with him.

Give an account of what took place when the boat reached the Vulture.

The sentinels on board the Vulture had been instructed that, if they saw a boat coming and making a certain signal—one which

Arnold had previously indicated—they were to allow her to come alongside. Smith made the signal, and the boat was accordingly permitted to come directly up to the vessel. Smith ascended the side, and went on board. The oarsmen remained in the boat. After having been gone a few minutes, Smith came back, bringing André with him.

How was André dressed, and why was it that his dress was a matter of importance?

André wore the regular scarlet uniform of the British officers, but the uniform was all covered and concealed by a long blue surtout buttoned up to the chin. His wearing this uniform is an important circumstance to be noted; for when a person belonging to the army on one side, in a war, is found within the lines on the other side, the question of his being disguised or not is a very important one in deciding whether he is to be hung as a spy. If he wears his proper uniform openly, that would seem to denote that he was not a spy, but that he came on some fair and honest business.

How was it with André?

André, in point of fact, was not disguised, nor did he, on the other hand, wear his proper uniform openly. He wore it, it is true, but he had covered it up with the long blue surtout.

What followed after André and Smith had got into the boat?

He followed Smith into the boat, and the men pushed off, and turned the head of the boat toward the shore. They rowed for about half an hour in the starlight, and then began gradually to approach the land. A man at the bows watched the dark and shadowy mass of trees and foliage that fringed the bank, as they glided silently along, until he found the entrance to the little cove, and then the boat turned in.

Describe the first interview between Arnold and André.

Smith and André landed. Arnold was watching near, concealed in a thicket. Smith led André in, and said, "Here is Mr.

Anderson, sir." Anderson was the feigned name that André had used in all the correspondence which he had with Arnold. He adopted a false name for the purpose of greater secresy.

What did Smith do after he had brought André and Arnold together?

As soon as Smith had brought André and Arnold together, he went back to the boat, and left them to themselves. It was now considerably past midnight. Smith waited an hour or more, and then he crept softly back to the thicket, and told Arnold that it was time to take Mr. Anderson back to the sloop. "It will soon be morning," said he, "and then we can not go back at all. There is a guard watch on the bank of the river all day, and if they see us going to the Vulture in a boat, they will shoot us."

Why did not Arnold accede to Smith's proposal?

Arnold said that they had not nearly finished making their arrangements, and for a moment they were perplexed to know what to do. At length Arnold proposed that André should put off going back to the sloop-of-war till the next night.

What did they finally determine to do?

"Go up the river with me," said he, "to Mr. Smith's house, and stay there to-day. That will give us plenty of time to arrange our plans completely. Then to-night, as soon as it is dark, I will send you back to the vessel." André at last consented to this, though he knew that he exposed himself to great danger by so doing. Look at the map again now, and see the place where André landed, and follow up the bank of the river with your eye to Smith's house. Compare the distance with the scale in the corner, and you will see that it was about four miles that they had to go.

How did they go up the river, and what occurred on the way?

Arnold had his two horses with him, and he and Anderson mounted them and rode up the river to Smith's house. At one time they passed a sentinel. Arnold gave the pass-word, and the

sentinel allowed them to go by. "Now," said André to himself, "I am fairly within the American lines. If I am detected, I shall be hanged as a spy. But it is too late to go back."

What sounds did they hear when they reached Smith's house?

Very soon after they reached the house, they heard the firing of heavy cannon down the river near where the Vulture was lying. They were quite alarmed, and wondered what was the matter. It proved, in the end, that a company of men who lived on the eastern bank of the river had brought a cannon to Teller's Point—which you will see by the map is directly opposite where the Vulture was lying—and had begun to fire upon her, to drive her away.

What did the Vulture do to escape the danger?

The Vulture, not liking these shots, and not knowing what had become of André to prevent his returning at the appointed time, weighed anchor, and dropped down the river to a safer place. You will see by the map that the Vulture was in sight from Smith's house where she lay at first in the narrows; but now, when she had gone down below, she was concealed from view.

Describe the situation that André was left in at Smith's house.

Arnold and André continued their consultation at Smith's house during the forenoon, and at noon they had arranged all their plans. Then Arnold went away up the river to West Point, to complete the preparations there for surrendering the post, and left André in Smith's care, to be taken back down the river that night. But, when night came, Smith said they could not go down in a boat; it was too far. André urged him very earnestly to go, but he refused.

What plan did André finally adopt for getting back to the Vulture?

He said that he would take him across the river by the King's Ferry, and go down with him by land, on the eastern side, till they got opposite to the Vulture, and that then he could easily get on board. This plan was carried into effect. You will see the

ferry where they crossed on the map. It leads from Stony Point to Verplanck's Point, a short distance above Smith's house.

How was he stopped on the way?

André met with a great variety of adventures on his way, but he succeeded in getting down the river almost to Tarrytown, and there he was stopped by some men who were watching the road. He thought that they were on the British side, for he was now near the British lines, so he very inadvertently told them at once that he was a British officer, and that they must let him pass. They immediately seized him and searched him. They found papers in his boot, that Arnold had given him, which exposed the whole plot. They immediately sent him a prisoner to the American camp.

Relate the circumstances of Arnold's learning that the plot was discovered, and of his flight.

Arnold heard that his plot was discovered while he was at breakfast with two other generals that had unexpectedly come that morning. He learned the news in a letter that was sent him. He ran into his wife's room, and with a face of consternation and despair told her that he must fly for his life, and perhaps she would never see him again. His wife was so terrified that she fainted. He could not, however, stop to aid her, but kissed his little child, who was then sleeping in the room, and rushed out of the house. He hurried down to a small landing that Robinson had near his house, and, jumping into a boat there, he rowed off as fast as he could down the river, and finally succeeded in reaching the Vulture in safety.

What was Arnold's subsequent history?

The British government rewarded him very generously for his intended treason, though it did not succeed. They voted him about fifty thousand dollars in money, and made him an officer in their army; and he afterward fought against the Americans with great fury until peace was made. But the British, though they

paid him for his treason, despised him for being guilty of it. The officers of the army shunned him, and were unwilling to serve with him, or to keep company with him in any way. At length he died, and his memory is held in universal execration by all mankind.

What became of André?

Poor André was hung as a spy. Every body sympathized with him, and wished to save him, but, in spite of every effort, he fell a sacrifice to the merciless rules of war.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

For how many years did the war continue?

The war of the American Revolution continued more than seven years. It began in the spring of 1775, and it ended in the fall of 1782.

What was the great event which finally brought the war to a close?

The event which produced the most decided effect in finally leading the English government to give up the contest, and to acknowledge the independence of the American States, was the capture of a large British army in 1781 by the combined forces of the Americans and their allies, the French.

Who was the English general, and where was he captured?

The English general who commanded the army was Lord Cornwallis. The Americans and the French gradually surrounded Cornwallis, and shut him up closely in a place called Yorktown, in Virginia, and, after a time, compelled him to surrender. The event is consequently called in history the surrender of Cornwallis. The circumstances of the case were very remarkable.

How and when did Cornwallis commence his campaign?

Lord Cornwallis had been engaged in conducting a campaign

LORD CORNWALLIS.

in North Carolina, and during the summer he had been quite successful. Near the beginning of September he marched northward, and entered Virginia, conquering and devastating the country as he came.

What were the situations of Washington and Clinton at this time, and what orders did Clinton send to Cornwallis?

Washington was at this time on the Hudson River, forming plans for attacking Sir Henry Clinton in New York. Clinton was closely shut up in the city, and was apprehensive of an attack from Washington. He was the general-in-chief of the British armies in America. Cornwallis was under his command. Accordingly, when he heard that Cornwallis had come into Virginia, he wrote to him immediately to put a large number of his troops on board some vessels, and send them round to New York by sea, for a re-enforcement to New York, in order to defend that city from Washington.

Why did not Cornwallis proceed to New York in obedience to this order?

Cornwallis had got his men on board the ships, and they were about ready to sail, when suddenly another letter came, countermanding the order. Clinton informed Cornwallis that he had received a large re-enforcement from England and Germany—for the English government had adopted the plan of employing soldiers from Germany to fight for them in this war—and that it was now not necessary to send the re-enforcement.

What further orders did Clinton give?

Clinton further said that he wished Cornwallis to select some strong position in Virginia, and fortify himself in it as securely as possible, so that it might form a central point from which to make incursions into the surrounding country in the course of the ensuing fall and winter. So Cornwallis landed his men again, and prepared to carry these orders into effect.

Describe the situation of Yorktown, and of Cornwallis's encampment there.

After examining several places, he finally made choice of the village of Yorktown for his camp. This was a village on the south side of the York River, which is one of the rivers that flow from the westward into the southern part of Chesapeake Bay. The land is generally level in all this part of Virginia, and but little raised above the surface of the rivers. The situation of Yorktown was, however, somewhat higher, and it was so defended by the river on one side, and by small streams and ravines on

REMAINS OF THE INTRENCHMENTS AT YORKTOWN.

the other sides, that it was very easily fortified. Cornwallis threw up intrenchments, consisting of banks of earth, along all the unguarded points around the village, and planted cannon behind them, so as to command every approach. The remains of some of these intrenchments are seen very distinctly on the ground to the present day.

What forces were in the neighborhood to oppose him?

In this camp Cornwallis established himself with his army, which consisted of about seven thousand men, and began to form plans for making incursions into the surrounding country. He was obliged to be somewhat wary in his movements, for General Greene, an American commander, had an army in the vicinity, which, though not as large as that of Cornwallis, was still somewhat formidable. There was also a considerable French force near, under the command of General La Fayette.

What re-enforcements did he expect?

Cornwallis, moreover, hoped very soon to receive such an accession to his force that he should be able to accomplish any thing he might desire. There was an English fleet in the West Indies which was now expected in the Chesapeake. As soon as that fleet should arrive, he would become at once, he thought, complete master of the country. So he remained quiet in Yorktown, keeping a good look-out all the time down the river and bay for the arrival of the ships.

What fleet was it that actually came?

At length, toward the latter end of August, a fleet was seen coming up the bay, but, to Cornwallis's infinite disappointment and chagrin, the ships proved to be French instead of English. It was a squadron commanded by Count de Grasse, and it came from the West Indies.

What plans did La Fayette and the Count now form?

General La Fayette sent a man out in a boat from Cape Henry to this fleet, when it first appeared, to inform the admiral of the

situation of affairs. "We have got Cornwallis hemmed in by land," said he, "and if you can send up some ships to the mouth of the York River, and so shut him up by sea, we can take his whole army prisoners." This Count de Grasse resolved to do. He sent up four ships of the line and several frigates.

What course did Washington now determine to pursue?

In the mean time, when Washington, at his camp on the Hudson, found that Clinton had received a large re-enforcement in New York, so that he could not hope to reconquer that city, he determined to leave that region and march south into Virginia, and assist, if possible, in capturing Cornwallis. He accordingly moved in detachments out of his camp, and commenced his march.

What did Clinton think of this movement?

Clinton might have come out of New York and followed him; and perhaps he might have entirely prevented his proceeding, but he did not imagine that Washington could be really intending to go to Virginia. He supposed that his sending off so many men from his camp was only a stratagem to conceal some design that he might be forming against New York; so he remained in the city, waiting for the expected attack.

How long did it take Washington's army to march to Virginia?

From the River Hudson to Virginia is a long distance, and it required some time to accomplish the march. An army, loaded as the soldiers are with their arms and knapsacks, and with so much baggage in their train, moves slowly. It was a fortnight before Washington arrived. He immediately went on board the flag-ship of Count de Grasse, in the bay, and the two commanders settled together their plan of operations.

What was now Cornwallis's situation, and what were his hopes?

The armies of the Americans and the French united now amounted to twelve thousand men, while that of Cornwallis consisted of only seven thousand. Cornwallis, of course, could not

meet his enemies in the field. His only hope was that he might be able to defend himself in Yorktown, and hold out there until General Clinton could send him relief from New York. There was, however, not much hope of this, for the French fleet, which had been increased by a new arrival since de Grasse came, was now very strong, and they had full possession of the harbor and the bay. Had it not been for this fleet, Cornwallis might, perhaps, have made his escape by water; but, with their armies on land and their fleet on the sea, the Americans and the French had shut him in on all sides, and they watched him continually with the closest vigilance.

How did the Americans obtain information of what passed in the enemy's camp?

The Americans all this time knew every thing that passed in the British camp. They obtained their information through a spy who was employed by General La Fayette to go into Yorktown. He was an American soldier from New Jersey named Morgan. He went into Yorktown pretending to be a deserter, and there enlisted in Cornwallis's army. From time to time he communicated to La Fayette and to the Americans all that it was necessary for them to know in respect to the condition of the British army, and to what took place in their camp. If he had been detected he would have been hung.*

Give an account of the progress of the siege.

As soon as Washington arrived, the American and French armies regularly invested the place, and commenced the operations of the siege. In the night, strong parties would be formed to draw as near as possible to the British lines, and throw up intrenchments there, and place heavy guns behind them, with which

* When the campaign was ended and Cornwallis had surrendered, the Americans offered this man a reward for his services, but he would not receive it. They then proposed to make him an officer, but he declined the honor. "He knew he was a good soldier," he said, "but it was not by any means certain that he should make a good officer."

to cannonade the works the next day. Sometimes these batteries were established in one quarter and sometimes in another; and all day, and sometimes all night long, bombs and red-hot balls were seen marking their fiery track through the air, and descending with dreadful effect upon the ill-fated town. As the siege proceeded, these works advanced nearer and nearer, until, at length, Cornwallis saw that he must either form some desperate plan for making his escape from the place, or else he must surrender.

What plan did Cornwallis devise for escape?

He decided to attempt to escape. His plan was to leave all his guns, and ammunition, and baggage, as well as all the sick and wounded men, in the camp; and then, with the active and able-bodied troops, to make his way in boats, in the night, across the river to the north side. He would surprise some small portions of the American army that were stationed there, and seize their horses. By means of these, and such other horses as he could capture on the road, he hoped to force his way through the country to New York. This was, it is true, a very desperate undertaking; but then, even if only half his army should succeed in getting there, while the other half were killed or taken prisoners on the way, that would be better than to remain in Yorktown and lose all.

How was this plan defeated?

Unfortunately for Cornwallis, this scheme was entirely defeated at the very commencement of the attempt to put it in execution. The night fixed for the embarkation was the 16th of October. The boats were got ready, and all the arrangements were made, every thing having been done so secretly that the Americans did not suspect the design. At ten o'clock one detachment of the troops was sent across the river. But then there suddenly came on a very violent tempest of wind and rain, which made it impossible to proceed with the undertaking. Cornwallis succeeded in

the course of the night in bringing back the few that had been sent over, but that was all he could do.

What was now the condition in which Cornwallis was placed, and what did he at length determine to do?

All hope of escape was now necessarily abandoned, and Cornwallis saw there was no alternative left but to surrender. He spent the following day in an agony of suspense and anxiety. His works were ruined. The enemy was getting every hour nearer and nearer. Shot and shells were descending upon the wretched town in an incessant storm, and there was nowhere any shelter from them or place of refuge. Accordingly, Cornwallis sent out an officer with a flag of truce to ask the Americans to cease firing, and promising to surrender. Orders were accordingly given that the firing should cease, and a conference was held to agree upon the terms of capitulation. The terms were settled that day, and on the following day the British army were to march out of Yorktown, and lay down their arms.

Give an account of the arrangements made for the surrender.

The surrender of an army of seven thousand men is a very imposing ceremony. On the morning of the appointed day, the American and French armies were drawn up on the sides of a road leading from Yorktown. The French were on one side and the Americans on the other. The lines extended for more than a mile. The British troops were to march out between them. An immense concourse of people assembled from all the surrounding country to witness the scene.

What was the cause of the great exultation of the Americans at this result?

Lord Cornwallis had made himself the dread of the whole southern country by the devastations he had made, and he had come into Virginia with the design of continuing there his career of terror and destruction. The people, of course, exulted with double joy in the dreadful retribution that had now overtaken him.

Describe the ceremony by which the act of surrender was finally performed.

The assembled multitude, however, did not have an opportunity to see their great enemy himself. He was sick when the morning came, or pretended to be sick, and so did not appear. Indeed, he was so overwhelmed with vexation and despair that he was perhaps really unable to leave his room; so he sent one of his generals in his stead, to carry his sword, and deliver it up to General Washington, this being an essential part of the ceremony observed on all such occasions. The engraving below represents the

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

surrender. In the foreground is seen the officer sent by Cornwallis in the act of giving up the sword. In the background are the

British troops, disarmed, and standing between the French and American lines. In the distance we see the French ships lying at anchor in the river.

What had been the general condition of the country during the progress of the war?

The surrender of this army virtually put an end to the war. During the seven years that had elapsed since hostilities commenced at Lexington and Bunker Hill, the country had been increasing in wealth and population, notwithstanding all the waste and destruction the war had occasioned, and was now stronger than ever before. This was the second large British army that had been captured, and comparatively few troops now remained in the country. Even those few were closely shut up in places distant from each other, so that they were isolated and helpless.

How was it that the government was finally induced to give up the war?

In view of these facts, it was evident that the struggle was becoming more and more hopeless every day, and thus the people of England began to be tired of the war, and to wish to have it abandoned. The government was thus at last compelled to submit. They were exceedingly reluctant to come to this conclusion, but they found that come to it they must, and accordingly a treaty of peace was signed, in which the independence and freedom of the United States of America was fully acknowledged by the government of Great Britain.

When and where was the treaty of peace made, and what was the result of it?

This treaty is generally called the treaty of Paris. It was made in the fall of 1783. Treaties between nations are very often named after the place at which they were formed. This treaty was made at Paris. The representatives of the American colonies went there and met the representatives of the British government, and together they drew up the treaty of peace. A treaty is, in fact, a

contract between two nations. After the terms of this treaty had been discussed and settled upon by the commissioners, it was executed by them on behalf of their respective governments. Thus peace and the independence of the United States were at last established.

CHAPTER XV.

ESTABLISHMENT OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION.

What question at once arose among the American people when peace had been made?

As soon as peace between England and America was established by the treaty of 1783, and the independence of the nation was acknowledged by the mother country, the question at once arose what arrangements should be made for the future government of the United States. There had been no time to think much on this subject during the continuance of the war. A great many difficulties had been experienced for want of some well-organized general government, but there was no opportunity to attempt to provide any remedy for them until peace was declared. The subject was then taken up at once in serious earnest.

What was the nature of the powers that Congress had exercised during the war?

In order to understand the case fully, we must remember that hitherto the Congress, though they exercised a sort of general superintendence over the affairs of the war, were, after all, not a government. They were only, as it were, a committee. Their functions were almost precisely those of a joint committee chosen by a number of different powers to transact certain business of common interest to all. In respect to measures involving the action of the different states, they had no actual powers whatever. They could only recommend. It devolved on the several states

to determine, each for itself, how far they would comply with these recommendations after they were made. The patriotism and the public spirit of the country produced, it is true, a great deal of unanimity in the states while the war continued, so that the evils resulting from the want of a general organization, empowered to act as well as to advise, though serious, were not fatal. It was very evident, however, that in a long-continued time of peace so inefficient a system as that would not answer at all.

How many plans of government were proposed?

The question was what was to be done. Two plans of government suggested themselves at once in such circumstances.

What was the first plan, and what were the advantages of it?

1. To consider each one of the several states as entirely sovereign and independent; and to organize for each one a separate government, so that each should be distinct from all the rest, just as the different nations of Europe are distinct from each other. There were good reasons for this plan, for the states extended over a region widely diversified in climate and soil, as well as in the pursuits, and manners, and customs of the inhabitants, and a system of government and laws that would be adapted to one portion of the country would not be suitable to another. For those reasons, it seemed desirable that each state should have a government of its own.

What was the second plan, and what were the advantages of it?

2. To abolish the distinction of states altogether, and form one great and united nation, with one government to rule over all. This would be doing substantially what has been done in the British empire. In former times, England, Scotland, and Ireland were three separate states, each having its own independent government; but they have, in modern times, been merged into one, and the distinctions exist now chiefly in name. There were good reasons for this plan too. One great nation is much more powerful in defending itself from enemies in time of war than a number

of small ones. It was plain, too, that there were several other departments of government, besides that of military defense, that could be more conveniently managed in one system covering the whole country, such as dealing with the tribes of Indians, buying and settling the lands in the interior of the country, regulating commerce with foreign nations, and organizing and working the post-office.

What were the comparative advantages of the two plans?

Thus, for *general* purposes, it seemed best to have one general government uniting the whole country; but for the convenience and satisfaction of the mass of the people in the ordinary arrangements of daily life, it was best to have separate governments, so that each state might manage its affairs in its own way. And in the same manner, so far as dealings with foreign nations were concerned, it would be better to have a union of the whole country under one government, but so far as related to internal regulations and laws, affecting the private concerns of the people, it would be better to have a separate government for each individual state.

What is the nature of a league or federation?

In several cases that had previously existed in the history of the world, where a number of small states were situated near each other, which possessed general interests common to them all, the plan of a league or federation had been adopted;* that is, the several small states maintained each a distinct and independent government, and then these governments leagued themselves together for the common defense, and for other purposes of interest to them all; but this plan had never succeeded very well, and such leagues have never proved strong or permanent.

What were proved to be the difficulties in the operation of such a government?

* The word *federation* means a league. *Federal* means that which pertains to a league. A *confederation* is a leaguing together.

In the operation of the system, it was found that the separate governments would send their delegates to the general assembly, and votes would be passed there; but then, if any particular state did not approve of a vote, they would not comply with it, and there was no way of compelling them to comply but by sending an armed force, and making war upon them. This made a great deal of trouble. Indeed, such federations were continually getting involved in difficulties of all kinds, arising from the governments of the individual states neglecting or refusing to carry out the measures which the confederation had agreed upon.

What was the real source of the difficulty in these cases?

The difficulty was that the confederation had no power to carry its measures into execution itself, but was obliged to depend upon the action of the several states in executing them. This made the confederation weak; and, in cases where the states seriously disagreed, it became utterly powerless.

What was the nature of the scheme that the Americans devised?

The Americans devised a scheme to meet these difficulties which was entirely new. Nothing like it had ever been before tried in the history of the world. The plan was to create two independent systems of government—a system of general government for all business of general and common interest, and a system of state governments for business of local interest. Thus they *divided the business;* and for one branch of it they made the whole country one nation, while for another branch of it they divided the country into a large number of distinct and independent nations.

In respect to what portions of the public business is the country one?

In respect to peace, and war, and foreign commerce, and dealing with the Indians, and the post-office, the country is one country: it has one Legislature, one population, and one set of executive

officers, who have power to go every where, and execute the laws themselves which relate to the departments of business that belong to them, without calling upon the state governments at all.

In respect to what portions of the public business is the country divided?

On the other hand, so far as the laws which govern the transaction of business, the punishment of ordinary crimes, the chartering of companies, the inheritance of property, and all other such subjects, are concerned, the country is not one. In respect to these things there is no union at all. There is not even a federation. The states are independent in these, and the government of each is supreme within its own boundaries.

Does either government exercise any dominion over the other?

Young persons sometimes imagine that the general government is, in some sense, a government *above* the state governments, and that it exercises a sort of superintendence over them; but this is not so in any sense whatever. The general government extends its jurisdiction over a *wider field* than the state governments, it is true, but it does not rise to any higher elevation in respect to sovereignty and power. It is supreme in respect to the business intrusted to it, and so are the state governments supreme in respect to the business intrusted to them.

What example is there of the exercise of the power of the state government in Virginia?

The government of Virginia, for example, has founded a university in the heart of the state for the education of young men. That is a business that belongs to the state. Now neither the President of the United States, nor the Congress, nor both combined, can touch that institution at all, no matter how well or how badly the government of Virginia may manage it. The education of the people of Virginia is a subject that belongs to the state. In respect to that business the state is supreme, and the general government of the United States has no more power to touch it

than has the government of France, or England, or that of any other country.

What example is there of the exercise of the power of the general government in Virginia?

On the other hand, at Gosport, near Norfolk, in Virginia, is a navy-yard, established and maintained by the government of the United States. Every thing that pertains to the navy belongs to the departments of national defense and foreign commerce, and those things are the business of the general government. The general government accordingly bought the land for that navy-yard, and built the docks and piers, and hired the workmen, and, although the ground is within the limits of the State of Virginia, neither the governor of Virginia, nor the Legislature, nor both together, can touch the navy-yard at all, no matter how well or how badly the general government may manage it.

How many systems of government, then, have the people of the United States established?

In other words, the people of the United States, having a variety of public business to perform, have divided the business into two great branches, and have adopted one system of government for one, and another system for the other. In respect to certain great subjects of general interest, they have formed themselves into one nation, and they have constituted one general government to attend to that business. In respect to another great branch of business, they deem it more convenient to have it transacted in a different way. In respect to this, they are not one nation in any sense, but are divided into a great many independent states, each of which has supreme and sovereign control within its jurisdiction.

What are some of the principal public establishments which belong to the general government?

The general government, besides the public edifices at Washington, possess navy-yards in different parts of the country for build-

ing, equipping, and repairing ships of war, and armories for the manufacture of arms, and foundries for casting cannon, and a great number of strong fortifications for defending the frontiers of the country.

What are some of the kinds of public establishments that belong to the state governments?

The state governments found asylums for the poor and infirm, and build court-houses for the administration of justice between man and man, and establish seminaries of learning of various kinds, and other such institutions as pertain to the internal welfare of the community.

What differences of opinion prevailed at the time that the Constitution was under discussion?

There was a great deal of discussion and debate concerning the plan of the government, and it was a long time before the system finally adopted was matured, and was fully comprehended by the country at large. In many quarters, indeed, there was great opposition to it. Some thought that the general government would be weak and inefficient, and they wished to have more power confided to it, and less reserved for the states. Others thought that the general government would prove to be too strong, and that the rights and powers of the states would be overwhelmed by it. The new Constitution was, however, finally adopted, though it was not until five years after the war was ended, and the independence of the country acknowledged, that this grand result was attained, and the new government established.

Give an account of the inauguration of the first president.

General Washington was chosen the first president by a unanimous vote. At the close of the war he took leave of the army, resigned his commission, and retired to his own estate in Virginia, happy in having been the means in bringing the long and weary war to a successful end. His residence was at Mount Vernon, a beautiful place on the banks of the Potomac, not far below the

City of Washington, the seat of government at the present time. New York, however, was the temporary seat of government then, the permanent place for the capital not having been yet chosen. Washington accordingly left his home at Mount Vernon to pro-

MOUNT VERNON.

ceed to New York when the time for his inauguration arrived; and as he traveled through the region in which he had been exposed to so many dangers, and had passed so many long and weary years of toil and suffering during the war, the people thronged from all quarters to greet him as he passed, and to hail him as the Father of his Country.

What has been the progress of the country since that time?

Since that time the country has advanced in population, wealth, and power with a rapidity which is entirely unparalleled in the history of the human race. The extent of its territory has been greatly enlarged, and many new states have been successively formed and added to the confederation, so that the new republic is rapidly rising to a very exalted rank among the nations of the earth, and is destined, perhaps, at no distant day, to surpass all the political organizations that have preceded her in population and power, and to exert a vast influence upon the future destinies of the great human family.

THE END.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 018 511 731 5